

Contents

AGYNAMIX Invoicer - User Manual	15
About AGYNAMIX Invoicer	15
Key Features	15
System Requirements	15
Operating System	15
Hardware	15
Software	15
About This Manual	15
Manual Structure	16
Conventions in This Manual	16
Quick Start Guide	16
Step 1: Installation	16
Step 2: Create Your First Tenant	17
Step 3: Create Your First Customer	18
Step 4: Create Your First Invoice	19
Step 5: Publish and Export Invoice	20
Step 6: Record Payment	20
Step 7: Prepare Incoming Documents (Optional)	21
Step 0: Load Demo Data (Optional)	22
Next Steps	22
Help and Support	22
In the Application	22
Online Resources	22
Data Location	23
Copyright and License	23
 1. Menu Bar	 23
1.1 File Menu	24
Create Backup...	24
Restore from Backup...	25
Verify Audit Log...	26
Export Audit Log...	27
Export Customers (CSV)...	28
Export Products (CSV)...	28
Import & Verify Export...	29
Import Customers (CSV)...	31
Import Products (CSV)...	31
Export Data (Z3)...	31
Export DATEV (Buchungsstapel)...	31
Archive Browser	32
Exit	32
1.2 Edit Menu	33
Preferences	33
Load Demo Data	34
Switch to Sandbox	34
Corrupted Sandbox Database	34
Sandbox Database Removed	35
Switch to Production	35
Delete Demo Data	35
1.3 Help Menu	36
Quick Reference	36
Manual	36
Download Compliance Agreement	36
Check for Updates	37

Open Database Folder	38
Show Log	38
Start Guided Tour	39
License...	40
Trial Period Badge	40
License Prefs Debug...	40
About	41
1.4 Tenant Selection	41
Function	42
Usage	42
Multi-Company Management	43
Summary	43
2. Dashboard	44
2.1 Dashboard Structure	44
Hero Area (Header Section)	44
Metric Cards	45
2.2 Metrics in Detail	45
Published This Year	45
Drafts	45
Requires Attention	46
Payment Overdue	47
Total Cash Receipts	47
Cash Receipts This Year	48
Outstanding Receivables	49
2.3 Navigation via Metrics	49
How it works:	50
Examples:	50
2.4 Welcome Area (on First Start)	50
Welcome Actions:	51
2.5 Empty Dashboard	52
2.6 Multiple Currencies	53
Display:	53
Currency Handling:	53
2.7 Monthly Cash Receipt Chart	53
What is displayed:	54
Interpretation:	54
2.8 Dashboard and Tenant Selection	55
Behavior:	55
2.9 Dashboard Refresh	56
Automatic Refresh:	56
Manual Refresh:	56
2.10 Typical Dashboard Workflows	56
Morning Routine: Get Overview	56
Weekly Financial Review	57
Month-End Closing	57
Summary	57
3. Sales Documents (Documents)	58
3.1 Document List and Navigation	58
List Overview	58
List View and Grouped Transactions	59
Header	59
3.2 Filters and Search	59
Using the Search Field	60
Opening Filters	61
Available Filters	61

Reset Filters	63
Reactivate Filters	63
3.3 Create Document	64
Create New Quote or Invoice	64
Create From a Document Preset	64
3.4 Edit Document (Draft)	65
General Information	65
Line Items	68
Text Snippets	71
Description / Notes (optional)	72
3.5 Save Document	73
Save as Draft	73
Go Back Without Saving	73
Save a Draft as a Document Preset	73
3.6 Document Status and Lifecycle	74
Status Overview	74
Status Transitions	74
3.7 Publish Document	75
Prerequisites	75
Perform Publication	75
3.8 Record Payment	76
Add Payment	76
Partial Payments	77
Overpayment	77
Undo Payment	77
3.9 Create Invoice from Quote	78
Workflow: Quote → Invoice	78
Quote Revisions	78
3.10 Create Payment Reminder (Dunning)	79
Prerequisites	79
Create Reminder	79
Payment Reminder Fees	79
Escalation Levels	79
Record a Payment with Reminder Fees	80
Mark Reminder as Obsolete	80
3.11 Invoice Correction Options	80
Prerequisites	80
Perform Correction	81
3.12 Duplicate Document	82
Perform Duplication	82
3.13 PDF Export and Preview	83
Show PDF Preview	83
Export PDF	83
ZUGFeRD and XRechnung	84
Review Exported E-Invoice Data	84
Validate Exported E-Invoices	85
Export History	85
3.14 Send Document via Email	85
Prerequisites	85
Send an Email	85
Copy to Sent Folder (IMAP)	86
3.15 Delete Document	86
Delete Drafts	86
Delete Published Documents	86
3.16 Show Audit Log	87
Open Audit Log	87

What is Logged?	87
3.17 Practical Workflows	87
Workflow 1: Quote Process – From Quote to Invoice (5–10 minutes)	87
Workflow 2: Dunning Management – Process Overdue Invoices (5–10 minutes daily)	88
Workflow 3: Month-End Closing – Export All Invoices (15–30 minutes monthly)	89
3.18 Pro Tips for Efficient Work	89
3.19 Related Documents Panel	90
Where the Panel Appears	90
What Links Are Shown	90
Navigate Between Linked Documents	91
Sales Artefacts	91
3.20 Payment Overview	91
How to Open the Payment Overview	91
What the Payment Overview Shows	92
Available Filters	92
Visual Payment Badges	92
Using the Payment Overview to Manage Receivables	92
4. Incoming Documents	92
4.1 What Incoming Documents Are For	93
4.2 Recommended Setup Before First Use	93
4.3 Import Documents	94
Duplicate Warnings	95
Import From an Email Mailbox	95
4.4 E-Invoice Extraction	95
4.5 AI-Assisted Analysis	96
4.6 Review Metadata	96
4.7 Suppliers During Intake	97
4.8 Assign Expense Categories	97
4.9 Document States	98
4.10 Payment Tracking	98
4.11 Attachments	99
4.12 Client-Server Mode	100
4.13 Practical Workflow	100
5. Suppliers and Expense Categories	100
5.1 Suppliers	101
Create Suppliers	101
Link Suppliers and Customers	101
5.2 Expense Categories	101
5.3 SKR03 and SKR04	102
5.4 Default Categories and Account Catalog	102
5.5 Create or Edit an Expense Category	103
Deductibility	103
5.6 Expense Category Suggestions	103
5.7 DATEV Export Behavior	104
5.8 Changing the Tenant Accounting System	104
5.9 Practical Setup Checklist	104
6. Time Tracking (Timesheets)	105
6.1 Timesheet Concept	105
Workflow: From Time Tracking to Invoice	105
6.2 Timesheet List	106
List Overview	106
Status Display	106
6.3 Filters and Search	107
Using the Search Field	107

Filter by Customer	107
Filter by Status	107
6.4 Create Timesheet	108
Create New Timesheet	108
Form Fields	108
Save Timesheet	112
6.5 Edit Timesheet	112
Open Timesheet	112
Detail View Overview	112
Edit Basic Data	113
6.6 Record Time Entries	113
Add New Time Entry	113
Input Form	114
Complete and Incomplete Entries	117
Save Entry	117
6.7 Manage Time Entries	118
Display Entries	118
Edit Entry	118
Delete Entry	119
6.8 Periods Overview	119
Current Period	119
Past Periods	120
Finalize and Archive a Period Without an Invoice	120
6.9 Create Invoice from Period	121
Prerequisites	121
Create Invoice	121
Confirmation Dialog	121
What Happens in the Background?	122
6.10 Edit and Publish Invoice	123
Edit Invoice	123
Publish Invoice	123
Return to Time Tracking	124
6.11 Delete Period (Drafts Only)	124
Prerequisites	124
Delete Period	124
What Happens When Deleting?	125
6.12 Archive Timesheet (Set Inactive)	125
Manually Set Inactive	125
Automatically Inactive Through New Timesheet	125
Display Inactive Timesheets	126
6.13 Practical Workflows	126
Workflow 1: Complete Workflow – Time Tracking to Invoice (15–30 minutes initial, then 5–10 minutes weekly)	126
Workflow 2: Project-Based Billing with Custom Period (10–15 minutes at completion)	127
Workflow 3: Track Partially Non-Billable Hours (5 minutes daily)	128
6.14 Pro Tips for Efficient Time Tracking	129

7. Tenant Management	129
7.1 Tenant Concept	129
Why Multiple Tenants?	130
7.2 Tenant List	130
List Overview	130
Default Tenant	131
7.3 Create Tenant	131
Create New Tenant	131
7.4 Company Information	131

Company Name (required field)	131
Owner (optional)	132
Address (required fields)	132
Tax Information	134
Legal Form And Registration Details	134
7.5 Contact Information	134
General Email (required field)	134
Billing Email (optional)	135
Main Phone (required field)	135
Alternate Phone (optional)	135
Fax (optional)	135
Website (optional)	135
7.6 Bank Information	136
Bank Name (required field)	136
Account Holder (optional)	136
IBAN (required field)	137
BIC/SWIFT (required field)	137
SEPA Creditor ID (optional)	137
7.7 Invoice Settings	138
Invoice Number Pattern (required field)	138
Current Invoice Number (required field)	139
7.8 Quote and Reminder Settings	140
Quote Number Pattern	140
Current Quote Number	140
Reminder Number Pattern	140
Current Reminder Number	141
7.9 Upload Logo	141
Select Logo	141
Logo Preview	141
Delete Logo	142
Recommended Logo Formats	142
7.10 Set as Default	143
Set Default	143
7.11 Save Tenant	143
Save	143
Go Back Without Saving	144
7.12 Edit Tenant	144
Open Tenant	144
Edit Fields	145
Change Number Pattern	145
7.13 Delete Tenant	145
Prerequisites	145
Perform Deletion	145
What Gets Deleted?	146
What Remains?	146
7.14 Switch Tenant	146
Quick Tenant Switch in Menu Bar	146
Select Tenant When Creating Documents	147
7.15 Understanding Numbering Schemes	147
Why Separate Numbering Schemes?	147
Number Example	148
7.16 Practical Workflows	148
Workflow 1: Create First Company (10–15 minutes, one-time)	148
Workflow 2: Add Second Company (5–10 minutes)	149
Workflow 3: Switch Tenant and Create Invoice (1–2 minutes)	150
7.17 Pro Tips for Tenant Management	150

7.18	Payment Profiles	151
	What Is a Payment Profile?	151
	Create and Manage Payment Profiles	151
	Select Which Profile Appears on a Document	152
	QR Codes on Invoices	153
7.19	Document Templates	153
	What Is a Document Template?	153
	Opening the Template Editor	153
	Available Layout Options	154
	Select or Duplicate a Preset Template	154
	Live Preview	155
	Customize the PDF Footer	155
	Best Practices	156

8.	Customer Management	156
8.1	Customer Concept	156
	Why Customer Master Data Is Important	156
8.2	Customer List	157
	List Overview	157
	Search Customers	157
	Filter Customers	158
	Open Credit Badges	159
	Financial Profile	159
	Default Customer Rebate	159
	Empty Customer List	159
8.3	Create Customer	160
	Create New Customer	160
8.4	Customer Information	160
	Company Name (required field)	160
	Owner (optional)	160
	Salutation (optional)	161
	Title (optional)	161
	Internal Notes (optional)	161
	Customer Number (required, unique)	161
	Customer Reference / Leitweg-ID (optional)	161
8.5	Address	162
	Street (required field)	162
	Address Supplement (optional)	162
	Postal Code (required field)	163
	City (required field)	163
	State (optional)	163
	Country (required field)	164
8.6	Contact Information	164
	Billing Email	165
	General Email (optional)	165
	Main Phone	165
	Alternate Phone (optional)	166
	Fax (optional)	166
8.7	Tax Information	166
	VAT ID (optional)	166
	Tax ID / Tax Number (optional)	167
	VAT Rate (%) (required field)	167
	Currency (required field)	168
8.8	Invoice Settings	169
	Default Customer Rebate (optional)	169
	Invoice Language (required field)	169

E-Invoice (required field)	170
When Which Format?	172
8.9 Save Customer	172
Save	172
Go Back Without Saving	173
8.10 Edit Customer	173
Open Customer	173
Edit Fields	174
Correct Address	174
8.11 Delete Customer	175
Prerequisites	175
Perform Deletion	175
What Happens When Deleting?	175
8.12 Customer Count	175
8.13 Practical Workflows	176
Workflow 1: Create First Customer (5 minutes)	176
Workflow 2: Create Customer with E-Invoice (5–7 minutes)	177
Workflow 3: International Customers with Reverse Charge (7–10 minutes)	177
Workflow 4: Update Customer Data (2–3 minutes)	178
8.14 Pro Tips for Customer Management	179
8.15 Customer Import/Export (CSV)	179
Export Customers (CSV)...	179
Import Customers (CSV)...	179
Mapping and preview	179
Required fields (for import)	180
Duplicate detection	180
9. Product Management	180
9.1 Product Concept	180
9.2 Product List	181
9.3 Create and Edit Products	181
Required fields	181
Optional fields	181
9.4 Using Products in Sales Documents	181
Add line item from product	181
Apply a product to an existing line item	181
View product details	182
9.5 Product Import/Export (CSV)	182
Export Products (CSV)...	182
Import Products (CSV)...	182
Mapping and preview	182
Required fields	182
Duplicate detection	182
10. Text Snippets	183
10.1 Text Snippets Concept	183
Why Use Text Snippets?	183
10.2 Typical Use Cases	184
Payment Terms	184
Terms and Conditions	184
Delivery Terms	185
Warranty Information	185
Project Description	185
10.3 Text Snippets List	185
List Overview	185
Empty Text Snippets List	186
10.4 Create Text Snippet	186

Create New Text Snippet	186
10.5 Name (required field)	186
10.6 Content (required field)	187
Plain Text	187
Markdown Formatting	187
10.7 Markdown Syntax	188
Bold Text	188
Italic Text	188
Headings	189
Large Heading	189
Medium Heading	189
Small Heading	189
Bullet Lists (unordered)	189
Numbered Lists (ordered)	190
Nested Lists	191
Links	191
Line Breaks	192
Combinations	192
10.8 Markdown Preview	193
Live Preview in Form	193
10.9 Save Text Snippet	194
Save	194
Go Back Without Saving	194
10.10 Edit Text Snippet	194
Open Text Snippet	194
Edit Fields	195
10.11 Delete Text Snippet	195
Prerequisites	195
Perform Deletion	195
What Happens When Deleting?	196
10.12 Insert Text Snippets into Documents	196
Quick Overview	196
10.13 Practical Workflows	197
Workflow 1: Create Standard Text Snippets (15–20 minutes, one-time)	197
Workflow 2: Create Multilingual Text Snippets (10–15 minutes)	198
Workflow 3: Update Text Snippet (2–3 minutes)	198
Workflow 4: Test Markdown Formatting (5 minutes)	199
10.14 Pro Tips for Text Snippets	200
10.15 Auto-Assignment Rules	200
What Is Auto-Assignment?	200
When Auto-Assignment Saves Time	200
Configuring Auto-Assignment on a Text Snippet	200
How to Test That Auto-Assignment Works	201
Disabling or Overriding Auto-Assignment on a Specific Document	201
11. Settings	201
11.1 Open Settings	202
Way 1: Via Sidebar	202
Way 2: Via Menu Bar	202
11.2 Settings Overview	203
11.3 Appearance	203
Design Mode	203
Light Design (Light Mode)	204
Dark Design (Dark Mode)	205
Application UI Scale	205
11.4 Backup	205

Why Backups Are Important	205
Frequency	205
Backup Directory	206
Backup Retention	207
Note Text	208
Backup Reminder on Exit	208
Encrypted Backups	209
11.5 Documents, Archive, AI, and DATEV	210
AI Integration	210
Archive Storage	211
Document Folder	212
Document Folder	212
Document Name Pattern (optional)	213
Examples for Document Name Patterns	213
Pattern Validation	215
Special Characters in Parameters	216
Archive Root	217
Write Protection (WORM)	217
DATEV / Tax Advisor (Booking Batch Export)	217
S3-Compatible Archive Storage	218
SMB Network Path Archive Storage	219
11.6 Updates	220
Automatically Check for Updates	220
What Happens with Update Checking Enabled?	220
Manual Update Check	220
11.7 Email	221
SMTP (Outgoing Mail)	221
IMAP (Copy to Sent Folder)	221
Test Configuration	222
11.8 Document Emails	222
Templates (Subject & Body)	222
Token List and Insertion	223
Preview	223
Language Variants	223
11.9 User Management	223
11.10 Error Handling	224
11.11 Discard Invalid Settings	224
11.12 Reset Settings	224
11.13 Practical Workflows	225
Workflow 1: Initial Setup (5–10 minutes, one-time)	225
Workflow 2: Backup Strategy for Important Data (10 minutes)	225
Workflow 3: Document Organization by Customer (5 minutes)	226
Workflow 4: Automatically Switch Design by Time of Day (1 minute)	226
11.14 Pro Tips for Settings	227
11.15 Server (Operating Mode)	227
11.16 Admin Area	228
11.17 Tax Rules	228
What Is a Tax Rule?	228
Built-In Tax Presets	228
Automatic Tax Selection Based on Customer Location	229
Create a Custom Tax Rule	229
How Tax Rules Interact with Customers and Documents	230
Common Scenarios in Plain Language	230
11.18 Number Ranges	230
What Are Number Ranges?	230
Opening Number Ranges	230

Document Types and Their Ranges	231
Fields of a Number Range	231
Live Preview	231
Year-End Rollover	231
Best Practices for Naming Schemes	231
[!] Important: Consequences of Changing a Number Range	232

12. GoBD Support	232
12.1 What Is GoBD?	232
Definition	232
Why Is GoBD Important?	233
12.2 The Seven GoBD Principles	233
1. Orderliness	233
2. Completeness	233
3. Accuracy	233
4. Timely Bookings and Records	233
5. Immutability	234
6. Traceability	234
7. Auditability	235
Incoming Documents in the GoBD Workflow	235
12.3 The Audit Log	235
What Is the Audit Log?	235
How Does the Audit Log Work?	235
Cryptographic Hash Chain	236
What Is Logged?	237
XRechnung Export: Two Separate Entries	237
12.4 View Audit Log	238
Display Audit Log for a Document	238
Export Complete Audit Log	239
12.5 Export for Tax Audits	239
Why an Export?	239
Create Export	239
Export Package Structure	241
CSV Format	241
Verification JSON	242
README for Auditors	243
12.6 Verify Audit Log	243
Why Verify?	243
Verify Complete Chain	243
Verify Export Archive	245
12.7 Immutability: Why Invoices Cannot Be Edited	247
The Problem: Retroactive Changes	247
The Solution: Immutability	247
Create Correction Invoice	248
12.8 Sequential Numbering	248
Why Gap-Free Numbering?	248
How the Application Ensures This	248
Avoid Gaps	249
12.9 Retention Obligation	249
10-Year Rule	249
How the Application Supports This	249
Archiving Strategy	250
12.10 Data Access for Tax Auditors (Z1, Z2, Z3)	250
The Three Access Levels	250
Z1: Direct Access	250
Z2: Export Filtered Data	250

Z3: Z3/GDPdU Export	251
12.11 Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ)	251
Question 1: Can I change a published invoice?	251
Question 2: What happens if I delete the audit log?	251
Question 3: Do I have to create an archive every month?	251
Question 4: What if verification fails?	251
Question 5: Can I delete drafts without harming the GoBD-oriented workflow?	251
Question 6: What if I discover an error in an invoice after 10 years?	251
Question 7: Do I have to print the audit log for the tax auditor?	252
Question 8: What if my computer crashes and the database is damaged?	252
12.12 Practical Workflows	252
Workflow 1: Create Monthly Export for Accounting (10 minutes)	252
Workflow 2: Before Tax Audit: Prepare Data (30 minutes)	252
Workflow 3: Regular Verification (Quarterly, 15 minutes)	253
12.13 Pro Tips for GoBD-Oriented Workflows	253

13. Appendix

254

13.1 Glossary	254
A	254
B	254
C	254
D	255
E	255
G	255
H	255
I	256
M	256
N	256
O	256
P	256
Q	257
R	257
S	257
T	257
V	257
X	258
Z	258
13.2 Keyboard Shortcuts	258
Global Keyboard Shortcuts	258
Menu Keyboard Shortcuts	258
Document Editor	259
Markdown Editor (Text Blocks)	259
13.3 Troubleshooting	259
Problem 1: Application Won't Start	259
Problem 2: Database Locked	260
Problem 3: PDF Export Fails	261
Problem 4: XRechnung Validation Fails	261
Problem 5: Verification Fails (Hash Chain Broken)	262
Problem 6: Payment Reminder Cannot Be Created	262
Problem 7: Demo Data Cannot Be Deleted	263
Problem 8: Application Is Very Slow	263
13.4 Technical Information	264
System Requirements	264
Database Storage Location	264
Open Database Folder	265
Log File (Debug Information)	265

Technologies Used	266
Version Information	266
13.5 License and Copyright	266
License	266
License Grant	266
Evaluation Period (Trial)	266
Restrictions	267
Full License	267
13.6 Support and Contact	267
Online Documentation	267
Support Contact	267
Updates	267
Community	268
13.7 About This Documentation	268
Version	268
Authors	268
Feedback	268
Change History	268
13.8 Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ)	269
General	269
Client-Server Mode	270
13.9 Migrating to a New Computer	270
Step 1: Create a Backup on the Old Computer	270
Step 2: Install AGYNAMIX Invoicer on the New Computer	271
Step 3: Restore Your Backup on the New Computer	271
Step 4: Reconfigure Local Settings	271
Step 5: Verify Your Data	271
Notes on License Transfer	271

14. Operating Modes	271
14.1 Overview: Standalone, Host, and Client	272
The Three Modes at a Glance	272
Plain-Language Explanation	272
Which Mode Should I Use?	272
Comparison Table	273
14.2 Switching Modes	273
How to Switch	273
14.3 Setting Up as Host (TASK-MAN-14)	273
14.3.1 Prerequisites	274
14.3.2 Running the Host Setup Wizard	274
14.3.3 Verifying the Host is Running	275
14.3.4 Network and Firewall Notes	275
14.3.5 Recommendations for Always-On Operation	275
14.4 Headless Mode (Running the Host Without a Screen)	275
14.4.1 Prerequisites — Configure Before Going Headless	275
14.4.2 Starting Headless — Command Examples	275
14.4.3 Behavior in Headless Mode	276
14.4.4 Running at System Startup	276
14.5 Connecting as Client (TASK-MAN-15)	276
14.5.1 What You Need Before Connecting	276
14.5.2 Connecting to the Host	276
14.5.3 Reconnecting When the Host Is Unavailable	277
14.5.4 Switching Back to Standalone	277
14.6 Client Mode: What to Expect (TASK-MAN-16)	277
14.6.1 Data and Synchronization	277
14.6.2 Creating and Editing Documents	278

14.6.3	What Synchronizes vs. What Stays Local	278
14.6.4	Connection Loss Mid-Session	278
14.6.5	Host License Change	278
14.6.6	Settings: Local vs. Host	278
14.6.7	Sandbox / Demo Database in Client Mode	278
14.6.8	Passwords and Recovery Keys	279
14.6.9	Permissions	279
14.7	Terminal Server and Administrator Configuration	279
14.7.1	What You Can Redirect	279
14.7.2	Priority Order	279
14.7.3	Windows Terminal Server Example	280
14.7.4	Runtime Properties File Locations	280
14.7.5	SMB Archive on Terminal Servers	281
14.7.6	Terminal Server Smoke Test	281
14.7.7	Notes And Warnings	281

AGYNAMIX Invoicer - User Manual

Version 1.7.0 Date: June 2026

About AGYNAMIX Invoicer

AGYNAMIX Invoicer is a professional desktop application for freelancers and small businesses to create and manage quotes, invoices, incoming supplier invoices, expense categories, and time tracking. The software was specifically developed for the requirements of the German market and supports GoBD-oriented archiving and audit-log workflows for both outgoing and incoming business documents.

Key Features

- **Sales Documents:** Quotes, invoices, correction invoices, and payment reminders with grouped transactions and quote revisions
 - **Incoming Documents:** Upload, review, categorize, pay, and archive supplier invoices
 - **Expense Categories:** SKR03/SKR04-aware purchase-side account mapping for DATEV handover
 - **AI Assistance:** Optional local or OpenAI-compatible analysis for incoming document metadata
 - **Time Tracking:** Time sheets with direct invoicing, period finalization, and archive PDFs
 - **Multi-Tenant:** Manage multiple companies in one database
 - **GoBD Support:** Archiving features and audit log
 - **E-Invoicing:** Support for ZUGFeRD and XRechnung
 - **Offline-Capable:** No cloud connection required, all data remains local
-

System Requirements

Operating System

- **Windows:** Windows 10 or higher
- **macOS:** macOS 11 (Big Sur) or higher on Apple Silicon or a 64-bit Intel processor
- **Linux:** Current distributions (Ubuntu 20.04+, Fedora 34+, etc.)

Hardware

- **Processor:** 64-bit processor
- **Memory:** Minimum 4 GB RAM (8 GB recommended)
- **Hard Drive:** 500 MB free space for application
- **Additional:** Sufficient storage space for documents and backups

Software

- **PDF Viewer:** For document preview (e.g., Adobe Reader, Preview, Evince)

[i] **Note:** Java is bundled with the application — you do not need to install anything separately.

About This Manual

This manual is aimed at freelancers and small businesses who want to use AGYNAMIX Invoicer to manage their invoicing. It assumes you already have basic experience with invoicing and are familiar with typical business processes.

Manual Structure

The manual is divided into thematic chapters, each covering a functional area of the application:

1. **Menu Bar** - All menu functions in detail
2. **Dashboard** - Overview and key metrics
3. **Documents** - Create and manage quotes and invoices
4. **Incoming Documents** - Upload, review, categorize, pay, and archive received invoices
5. **Suppliers and Expense Categories** - Maintain suppliers and SKR03/SKR04 account mappings
6. **Time Tracking** - Record and bill time sheets
7. **Tenants** - Manage company data
8. **Customers** - Maintain customer master data, financial profile, and default customer rebates
9. **Products** - Maintain product master data and reuse in documents
10. **Text Snippets** - Manage reusable texts
11. **Settings** - Configure application
12. **GoBD Support** - Understand archiving and audit-log features
13. **Appendix** - Glossary, troubleshooting, and additional information
14. **Operating Modes** - Standalone, server, and client mode

Conventions in This Manual

Typographic Conventions:

- *Menu Item* - UI elements such as buttons, menus, and fields
- **Bold** - Important terms and highlights
- *Italic* - Emphasis and notes
- `Code` - Paths, filenames, patterns

Symbols:

- [»] **Efficiency Tip:** Time-saving workflows
- [*] **Best Practice:** Recommended procedures
- [!] **Important:** Critical notes on data security/compliance
- [i] **Trick:** Lesser-known features
- [~] **Workflow Tip:** Optimized processes

Screenshots:

- Screenshots are marked with [Screenshot: Title] and caption
 - Numbering is automatic as Figure X
-

Quick Start Guide

This quick start guide walks you through the first steps with AGYNAMIX Invoicer – from installation to your first invoice.

[i] **New here? Try demo data first.** Before entering your own real data, you can load a ready-made demo database to explore all features. See Step 0: Load Demo Data (Optional) below.

About GoBD: GoBD is the German tax authority's set of rules for electronic bookkeeping – it describes how invoices should be stored in a traceable and auditable way. AGYNAMIX Invoicer supports you with automatic protection and logging features; correct configuration, backups, and use remain your responsibility.

Step 1: Installation

Takes about 2 minutes.

1. Download the installation file for your operating system:

- **Windows:** .msi or .exe installer
- **macOS:** Choose a macos-arm64 DMG or ZIP for Apple Silicon, or a macos-x64 DMG or ZIP for an Intel Mac. In **Apple menu > About This Mac**, a **Chip** entry identifies Apple Silicon and a **Processor** entry identifies an Intel Mac.
- **Linux:** .deb, .rpm, OR .AppImage

2. Run the installation:

- **Windows:** Double-click the installation file and follow the wizard
- **macOS:** Open the DMG and drag the application to the Applications folder, or extract the ZIP and move the application there
- **Linux:** Install the package via your package manager or run the .AppImage directly

3. Start the application:

- Via Start Menu (Windows), Launchpad (macOS), or Applications Menu (Linux)

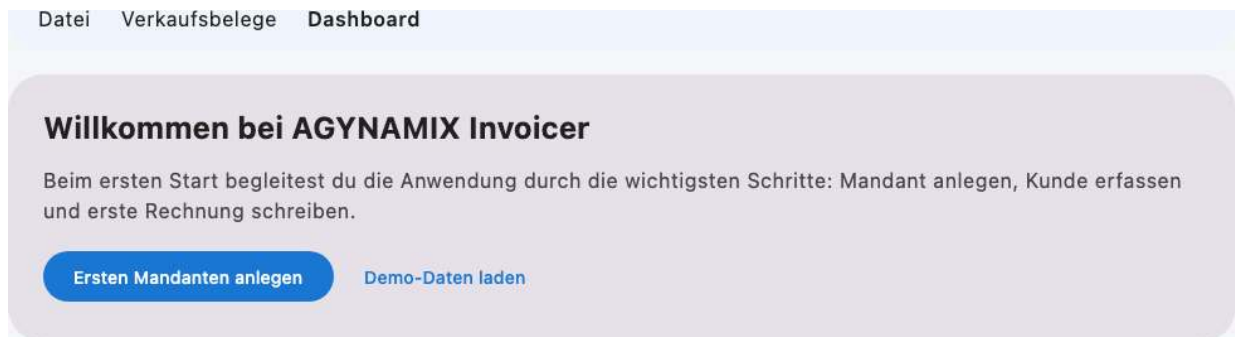


Figure 1: The welcome screen when first starting AGYNAMIX Invoicer

Step 2: Create Your First Tenant

Takes about 5 minutes.

A **tenant** is your company or business profile — think of it as a folder that holds all your company details, bank account information, and invoice numbering. Most people only need one tenant, but you can add more if you manage multiple businesses.

A tenant represents your company or business. This is where all company data, bank details, and invoice numbering schemes are managed.

1. On first start, the dashboard shows the welcome area
2. Click **Create your first tenant**
3. Fill out the form with your company data:

Required Fields:

- Company name
- Complete address (street, postal code, city, country)
- Tax number and VAT ID
- Phone and email
- Bank details (IBAN and BIC)

Invoice Numbering Schemes:

- Define patterns for invoice and quote numbers
- Example: RE-`{year}`-`{doc_no}` results in RE-2025-1
- Set the starting number (e.g., 1 or 1000)

Figure 2: Form for creating a new tenant with all required fields

4. Optional: Upload your company logo (recommended for professional appearance)
5. Enable Set as default tenant (especially important for the first tenant)
6. Click Save

[!] **Important:** Invoice numbering schemes should be configured correctly before the first invoice, as they cannot be changed after publication.

[i] **Tip:** Use the {year} variable in the numbering pattern to start a new numbering scheme each year (e.g., RE-2025-1, RE-2026-1).

Step 3: Create Your First Customer

Takes about 2 minutes.

Customers are the invoice recipients. For each customer, you store address, contact details, and billing information.

1. Click Create a customer on the dashboard
2. Or navigate via the sidebar to Customers → Create New button
3. Fill out the customer form:

Required Fields:

- Company name (or first/last name for individuals)
- Complete address
- VAT rate (default: 19%)
- Currency (default: EUR)
- Document language (German or English)

Optional Fields:

- VAT ID (important for intra-community supplies)
- Email and phone
- E-invoice type (ZUGFeRD, XRechnung, or none)

Figure 3: Customer form with all relevant fields for invoicing

4. Click Save

[*] **Best Practice:** Maintain your customers' VAT IDs carefully – they are important for correct tax calculation and VAT returns.

Step 4: Create Your First Invoice

Takes about 3 minutes once you have a tenant and customer.

Now you can create your first invoice.

1. Navigate via the sidebar to Documents
2. Click Create New → New Invoice
3. Fill out the invoice form:

Document Data:

- Select the customer from the dropdown
- Invoice date (pre-filled with today)
- Due date (default: 14 days after invoice date)
- Currency is inherited from the customer

Add Invoice Items:

1. Click Add Item
2. Description of service/product
3. Quantity
4. Unit price (net)
5. VAT rate (pre-filled from customer)
6. Repeat for all items

Figure 4: New invoice form with areas for customer data, items, and text snippets

Text Snippets (optional):

- Introduction: Text before the invoice items
- Conclusion: Text after the invoice items (e.g., payment terms)
- You can select existing text snippets from the dropdown or enter directly

Markdown Support:

- **Bold:** ****Text****
 - *Italic:* **Text**
 - Lists, headings, etc. are supported
4. Click **Save** to save the invoice as a draft
 5. Use **Preview** to check the result

[!] **Important:** Drafts only have a temporary draft number and can still be edited.

Step 5: Publish and Export Invoice

Takes less than 1 minute.

When the invoice is ready, you must publish it to receive its official invoice number.

1. Check all information once more
2. Click **Next Step** → **Publish**
3. The invoice now receives its official invoice number (e.g., RE-2025-1)
4. The status changes from **Draft** to **Published**

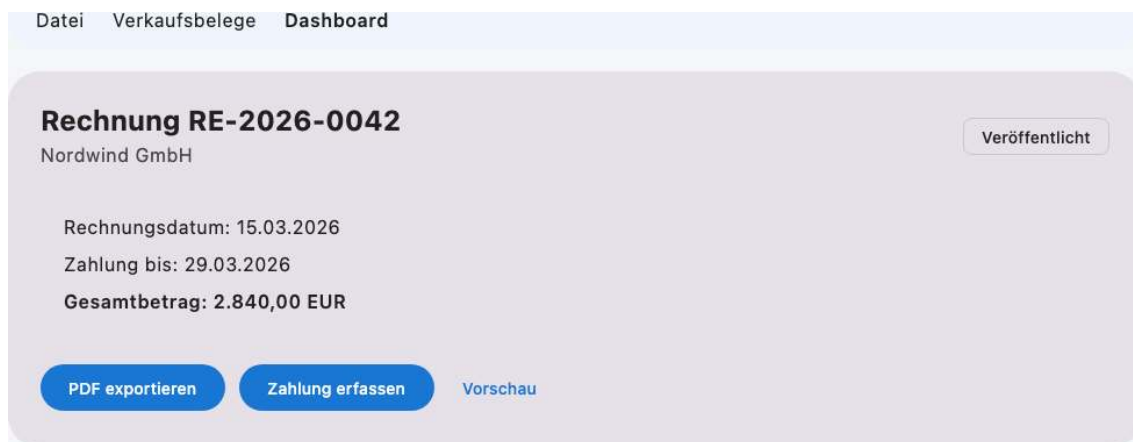


Figure 5: A published invoice with its assigned invoice number and all action options

[!] **Important:** After publication, the invoice is immutable for GoBD reasons. Corrections are only possible via correction invoices.

Export PDF:

1. Click the preview icon (eye icon) or in the menu on **Preview**
2. The PDF is automatically saved in the configured documents folder
3. The file opens in your PDF viewer
4. You can now send the file via email or print it

[i] **Tip:** Configure the documents folder in the settings before exporting your first invoice. This way, all PDFs are automatically stored in the right place.

Step 6: Record Payment

Takes less than 1 minute.

When the customer has paid the invoice, record the payment:

1. Open the invoice by clicking **Edit**
2. Click **Next Step** → **Mark as paid**
3. Enter the payment date
4. Optional: Record the actual amount received (for partial payments)
5. Click **Record payment**
6. The status changes to **Fully paid**



Figure 6: Dialog for recording a payment with date and amount

[*] **Best Practice:** Record payments promptly to keep track of outstanding receivables. The dashboard shows you all open and overdue invoices.

Step 7: Prepare Incoming Documents (Optional)

Takes about 5 minutes for the first setup, then about 1 minute per document.

If you also want to manage supplier invoices and receipts in Invoiceer, set up the purchase-side workflow:

1. Open **Settings** → **Archive** and configure archive storage
2. Open your tenant and verify the accounting system (SKR03 or SKR04)
3. Open **Expense Categories** and review the default categories and account mappings
4. Optional: Open **Settings** → **AI** and connect a local or OpenAI-compatible provider
5. Open **Incoming Documents** and import your first supplier invoice PDF
6. Review extracted data, assign a supplier and expense category, then approve the document

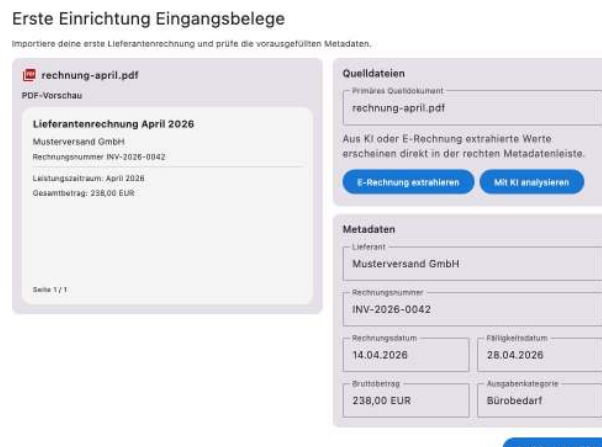


Figure XX: Incoming document intake with source PDF, extracted fields, and category assignment

[i] **Tip:** AI analysis can speed up data entry, but always verify extracted values before approval. Amounts, VAT, supplier, payment data, and category mapping remain your responsibility.

Step 0: Load Demo Data (Optional)

If you want to explore AGYNAMIX Invoicer before entering your own data, load the demo database first. It takes about 30 seconds and gives you a fully working environment with sample invoices, customers, and tenants to click around in.

1. On the welcome screen of the dashboard: Click Load Demo Data
2. Or via the menu: Edit → Load Demo Data (on first start)
3. The database is filled with realistic sample data:
 - 2 sample tenants (German companies)
 - 100 sample customers
 - Approx. 300 documents (quotes, invoices, payment reminders)
 - Time sheets with entries

[i] **Tip:** Demo data is ideal for exploring the application without having to enter your own data. You can remove it anytime via Edit → Delete Demo Data, or simply continue setting up your real data in parallel by switching databases.

Next Steps

After this quick start, you can:

1. **Explore the dashboard:** Get an overview of your key metrics
2. **Create text snippets:** Create reusable texts for introductions and conclusions
3. **Configure settings:**
 - Set up backup strategy
 - Configure document path with naming pattern
 - Configure archive storage for GoBD and incoming documents
 - Optional: Configure AI integration for incoming document analysis
 - Customize theme (light/dark)
4. **Add more customers:** Build your customer base
5. **Add suppliers and expense categories:** Prepare purchase-side bookkeeping
6. **Use incoming documents:** Archive supplier invoices and track payments
7. **Use time tracking:** Record working hours and bill them directly
8. **Understand GoBD support:** Learn about the archiving features

[?] **Continue reading:** The following chapters of this manual cover all functions in detail. Use the table of contents to jump directly to the topics relevant to you.

Help and Support

In the Application

- **Guided Tour:** Help → Start guided tour for an interactive introduction
- **Documentation:** Help → Documentation opens the online documentation
- **Log:** Help → Show log for technical problems

Online Resources

- **Website:** <https://www.agynamix.de>
- **Support Email:** support@agynamix.de
- **Updates:** The application automatically checks for new versions

Data Location

Your data is stored locally on your computer:

Windows:

%LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\invoicer_db.db

macOS:

~/Library/Application Support/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db

Linux:

~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db

[!] **Important:** Create regular backups! Configure automatic backups in the settings to prevent data loss.

Copyright and License

Copyright © 2025 AGYNAMIX

All rights reserved.

AGYNAMIX Invoicer is proprietary software. Use is only permitted with a valid license.

This manual may be copied for personal use. Distribution to third parties or commercial use without express permission is not permitted.

Trademarks:

- AGYNAMIX is a registered trademark of AGYNAMIX GmbH
- All other mentioned brands are the property of their respective owners

Disclaimer: The information in this manual was created with the greatest care. Nevertheless, errors cannot be completely excluded. No liability is assumed for damages resulting from errors in this manual.

Good luck with AGYNAMIX Invoicer!

We wish you efficient work and clear invoice management. If you have any questions or suggestions, please feel free to contact us.

1. Menu Bar

The menu bar is located at the top of the application window and provides access to important functions that are not accessible via the sidebar. It consists of three main menus (File, Edit, Help) as well as the tenant selection in the center.

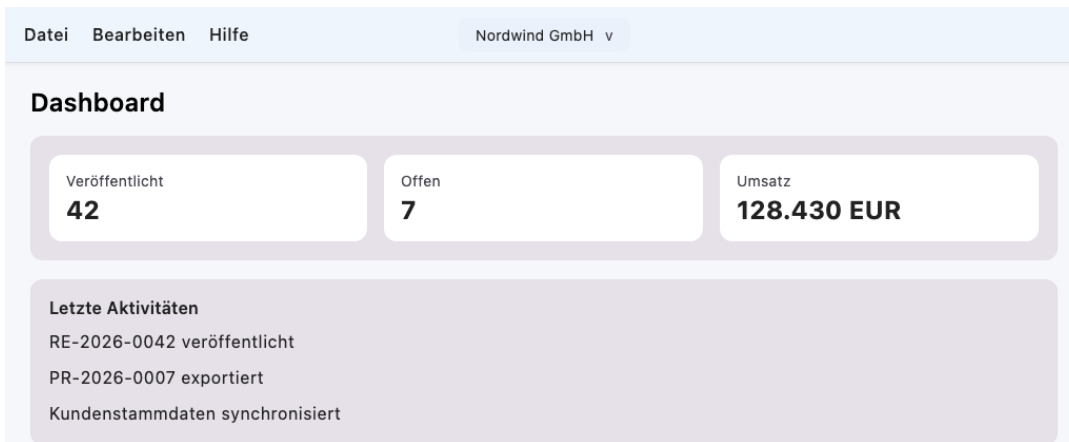


Figure 7: The menu bar with all three menus and the central tenant selection

1.1 File Menu

The File menu contains functions for data backup, restore, and GoBD-oriented archiving.

Some actions are grouped in submenus:

- File → Export → ...
- File → Import → ...

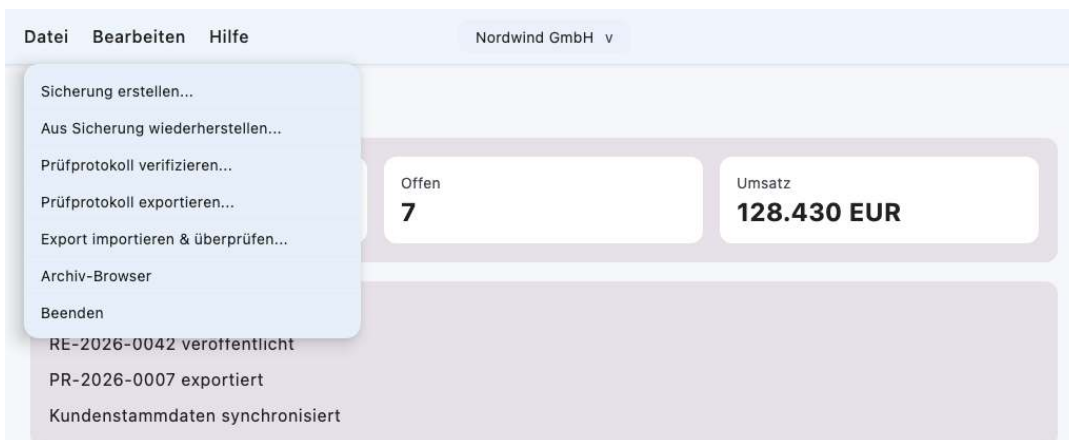


Figure 8: The opened File menu with all available options

Create Backup...

Creates a complete backup of your database.

Function:

- Saves the complete database in a single file
- Contains all tenants, customers, documents, time sheets, and settings
- Automatically compressed (ZIP format)
- Filename contains timestamp: `invoicer-{production|sandbox}-YYYY-MM-DD-HHMMSS.zip`

Usage:

1. Click File → Create Backup...
2. Choose a destination directory in the dialog
3. The backup is created and saved in the selected directory

4. A success message confirms the created backup

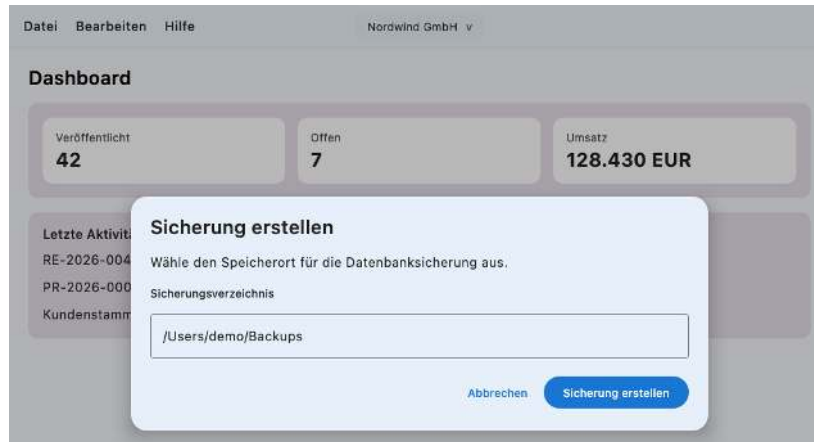


Figure 9: Dialog for selecting the storage location for the database backup

When to create backups:

- Before major changes (e.g., bulk editing, updates)
- Regularly (daily/weekly) - see automatic backups in settings
- Before system maintenance or operating system updates
- Before switching to a new computer

[!] **Important:** Backups should be stored in a secure location outside your computer (external hard drive, NAS, cloud storage). In case of hard drive failure, local backups are not accessible.

[i] **Tip:** Configure automatic backups in the settings so you never forget to create a backup. The application automatically creates a backup when closing.

Restore from Backup...

Restores a previously created backup.

Function:

- Completely overwrites the current database
- All current data will be lost
- Imports all tenants, customers, documents, and settings from the backup

Usage:

1. Click File → Restore from Backup...
2. **Warning:** A dialog warns you that all current data will be overwritten
3. Confirm with Restore or cancel with Cancel
4. Select the backup file (.zip) in the file selection dialog
5. The application loads the backup and restarts
6. After restart, you will see the data from the backup

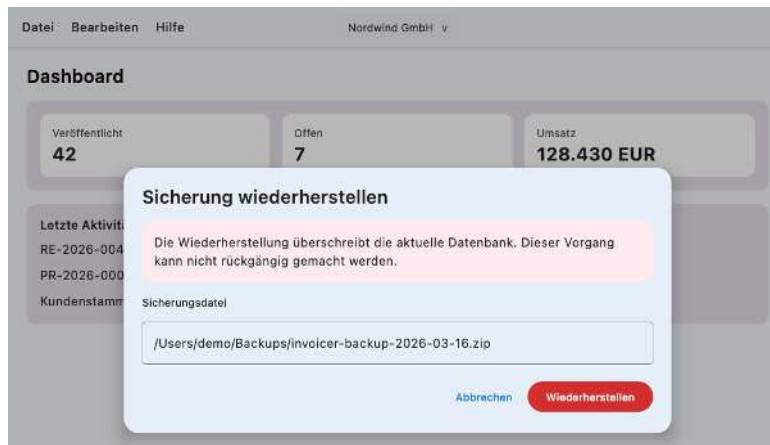


Figure 10: Warning dialog before overwriting the current database

Use Cases:

- After data loss or corruption
- When switching to a new computer
- After accidental deletion of important data
- During migration from an old to a new installation

[!] **Important:** The restore cannot be undone. Create a backup of the current database beforehand if you want to access it later.

[*] **Best Practice:** Regularly test whether your backups work by performing a restore in a test installation.

Verify Audit Log...

Checks the integrity of the internal audit log (transaction log).

Function:

- Verifies the cryptographic hash chain of all audit log entries
- Ensures that no entries were subsequently changed or deleted
- Immutability verification for GoBD-oriented workflows
- Verification is performed on a per-tenant basis

Usage:

1. Click File → Verify Audit Log...
2. Select the tenant to verify
3. Click Start Verification
4. The application checks all audit log entries
5. The result is displayed:
 - **Valid:** All entries are unchanged
 - **Invalid:** Manipulations were detected

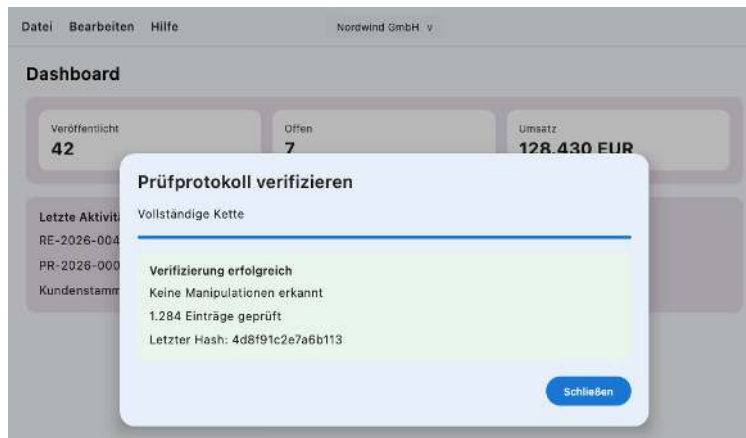


Figure 11: Success message after successful verification of the audit log

Result Details:

- **Total entries checked:** Number of verified log entries
- **Sequence range:** First and last sequence number
- **Chain status:** Valid or Invalid
- **Sequence gaps:** Missing entries (should not occur)
- **Hash errors:** List of entries with invalid hashes

When to verify:

- During tax audits (upon auditor's request)
- After unusual system events
- Regularly for quality assurance (e.g., annually)
- Before submission to external archiving

[i] **Trick:** You can perform verification at any time – it doesn't change any data and only takes a few seconds.

Export Audit Log...

Exports the audit log to a GoBD-oriented archive.

Function:

- Creates a ZIP archive with all audit log entries for a time period
- Contains all associated PDF documents
- Hash chain for verifying integrity
- Format complies with GoBD requirements for external archiving

Usage:

1. Click File → Export → Export Audit Log...
2. Select the **tenant**
3. Select the **time period**:
 - Month and year (e.g., November 2025)
4. The **export path** is shown (automatically determined based on archive root)
5. Click Start Export
6. Wait until the export is complete
7. The success message shows the file path
8. Optional: Use "Copy To" to copy the archive to an additional location

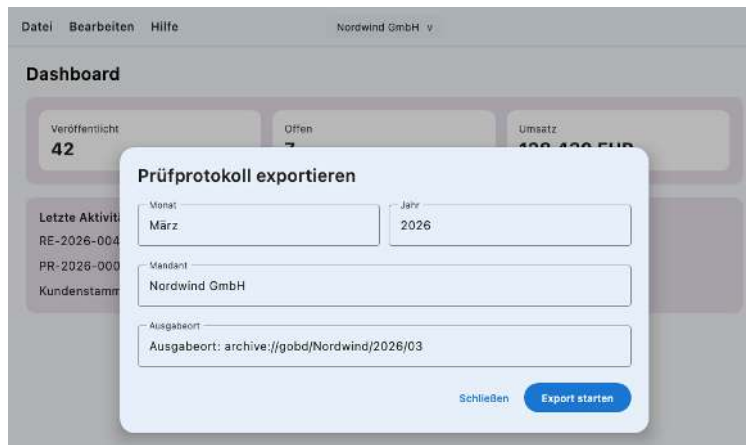


Figure 12: Dialog for exporting the audit log with time period and tenant selection

Archive contents:

- `audit_log_YYYYMM-YYYYMM.csv` - All audit log entries in CSV format (UTF-8 with BOM)
- `audit_log_YYYYMM-YYYYMM_verification.json` - Verification metadata with hashes
- `documents/` - Folder with all exported PDF documents
- `README.txt` - German instructions for archive structure

Filename:

- Format: `gobd_export_{tenant}_{startYYYYMM}-{endYYYYMM}_{hash16}.zip`
- Example: `gobd_export_my_company_202511-202511_a1b2c3d4e5f6g7h8.zip`
- A sidecar `.meta.txt` file is also created for integrity verification

When to export:

- **Monthly/Quarterly:** For regular archiving
- **Annually:** At year-end
- **During tax audit:** Upon request from the tax office
- **During operational audit:** For submission to auditor
- **Before major changes:** As additional backup

[!] **Important:** GoBD requires audit logs to be retained for at least 10 years. Archive the exports on a secure storage medium and create copies in different locations.

[~] **Workflow Tip:** At the end of the month, automatically export the audit log and archive it together with the PDF invoices. This way you meet all GoBD requirements.

Export Customers (CSV)...

Exports your customer master data as a CSV file.

Usage:

1. Click File → Export → Export Customers (CSV)...
2. Select a destination folder
3. The application creates a `customers-export-...csv` file in that folder

[?] **Continue reading:** Details on CSV import/export are described in Chapter 8 (Customers).

Export Products (CSV)...

Exports your product master data as a CSV file.

Usage:

1. Click File → Export → Export Products (CSV)...
2. Select a destination folder
3. The application creates a products-export-...csv file in that folder

[?] **Continue reading:** Details on CSV import/export are described in Chapter 9 (Products).

Import & Verify Export...

Imports and verifies a previously exported audit log archive.

Function:

- Reads in a GoBD export archive (.zip)
- Checks the hash chain of the audit log
- Verifies all contained PDF documents
- Shows detailed verification results

Usage:

1. Click File → Import → Import & Verify Export...
2. Click Select File
3. Select a previously exported archive (.zip)
4. Click Start Verification
5. Wait until verification is complete
6. Check the result

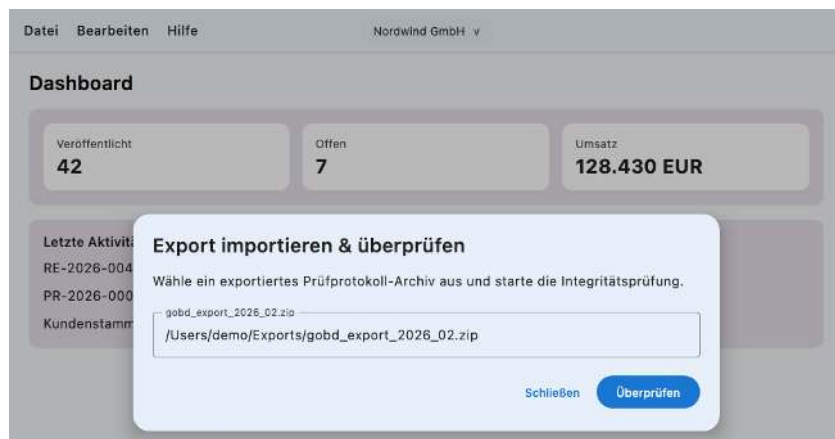


Figure 13: Dialog for selecting and verifying an imported audit log archive

Verification Results:

Chain Integrity:

- **Total entries:** Number of log entries in the archive
- **Sequence range:** First and last sequence number
- **Chain status:** Valid or Invalid
- **Sequence gaps:** Missing entries (normal for date range exports)
- **Chain errors:** List of entries with invalid hashes

Document Verification:

- **Documents in archive:** Number of contained PDFs
- **Verified documents:** Number of successfully checked PDFs
- **Document errors:** List of documents with verification errors

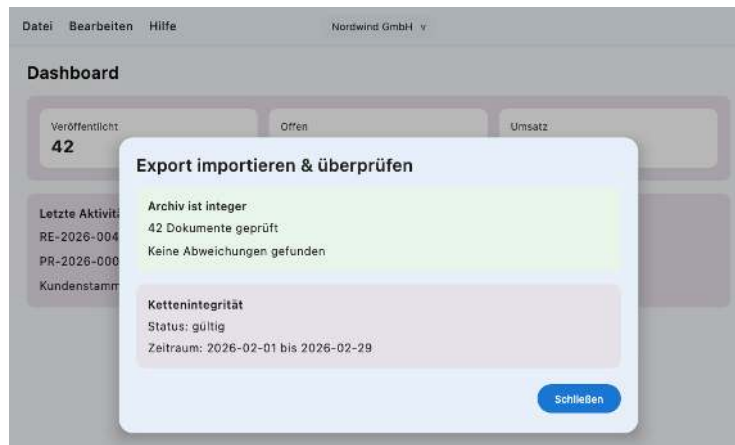


Figure 14: Successful verification of an archive with all details on chain integrity

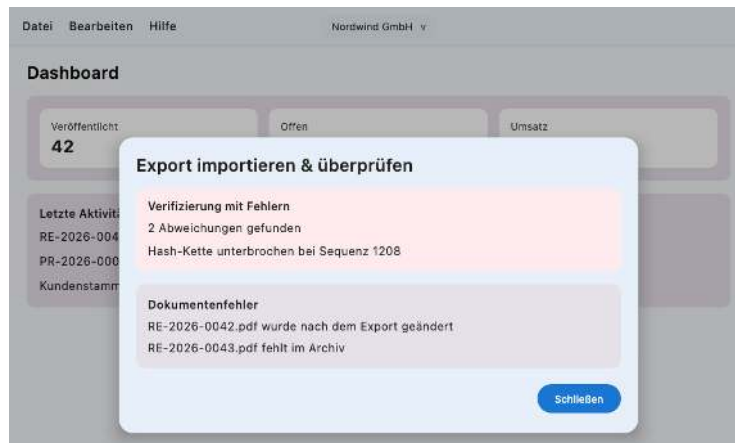


Figure 15: Verification with detected errors – documents were subsequently modified

Interpreting the Results:

Valid Archive:

- Chain status: Valid
- No hash errors
- All documents verified
- → Archive is unchanged and legally secure

[!] Sequence Gaps in Date Range Export:

- Normal when only a time period was exported
- Entries outside the time period are missing from the sequence
- Integrity of included entries remains verifiable
- Note text explains the gaps

Invalid Archive:

- Chain status: Invalid
- Hash errors present
- Documents were modified
- → Archive was tampered with or is corrupted

Use Cases:

- **During tax audit:** Proof of immutability of archives
- **After archiving:** Check whether archiving was successful
- **Before sharing:** Verification before handover to accountant/auditor

- **After storage media change:** Check after migration to new media

[*] **Best Practice:** Verify audit log archives immediately after export and before sharing. This ensures that the archives were created correctly and are immutable.

[i] **Tip:** Keep the original archive together with a verification protocol (screenshot). In case of inquiries, you can prove that the archive was valid at the time of creation.

Import Customers (CSV)...

Imports customers from a CSV file.

Usage:

1. Click **File** → **Import** → **Import Customers (CSV)...**
2. Select the CSV file
3. Review the mapping and preview
4. Start the import

[?] **Continue reading:** Details on CSV import/export are described in Chapter 8 (Customers).

Import Products (CSV)...

Imports products from a CSV file.

Usage:

1. Click **File** → **Import** → **Import Products (CSV)...**
2. Select the CSV file
3. Review the mapping and preview
4. Start the import

[?] **Continue reading:** Details on CSV import/export are described in Chapter 9 (Products).

Export Data (Z3)...

Exports tax-relevant data (Z3/GDPdU) for audits.

Prerequisites:

- The **Archive Root** is configured in settings

Usage:

1. Click **File** → **Export** → **Export Data (Z3)...**
2. Select tenant and time period/fiscal year (depending on the dialog)
3. Start export
4. After completion, the storage location is shown

[?] **Continue reading:** Details on Z3 export are described in Chapter 10 (GoBD Support).

Export DATEV (Buchungsstapel)...

Creates a DATEV booking batch (EXTF) for accounting/tax advisory.

Function:

- Exports relevant outgoing documents to the DATEV EXTF format

- Creates a ZIP file containing the export CSV (EXTF_Buchungsstapel.csv)
- Stores the export in the GoBD archive (including integrity metadata)

Prerequisites:

- The **Archive Root** is configured in settings
- The DATEV **Client number** is set in settings (required)

Important note about the period:

- An export must **not** span across two fiscal years. Choose a period within one fiscal year.

Usage:

1. Click **File** → **Export** → **Export DATEV (Buchungsstapel)...**
2. Select tenant and period
3. Check DATEV settings (advisor number, client number, revenue account)
4. Start export
5. After completion you can open the export folder in your file manager

[?] **Continue reading:** DATEV settings are described in Chapter 11 (Settings).

Archive Browser

Opens the audit log view filtered to archive exports.

Function:

- Navigates to the audit log view
- Automatically applies a filter for **archive exports** (e.g., audit log exports, Z3 exports, DATEV exports)
- Useful for quickly looking up export events (and their timestamps)

Usage:

1. Click **File** → **Archive Browser**
 2. The application switches to the audit log view with a matching filter
 3. Adjust filter/time range if needed
-

Exit

Closes the application.

Function:

- Terminates the application cleanly
- Saves all open changes
- Automatically creates a backup (if configured)
- Performs cleanup tasks

Usage:

- Click **File** → **Exit**
- Or close the window via the X symbol
- Or use the keyboard shortcut (if configured)

When quitting:

1. **Unsaved changes:** Dialog asks if you want to save
2. **Automatic backup:** If enabled in settings, a backup is created
3. **Save window position:** Size and position are saved for the next start
4. **Sidebar status:** Collapsed/expanded is saved

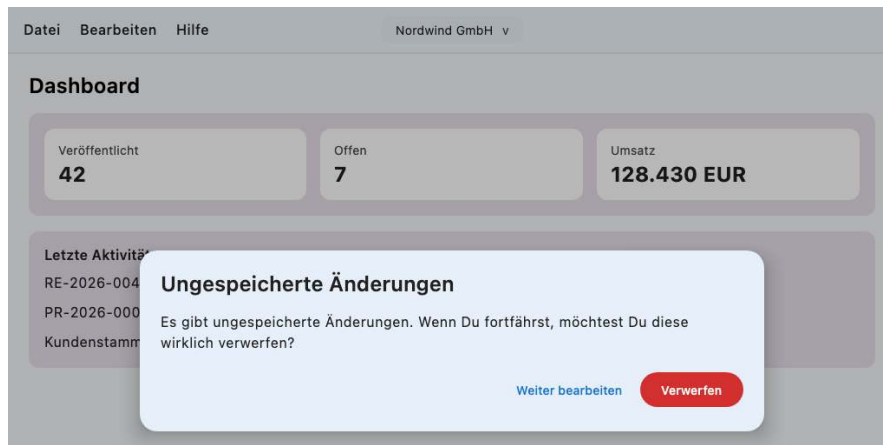


Figure 16: Dialog for unsaved changes before quitting

[!] **Important:** Always close the application via `File` → `Exit` and not by terminating the process. Only this way will all data be saved correctly and backups created.

[*] **Best Practice:** Configure automatic backups when quitting in the settings. This way you always have a current backup, even if you forget.

1.2 Edit Menu

The Edit menu provides access to the settings and demo/sandbox functions.



Figure 17: The Edit menu with settings and demo/sandbox actions

Preferences

Opens the application's settings area.

Function:

- Navigates to the settings page
- Equivalent to clicking `Settings` in the sidebar

Usage:

- Click `Edit` → `Preferences`
- The sidebar automatically switches to `Settings`
- The main area shows the settings page

Settings Areas:

- **Appearance:** Theme (light/dark), language
- **Backup:** Configure automatic backups
- **Documents:** Paths and naming patterns for PDF export
- **Updates:** Automatic update check
- **Email:** SMTP/IMAP configuration for sending emails
- **Document Emails:** Templates for document email subject/body
- **User Management:** Users, roles, and permissions (if enabled)

[i] **Tip:** Settings are also accessible via the sidebar. The menu entry is a shortcut for users who prefer the menu bar.

[?] **Continue reading:** All settings are described in detail in Chapter 11 (Settings).

Load Demo Data

Downloads a demo database and creates a **sandbox** so you can safely try the application.

Function:

- Downloads a demo database from the internet
- Creates a sandbox database (separate from your production data)

Usage:

1. Click `Edit` → `Load Demo Data`
 2. Confirm the dialog (internet connection required)
 3. After download you can switch to the sandbox
-

Switch to Sandbox

Switches to the sandbox database (test environment).

Function:

- Activates sandbox mode
- All changes affect only the sandbox database

Usage:

- Click `Edit` → `Switch to Sandbox`

Visibility:

- Only available if a sandbox exists and you are currently in production
-

Corrupted Sandbox Database

If the sandbox database is corrupted or empty, the application shows an informational dialog.

Dialog title: Corrupted Sandbox Database

What you can do:

- The application offers to remove the sandbox (button: `Delete Corrupted Sandbox`)
- Your production data is not affected

Hint:

- To create a new sandbox afterwards, use `Edit` → `Load Demo Data`.
-

Sandbox Database Removed

If a corrupted/empty sandbox was removed automatically, the application informs you about it.

Dialog title: Sandbox Database Removed

Important:

- You are using the production database again
 - Your production data is not affected
-

Switch to Production

Switches back to the production database.

Function:

- Deactivates sandbox mode
- You work with your real data again

Usage:

- Click Edit → Switch to Production

Visibility:

- Only available if you are currently in the sandbox
-

Delete Demo Data

Deletes the sandbox database (demo data).

Function:

- Permanently removes demo/sandbox data
- Production data is not affected
- Switches back to the production database (if you are currently in the sandbox)
- Only visible if a sandbox exists

Usage:

1. Click Edit → Delete Demo Data
2. **Warning:** Dialog asks for confirmation
3. Confirm with Delete
4. The demo data is removed
5. You start with an empty database

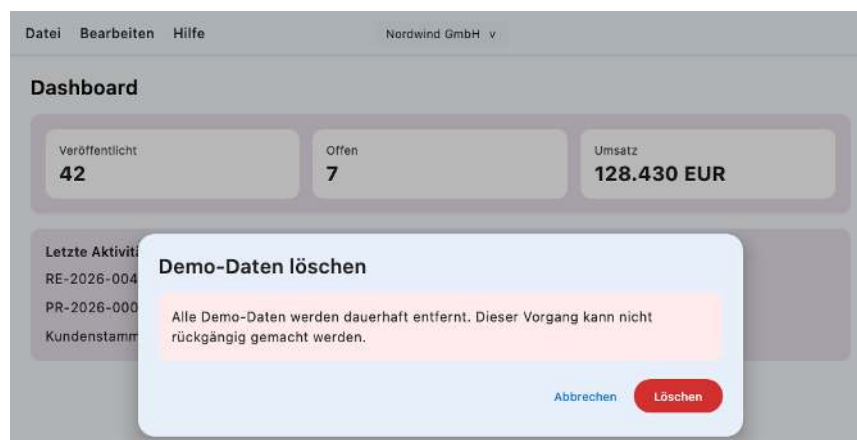


Figure 23: Warning dialog before deleting demo data

[!] **Important:** This action cannot be undone. If you've already entered your own data, it will also be deleted. Create a backup first!

[!] **Important:** This action cannot be undone. It affects the sandbox/demo data. Create an additional backup of your production data if needed.

[*] **Best Practice:** Use demo data to test the application. When you're ready to work productively, delete the demo data and start with your own data.

1.3 Help Menu

The Help menu provides access to documentation, support functions, and system information.

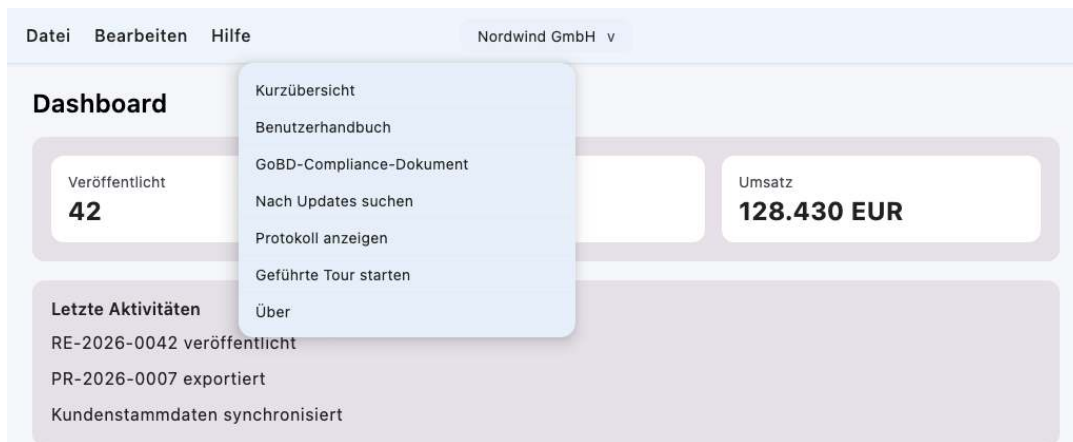


Figure 18: The opened Help menu with documentation and support options

Quick Reference

Opens the quick reference in your browser.

Usage:

- Click Help → Quick Reference

Manual

Opens the full user manual in your browser.

Usage:

- Click Help → Manual

Download Compliance Agreement

Downloads the procedural documentation (Verfahrensdokumentation) as a PDF.

Usage:

- Click Help → Download Compliance Agreement
-

Check for Updates

Manually checks if a new version is available.

Function:

- Contacts the update server
- Compares the installed version with the available version
- Shows a result (update available or not)

Usage:

1. Click Help → Check for Updates
2. Wait while the check runs
3. **No update available:** Dialog informs you that you're using the latest version
4. **Update available:** Dialog shows the new version and changes
5. Click Download to go to the download page

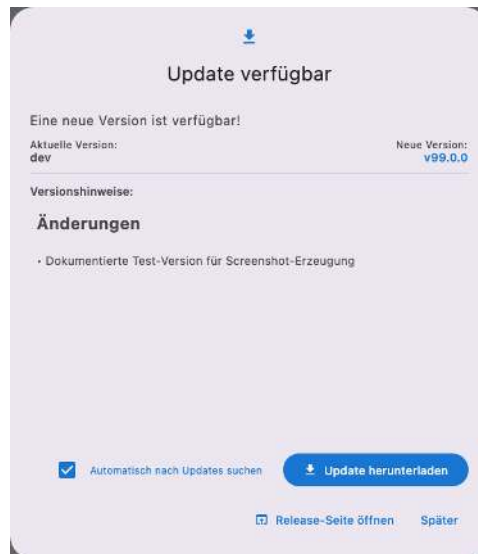


Figure 19: Dialog with information about an available update

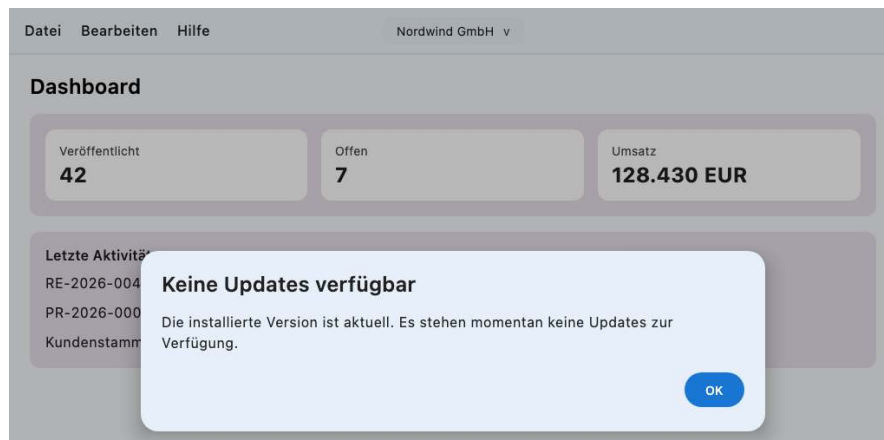


Figure 20: Dialog confirming that the installed version is current

Automatic Updates:

- In the settings, you can enable automatic update checking on startup
- The application then checks for new versions on every start
- You receive a notification when an update is available

[*] **Best Practice:** Enable automatic update checking in the settings. This way you won't miss important security updates or new features.

Open Database Folder

Opens the folder where the database is stored.

Function:

- Opens the database folder in your system's file manager
- Shows the `invoicer_db.db` file
- Useful for manual backup or migration

Usage:

- Click Help → Open Database Folder
- Your file manager opens the folder (Finder on macOS, Explorer on Windows, Nautilus/Dolphin on Linux)

Database Locations: Windows:

`%LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\`

macOS:

`~/Library/Application Support/agynamix-invoicer/`

Linux:

`$XDG_DATA_HOME/agynamix-invoicer/`

Typical on Linux:

`~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/`

What you'll find in the folder:

- `invoicer_db.db`: The SQLite database with all data
- `invoicer_db.db-wal`: Write-Ahead-Log (temporary file during operation)
- `invoicer_db.db-shm`: Shared Memory (temporary file during operation)

[!] **Important:** Don't manually modify or delete the database files while the application is running. This can lead to data loss or corruption.

[i] **Tip:** For a manual backup, copy the `invoicer_db.db` to a safe location while the application is closed. However, preferably use the integrated backup function.

Show Log

Displays the application log.

Function:

- Opens the internal log window
- Shows all application events, warnings, and errors
- Useful for troubleshooting and support requests

Usage:

- Click Help → Show Log
- The log window opens in the main area of the application
- Scroll through the entries or use the search function

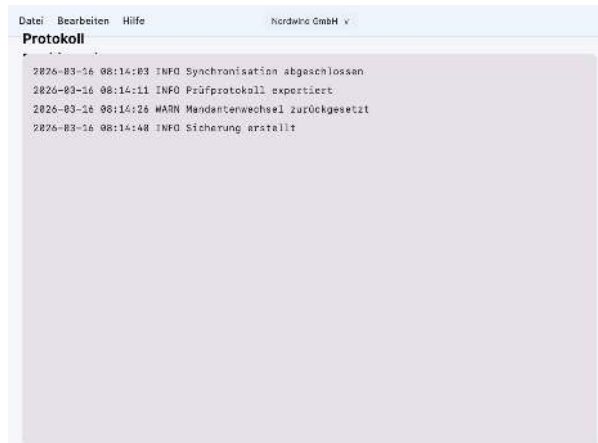


Figure 21: The log view with filtered log entries

Understanding log entries:

- **INFO:** Normal information (e.g., "Invoice created")
- **WARN:** Warnings (e.g., "Backup folder not configured")
- **ERROR:** Errors (e.g., "File could not be saved")
- Each entry contains timestamp, level, and message

Filter log:

- By level (INFO, WARN, ERROR)
- By time period
- By search term

Export log:

- Click Export to save the log as a text file
- Useful for support requests

[i] Tip: In case of technical problems, check the log first. Often you'll find clues to the cause there (e.g., missing write permissions, full disk).

[*] Best Practice: For support requests, export the log and attach it to your email. This helps the support team solve your problem faster.

Start Guided Tour

Starts an interactive tour through the application.

Function:

- Shows a step-by-step introduction
- Highlights relevant UI elements
- Explains the most important functions
- Ideal for new users

Usage:

1. Click Help → Start Guided Tour
2. The tour begins and guides you through the application
3. Follow the instructions and click Next
4. You can exit the tour at any time with Cancel

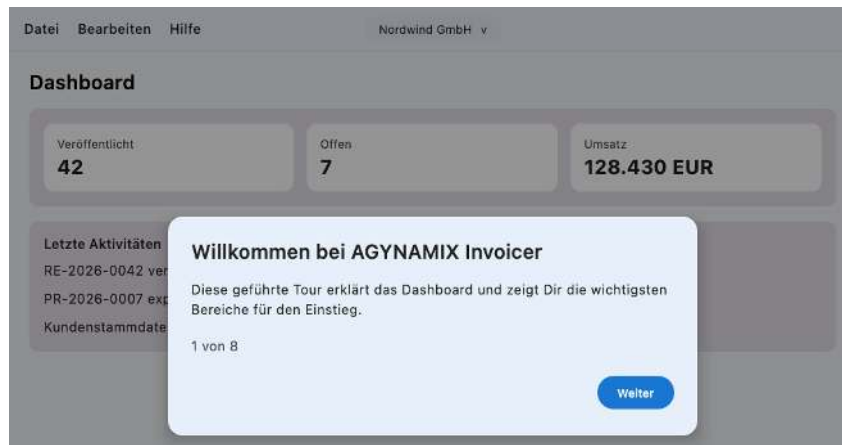


Figure 22: The guided tour explains the dashboard and highlights relevant areas

Tour contents:

- Dashboard and metrics
- Sidebar navigation
- Creating tenants and customers
- Creating documents
- Using text snippets
- Recording time sheets

[i] **Tip:** You can start the tour multiple times – ideal for training colleagues or employees.

License...

Opens the license dialog.

Visibility:

- This menu item is not available in **prerelease** builds.

Trial Period Badge

When a **30-day trial** is active, a badge labeled **"Trial Period (X days left)"** appears in the menu bar's badge area. It replaces the usual "Unlicensed (Base)" badge for the duration of the trial.

How the trial works:

- On first launch of a stable (non-prerelease) version without a license, a 30-day trial starts automatically.
- During the trial, all features of the **Ultimate** tier are unlocked – no license key is required.
- On **day 5**, an informational dialog welcomes you and explains the trial.
- On **day 25**, a warning dialog reminds you that the trial is ending soon.
- After 30 days, the application falls back to the **Base** tier unless a license has been activated.

[i] **Tip:** You can purchase and activate a license at any time during the trial. The trial badge disappears immediately once a license is active.

License Prefs Debug...

Opens a debug dialog for license preferences (development/support).

Visibility:

- This menu item is only visible in **dev mode** builds.

About

Shows information about the application.

Function:

- Display of version number
- Copyright information
- License information
- List of used open-source libraries

Usage:

- Click Help → About
- The About dialog opens

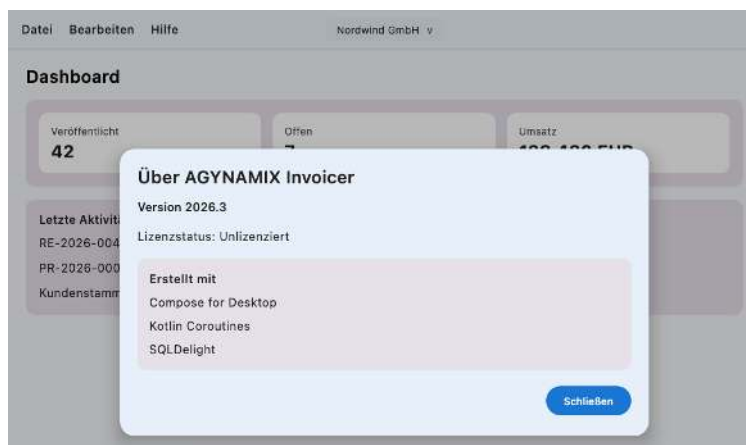


Figure 24: The About dialog with version information and credits

Information in the dialog:

- **AGYNAMIX Invoicer** - Name and logo
- **Version:** e.g., 1.0.0
- **Copyright:** © 2025 AGYNAMIX
- **License:** License type and conditions
- **Libraries:** List of used open-source components with licenses

Used libraries (selection):

- Kotlin & Compose Multiplatform
- SQLDelight
- Apache PDFBox
- Mustangproject (ZUGFeRD)
- Others (see complete list in the dialog)

[i] Tip: The version number is important for support requests. Always provide the version when you need help.

1.4 Tenant Selection

In the center of the menu bar is the tenant selection – a central element for quick switching between different companies.

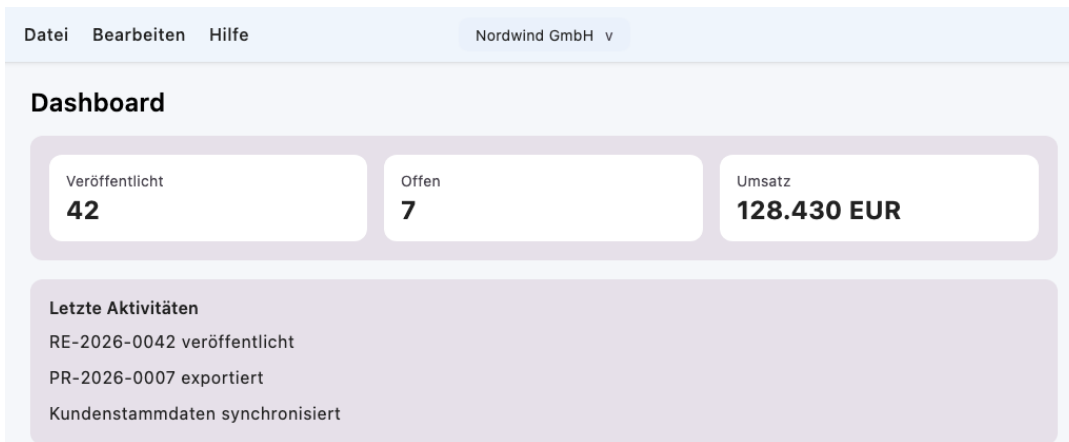


Figure 25: The tenant selection in the center of the menu bar with multiple tenants

Function

Purpose:

- Quick switch between tenants (companies)
- Shows the currently selected tenant
- Default tenant is marked with star symbol ([*])

Effect of selection:

- Filters all lists by the selected tenant:
 - Dashboard metrics
 - Document list
 - Customer list
 - Time sheets
- New documents are automatically assigned to the selected tenant
- Invoice and quote numbers use the tenant's numbering scheme

Usage

Switch tenants:

1. Click on the tenant selection (dropdown)
2. The list of all tenants opens
3. Click on the desired tenant
4. The application immediately switches to the selected tenant
5. All views update automatically

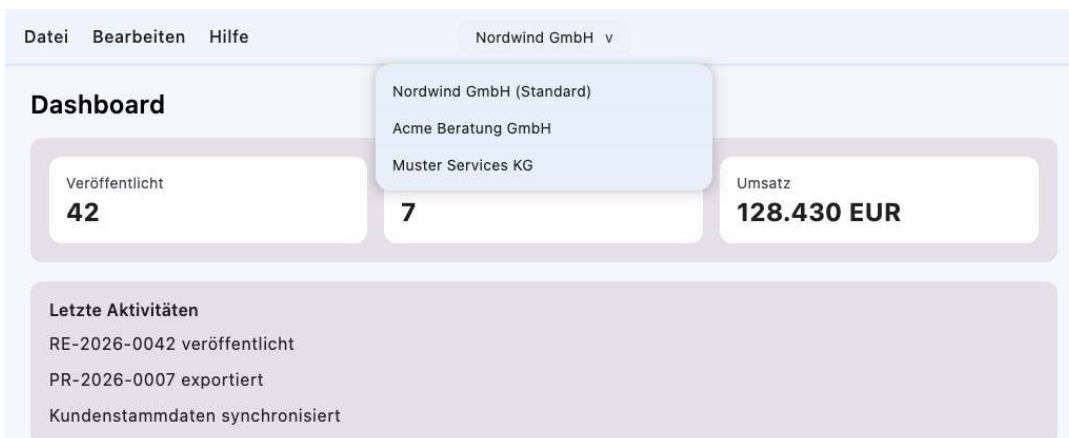


Figure 26: Opened tenant dropdown with default tenant marking

Default tenant:

- Marked with a star symbol ([*])
- Automatically preselected when starting the application
- You can change the default tenant in tenant management

If only one tenant exists:

- The selection shows only this one tenant
- A dropdown is still present for future tenants

If no tenants exist:

- The selection shows "Please create tenant"
- You must first create a tenant (see quick start)

Multi-Company Management

The tenant selection enables managing multiple companies in one database – ideal for:

Use Cases:

- **Multiple sole proprietorships:** You operate multiple self-employed activities
- **Different legal forms:** GmbH and sole proprietorship in parallel
- **Clients for accounting:** As an accountant, you manage multiple corporate clients
- **Different brands:** You invoice under different company names

Advantages:

- Separate numbering schemes per tenant
- Individual company data and logos
- Separate bank details
- Clear separation of documents
- Easy switching between tenants

[~] **Workflow Tip:** Create a separate tenant for each legally independent company. This keeps invoices cleanly separated and you avoid confusion.

[i] **Tip:** The default tenant is preselected on startup. Set the tenant you work with most frequently as default.

[?] **Continue reading:** More on tenant management can be found in Chapter 7 (Tenants).

Summary

The menu bar provides access to important high-level functions:

File Menu:

- [+] Create and restore backups
- [+] Exports for GoBD-oriented workflows (Audit Log, Z3, DATEV)
- [+] Archive verification and archive browser
- [+] Exit application

Edit Menu:

- [+] Quick access to settings

Help Menu:

- [+] Quick reference/manual and support
- [+] Check for updates
- [+] Show log

- [+] Guided tour
- [+] System information

Tenant Selection:

- [+] Quick switching between companies
- [+] Automatic filtering of all lists
- [+] Multi-company management in one database

[*] **Best Practice:** Use the menu bar for administrative tasks (backups, exports, settings) and the sidebar for daily work with documents and customers.

Next Steps: In the next chapter, you'll learn all about the dashboard – the central overview of your business activities.

2. Dashboard

The dashboard is the control center of AGYNAMIX Invoicer. It provides you with a complete overview of your business activities at a glance – from open invoices to revenue trends to overdue payments.



Figure 27: The complete dashboard with hero area and all statistics cards

2.1 Dashboard Structure

The dashboard consists of two main areas:

Hero Area (Header Section)

The upper area shows the most important metrics at a glance:

Published This Year:

- Large number shows the total count of published documents in the current year
- Includes all document types (quotes, invoices, correction invoices)
- Only published documents are counted (no drafts)

Monthly Cash Receipts (Chart):

- Bar chart shows external cash receipts over the last 6 months by payment value date
- Hover over a bar to see exact values
- Excludes offsets, Skonto, correction refunds, and ambiguous other payments
- Uses one currency for the entire chart; other currencies remain visible in the metric cards

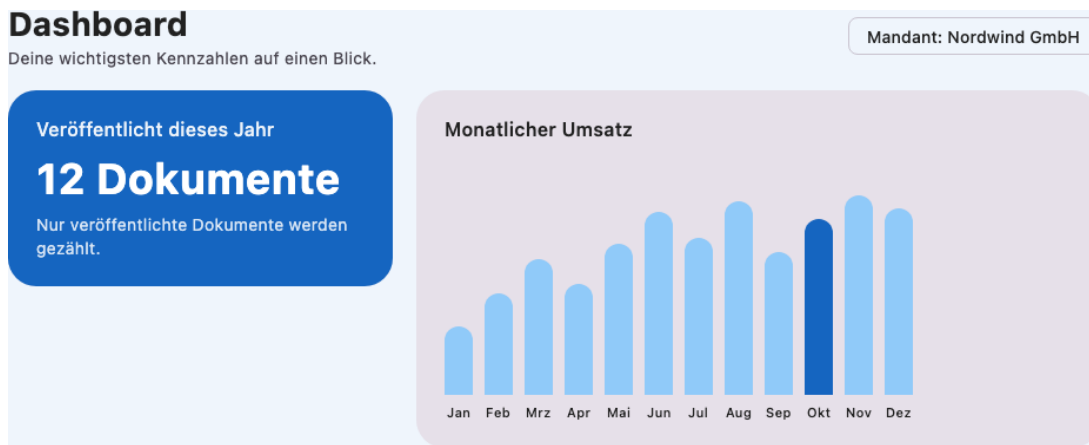


Figure 28: The hero area with total documents and revenue trend chart

Metric Cards

Below are colored cards with detailed statistics. Each card is **clickable** and opens the filtered document list.

2.2 Metrics in Detail

Published This Year

What is counted:

- All documents published in the current calendar year
- Includes: Quotes, invoices, correction invoices, payment reminders
- Only status Published and higher (no drafts)

Click action:

- Opens document list filtered by "Published this year"
- Shows all documents of the current year

Color: Primary blue

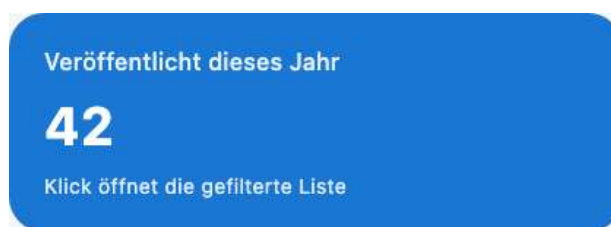


Figure 29: The metric card "Published This Year"

[i] **Tip:** This number gives you a quick overview of your business activity. A decline compared to previous months may indicate declining order activity.

Drafts

What is counted:

- All documents with status Draft
- Across all document types
- Unfiltered by tenant (if a tenant is selected, only its drafts)

Click action:

- Opens document list filtered by status "Draft"
- Shows all non-finalized documents

Color: Tertiary (Light blue/gray)



Figure 30: Metric card with the number of open drafts

Why important:

- Drafts are not yet finalized
- They don't have a final number yet
- They can still be edited or deleted
- Too many drafts indicate unfinished tasks

[~] **Workflow Tip:** Regularly review your drafts and finalize or delete them. This keeps you organized and avoids outdated documents.

Requires Attention**What is counted:**

- Documents that require your attention:
 - Open quotes (published but not yet accepted/rejected)
 - Expired quotes (validity date exceeded)
 - Unpublished documents (drafts that should be finalized)
 - Partially paid invoices (remaining payment outstanding)

Click action:

- Opens document list filtered by "Requires attention"
- Shows all documents that need action

Color: Error red

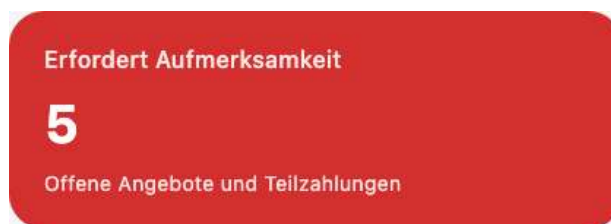


Figure 31: Metric card for documents requiring action

Typical actions:

- **Open quotes:** Mark as accepted/rejected or create invoice
- **Expired quotes:** Follow up with customer or mark as rejected
- **Drafts:** Finalize and publish
- **Partial payments:** Record remaining payment or create reminder

[*] **Best Practice:** Check this card daily. It shows you at a glance where action is needed.

Payment Overdue

What is counted:

- Invoices and correction invoices that are overdue
- Status: Published Or Partially paid
- Due date (Payment by) is in the past
- Remaining balance > 0

Click action:

- Opens document list filtered by "Overdue"
- Shows only overdue invoices

Color: Error container (Light red)

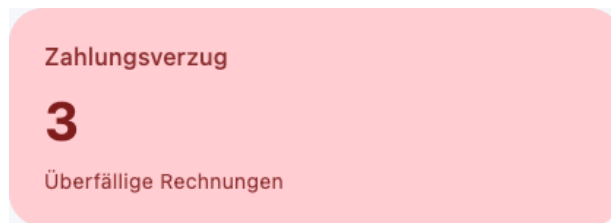


Figure 32: Metric card with number of overdue invoices

Why important:

- Overdue invoices endanger your cash flow
- You should act promptly (reminder, payment notice)
- The longer invoices remain open, the more difficult collection becomes

Typical actions:

- Send payment reminder via email
- Create reminder (1st reminder → 2nd reminder → 3rd reminder)
- Follow up by phone
- Commission collection agency (for repeated payment delays)

[!] **Important:** Overdue invoices should never be ignored. The earlier you respond, the higher the success rate for collection.

[~] **Workflow Tip:** Automatically create reminders for overdue invoices. The application helps you stay on top of things.

Total Cash Receipts

What is counted:

- Signed external payments received for standard invoices across all years
- Reversals reduce the period in which the reversal was entered
- Offsets, Skonto, correction refunds, and other payments are not counted as cash
- Grouped by currency

Display:

- Primary currency (largest sum) displayed large
- Additional currencies as small chips below

Click action:

- Opens the payment list filtered to the supported external cash methods

Color: Secondary (Darker blue/gray)



Figure 33: Metric card with total cash receipts, primary currency large, others as chips

Interpretation:

- Shows external cash received for issued invoices
- Open receivables are NOT counted
- Internal settlement and refunds are deliberately separate

[i] **Tip:** Cash receipts describe liquidity movements, not accounting revenue recognition.

Cash Receipts This Year

What is counted:

- Same signed external-cash policy as the all-time card
- Only payment value dates in the current calendar year
- Grouped by currency

Display:

- Primary currency (largest sum) displayed large
- Additional currencies as small chips below

Click action:

- Opens the payment list with the external-cash methods and current year preselected

Color: Primary container (Light blue)



Figure 34: Metric card with cash receipts for the current year

Interpretation:

- Shows when external cash actually arrived
- Can be compared with previous cash-receipt periods without mixing document dates

Comparison with total cash receipts:

- **Total cash receipts:** All payment value dates
- **Cash receipts this year:** Only current-year payment value dates

[i] **Tip:** Use the cash-receipt chart to analyze liquidity timing. It does not replace tax or accounting reports.

Outstanding Receivables

What is counted:

- Positive outstanding demand from published standard invoices only
- Calculation: frozen payable gross minus typed settlement, clamped to zero per invoice
- Cash, correction offsets, Skonto, other offsets, and signed reversals affect settlement exactly once
- Grouped by currency

Display:

- Primary currency (largest sum) displayed large
- Additional currencies as small chips below

Click action:

- Opens document list filtered by "Outstanding receivables"
- Shows all invoices with remaining balance

Color: Inverse primary (Contrast color)

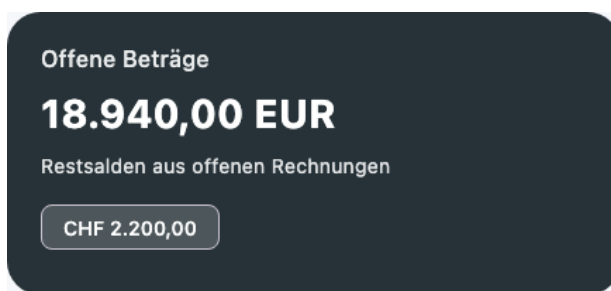


Figure 35: Metric card with the sum of all outstanding receivables

Interpretation:

- Shows how much money you're still owed
- Important for liquidity planning
- High outstanding amounts = liquidity risk
- Low outstanding amounts = Good customer payment behavior

Typical actions:

- Check and record payment receipts
- Send payment reminders
- Create reminders (when overdue)
- Arrange payment plans with customers

[!] **Important:** Outstanding receivables and cash receipts are separate measures. Neither is a substitute for accounting revenue recognition.

[~] **Workflow Tip:** Regularly check outstanding amounts and reconcile them with your bank statements. Record payment receipts promptly to maintain a realistic overview.

2.3 Navigation via Metrics

All metric cards are **clickable** – a click opens the document list with the appropriate filter.

How it works:

1. **Click on metric card**
 - Click dashboard card (e.g., "Payment overdue")
2. **Document list opens**
 - The sidebar automatically switches to "Documents"
 - The document list is already filtered
3. **Filter is preset**
 - Appropriate filters are active
 - You only see relevant documents
4. **Adjust or reset filter**
 - You can further adjust the filter
 - Or reset all filters with "Clear filters"

Dokumentenliste		Filter: Zahlungsverzug
Gefiltert nach Kennzahlen aus dem Dashboard		
RE-2026-0042		Fällig seit 14 Tagen
Meyer Metallbau		2.840,00 EUR
RE-2026-0038		Fällig seit 7 Tagen
Nordstern Design		1.490,00 EUR
RE-2026-0031		Teilweise bezahlt
Sonnensegel GmbH		860,00 EUR

Figure 36: The filtered document list after clicking the "Payment overdue" card

Examples:

Payment overdue:

- Filter: Document types = Invoice, Correction invoice
- Filter: Status = Published, Partially paid
- Filter: Due payments = Active
- Result: Only overdue invoices

Drafts:

- Filter: Status = Draft
- Result: All documents in draft status

Revenue this year:

- Filter: Document types = Invoice, Correction invoice
- Filter: Status = Partially paid, Fully paid, Published
- Filter: Year = Current year
- Result: All invoices of the current year

[i] **Tip:** Navigation via dashboard cards is often faster than manual filtering in the document list. Use it to jump directly to relevant documents.

2.4 Welcome Area (on First Start)

When you start the application for the first time or haven't entered any data yet, the dashboard shows a **welcome area** instead of metrics.

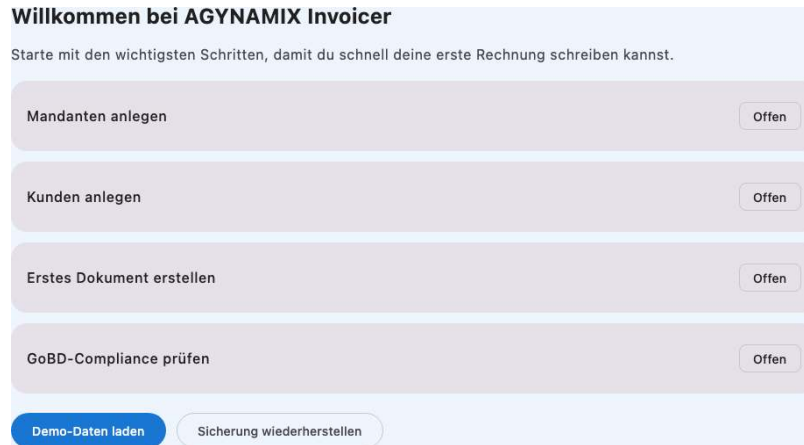


Figure 37: The welcome area with step-by-step instructions for getting started

Welcome Actions:

Load Demo Data:

- Fills the database with realistic sample data
- Ideal for exploring the application
- Includes: 2 tenants, 100 customers, approx. 300 documents, time sheets
- Can be deleted later

Restore from Backup:

- Restore existing data from a backup
- Useful when switching to a new computer
- Overwrites the current (empty) database

Create First Tenant:

- Click opens the tenant creation form
- Required step before you can create invoices

Create Customer:

- Click opens the customer creation form
- Required for invoice and quote addressing

Create First Document:

- Click opens the document creation form
- Starts your workflow

Progress:

- The welcome steps are checked off one by one
- Once tenant, customer, and document exist, the welcome area disappears
- The dashboard then shows the metrics

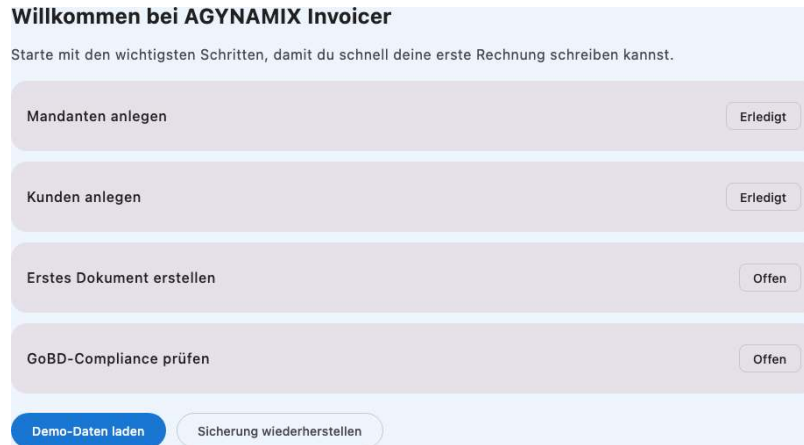


Figure 38: Welcome area shows progress – tenant and customer already created

[*] **Best Practice:** Follow the steps in the welcome area one by one. This ensures that all required master data is present.

[i] **Tip:** If you want to test the application first, load the demo database. You can remove it anytime via Edit → Delete Demo Data.

2.5 Empty Dashboard

If you've created tenants and customers but haven't created any documents yet, the dashboard shows an **empty state**.



Figure 39: The dashboard in empty state – tenants and customers exist, but no documents yet

Display:

- Symbol (Insights icon)
- Title: "Your workspace is ready"
- Text: "Once you create sales documents, you'll see live insights here."

What to do:

- Navigate to Documents and create your first invoice or quote
- Or use time tracking to record time sheets and bill them

[i] **Tip:** The empty state shows you that basic configuration (tenant, customer) is complete. Now you can start productive work.

2.6 Multiple Currencies

If you bill customers in different currencies, the dashboard displays **multiple currencies** simultaneously.

Display:

Primary Currency:

- Currency with the highest sum is displayed large
- Default position in metric card text

Additional Currencies:

- As small, colored chips below the main number
- Example: USD 5,432.10, GBP 2,100.00
- Sorted by amount (descending)



Figure 40: Metric card shows EUR as primary currency and USD/GBP as chips

Currency Handling:

No Automatic Conversion:

- The application does NOT automatically convert
- Each currency is summed and displayed separately
- You see amounts in original currencies

Why no conversion:

- Exchange rates change daily
- Conversions would be incorrect at time of payment
- You have control over currency exchange
- Accounting correct

Recommendation:

- Bill primarily in one main currency (e.g., EUR)
- Use foreign currencies only when the customer requires it
- Consider exchange rate risks in your pricing

[*] **Best Practice:** If you regularly bill in foreign currencies, manually add currencies with current exchange rates for internal evaluations. The dashboard shows you original amounts.

2.7 Monthly Cash Receipt Chart

The hero area contains a **bar chart** showing signed external cash receipts over the last 6 months.

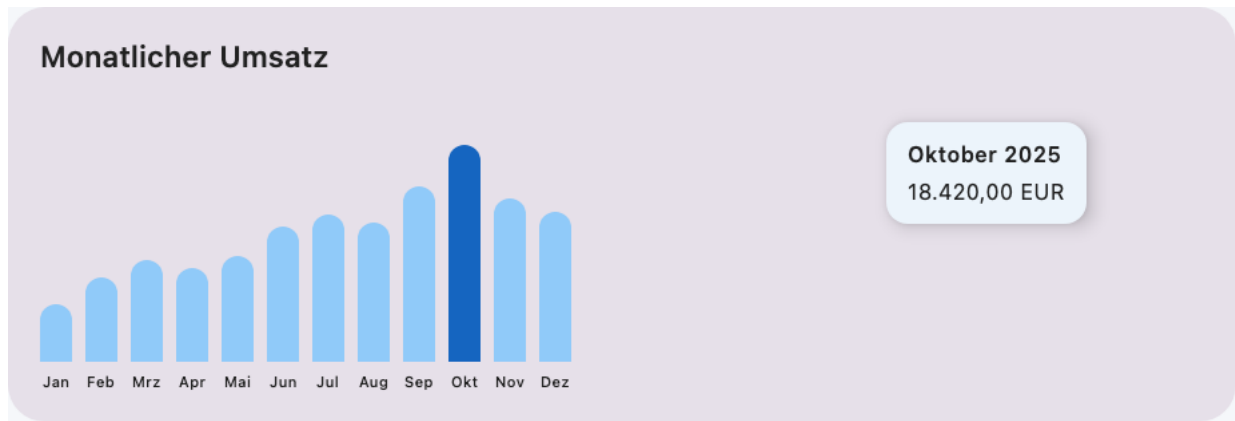


Figure 41: Monthly revenue chart with tooltip on mouse-over

What is displayed:

Bar per Month:

- Each bar represents a month
- Height = Cash received in this month by payment value date
- Color: Gradient from primary color to background

Time Period:

- Last 6 months
- Rolling (current month + 5 previous months)
- Month names below bars

Tooltip:

- Hover over a bar with the mouse
- Tooltip shows: Month, cash receipts, currency
- Example: "Cash receipts in November: 12,345.67 EUR"

Interpretation:

Recognize Trends:

- Rising trend = Growth
- Falling trend = Decline
- Fluctuations = Seasonality

Seasonal Patterns:

- Some industries have seasonal fluctuations
- Example: Summer vacation = fewer orders
- Plan with these patterns (liquidity, vacation)

Year-to-Year Comparison:

- Compare current month with previous year's month
- Recognize long-term developments
- Determine growth or decline

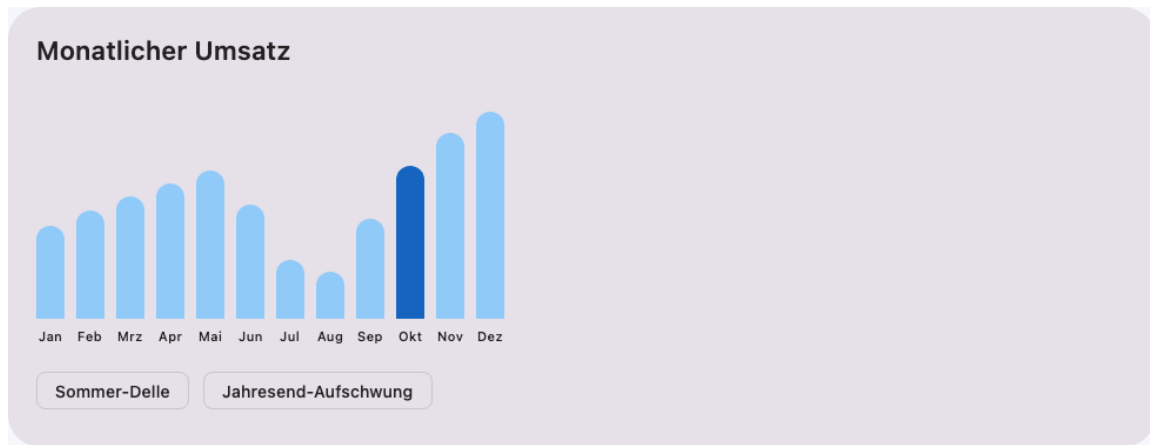


Figure 42: Revenue chart shows typical summer dip and year-end upswing

[i] **Tip:** Use the chart for liquidity timing. The complete per-currency values remain visible in the cards when the chart selects one primary currency.

[~] **Workflow Tip:** Screenshot the revenue chart at year-end. This gives you visual documentation of your business development for accountant or business plan.

2.8 Dashboard and Tenant Selection

The dashboard responds to tenant selection in the menu bar.

Behavior:

Switch Tenant:

- Select another tenant in the menu bar
- The dashboard reloads
- All metrics are filtered by the selected tenant

Only Selected Tenant:

- Metrics show ONLY data from the selected tenant
- Documents, customers, revenues of the selected tenant
- Other tenants are not considered

Default Tenant:

- The default tenant is preselected on startup
- You can set the default tenant in tenant management

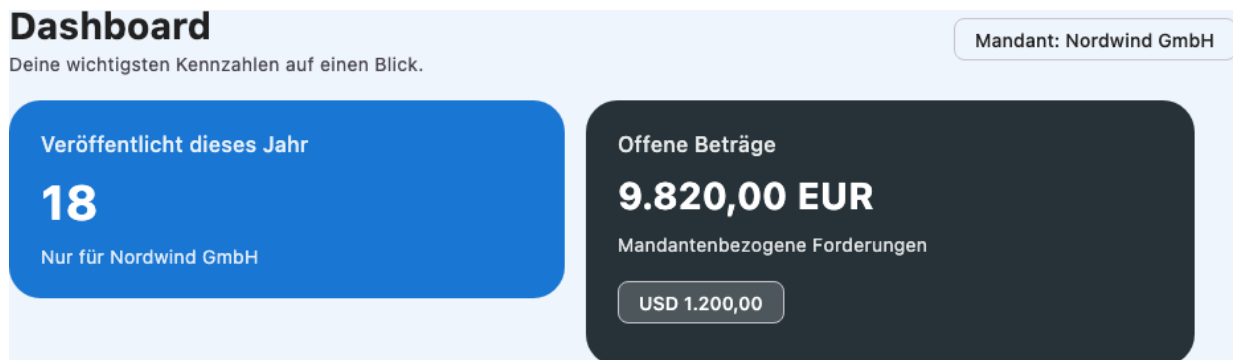


Figure 43: The dashboard shows metrics for the currently selected tenant

Multi-Company Management:

- If you manage multiple tenants, switch regularly
- Check metrics of each tenant
- Keep track of all your companies

[*] **Best Practice:** If you have multiple tenants, schedule fixed times for each tenant (e.g., Mondays Company A, Tuesdays Company B). This avoids confusion.

2.9 Dashboard Refresh

The dashboard updates **automatically** in the following cases:

Automatic Refresh:

1. **On Application Start**
 - Dashboard loads metrics when opening
2. **On Tenant Switch**
 - New metrics are loaded
3. **After Creating a Document**
 - Dashboard updates as soon as you navigate back
 - New documents are included in metrics
4. **After Recording Payment**
 - Revenue and outstanding amounts update
5. **After Deleting a Document**
 - Metrics are recalculated

Manual Refresh:

Not Required:

- The application keeps the dashboard automatically up-to-date
- There is no manual "Refresh" button
- All changes are immediately reflected

In Case of Problems:

- If metrics don't appear current, navigate to another area and back
- In rare case of errors: Restart application

[i] **Tip:** The dashboard is always current. You don't need to worry about refreshes.

2.10 Typical Dashboard Workflows

Morning Routine: Get Overview

1. **Start Application**
 - Dashboard opens automatically
2. **Check Metrics**
 - Check "Payment overdue" → Send reminders
 - Check "Requires attention" → Follow up on open quotes
 - Review "Drafts" → Finalize or delete

3. **Perform Actions**

- Click on cards to see details
- Edit documents, record payments

4. **Analyze Revenue Chart**

- Recognize trends
- Plan for coming months

[T] **Time Required:** 5-10 minutes daily

Weekly Financial Review

1. **Check Revenue**

- Compare "Revenue this year" with targets
- Monitor "Outstanding amounts"

2. **Control Payment Receipts**

- Reconcile bank statements with open invoices
- Record payments in application

3. **Dunning Management**

- Check "Payment overdue"
- Send payment reminders
- Create reminders

4. **Quote Management**

- Review "Requires attention"
- Follow up on open quotes
- Mark quotes as accepted/rejected

[T] **Time Required:** 15-30 minutes weekly

Month-End Closing

1. **Record All Payment Receipts**

- Completely reconcile bank statements
- Post payments to invoices

2. **Document Metrics**

- Screenshot of dashboard
- Revenue chart for archive

3. **Clarify Open Items**

- Analyze "Outstanding amounts"
- Create collection plan

4. **Prepare VAT Advance Return**

- Export "Revenue this year"
- Filter document list by month
- Export all PDFs and audit log

[T] **Time Required:** 30-60 minutes monthly

Summary

The dashboard is your central hub for all important business metrics:

Metrics at a Glance:

- [+] Published this year
- [+] Drafts

- [+] Requires attention
- [+] Payment overdue
- [+] Total revenue
- [+] Revenue this year
- [+] Outstanding amounts

Features:

- [+] Clickable cards with automatic filtering
- [+] Monthly revenue chart
- [+] Multi-currency support
- [+] Automatic refresh
- [+] Tenant filtering

Benefits:

- [+] Quick overview of business activities
- [+] Early detection of problems
- [+] Efficient navigation to relevant documents
- [+] Data-driven decisions

[*] **Best Practice:** Start each workday with a look at the dashboard. This keeps you informed and ensures you don't miss important tasks.

Next Steps: In the next chapter, you'll learn all about document management – the heart of AGYNAMIX Invoicer.

3. Sales Documents (Documents)

The **Documents** section is the heart of AGYNAMIX Invoicer. Here you manage all your sales documents: quotes, invoices, correction invoices, and payment reminders. The application guides you through the complete life-cycle – from draft through publication to payment and archiving.

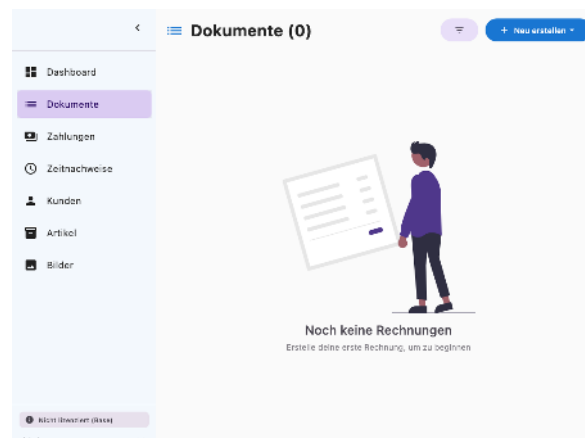


Figure 44: The document list shows all sales documents with filter options and status indicators

3.1 Document List and Navigation

The document list is your central workspace for all sales documents.

List Overview

The list shows you for each document:

- **Document number:** Unique number like RE-2024-001 (invoice) or ANG-2024-005 (quote)

- **Document type:** Visual symbol for quote, invoice, correction, or reminder
- **Status:** Color-coded status (e.g., "Draft", "Published", "Paid")
- **Customer:** Customer name
- **Date:** Creation or invoice date
- **Amount:** Invoice total in document currency
- **Due date:** When payment is due (for invoices) or when a quote expires

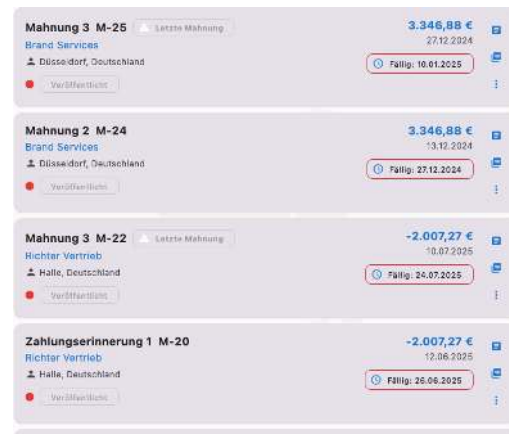


Figure 45: Each entry shows all important information at a glance

List View and Grouped Transactions

You can show the document list as a classic **List view** or as **Grouped transactions**. The grouped view combines related documents in the same transaction chain, for example quote, invoice, correction, and reminders.

A transaction row shows document types, document count, matches under active filters, transaction value, open amount/payment status, and the most recently changed document. Expand the group to load and open the individual documents in that transaction.

Filters, search, and sorting still apply in grouped view. For example, you can search for open invoices while still seeing the surrounding sales transaction.

Header

In the header you see:

- **Number of documents:** Total count and filtered count when filters are active (e.g., "Documents (12 of 45)")
- **Search field:** Search documents by number, customer name, or description
- **Filter icon:** Shows a blue badge when filters are active
- **+ Create New:** Dropdown menu to create new quotes or invoices

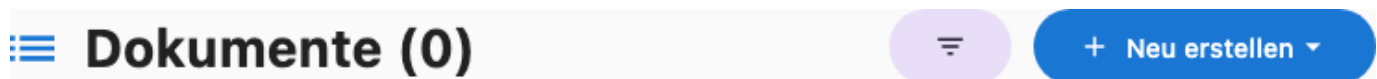


Figure 46: The header with search field, filter indicator, and create button

[i] **Pro Tip:** The document list remembers your filter settings as long as the application is open. After a restart, the list starts without filters.

3.2 Filters and Search

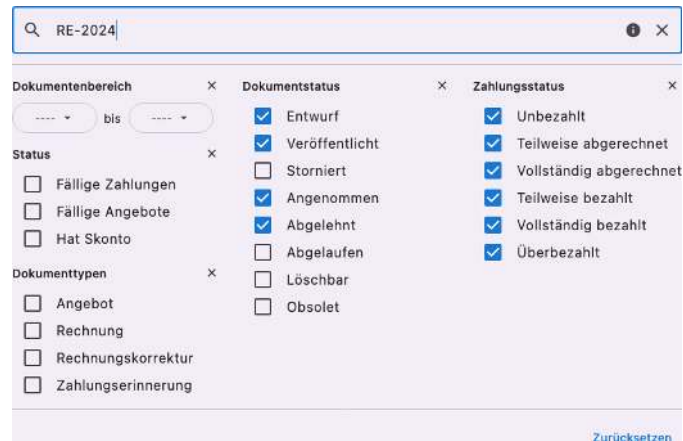
With powerful filter and search functions, you can quickly find the desired documents.

Using the Search Field

The search field searches across **multiple fields simultaneously**:

- Document numbers (e.g., RE-2024-001)
- Customer names (company name, first name, last name)
- Document descriptions and internal notes
- **Line item descriptions** (text of individual services or products)

The search is real-time – as you type, the list updates immediately.



The screenshot shows a search interface with a search bar at the top containing the text "RE-2024". Below the search bar are several filter sections, each with a title and a list of options. The filters are: "Dokumentenbereich" (Document Area) with a range selector "bis"; "Status" (Status) with checkboxes for "Fällige Zahlungen", "Fällige Angebote", and "Hat Skonto"; "Dokumenttypen" (Document Types) with checkboxes for "Angebot", "Rechnung", "Rechnungskorrektur", and "Zahlungserinnerung"; "Dokumentstatus" (Document Status) with checkboxes for "Entwurf", "Veröffentlicht", "Storniert", "Angenommen", "Abgelehnt", "Abgelaufen", "Löschbar", and "Obsolet"; and "Zahlungsstatus" (Payment Status) with checkboxes for "Unbezahlt", "Teilweise abgerechnet", "Vollständig abgerechnet", "Teilweise bezahlt", "Vollständig bezahlt", and "Überbezahlt". A "Zurücksetzen" (Reset) button is located at the bottom right of the filter sections.

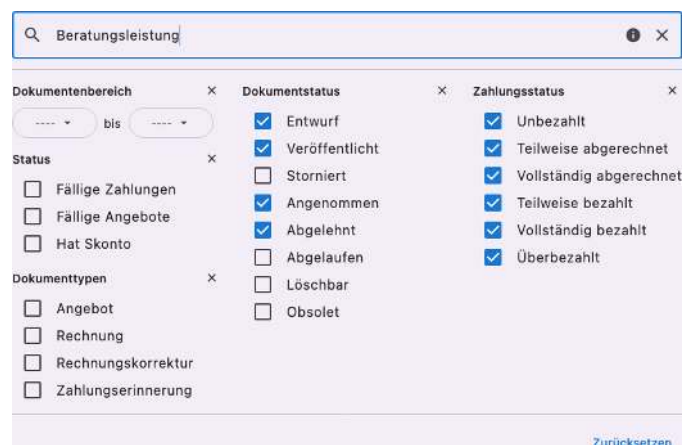
Figure 47: Real-time search finds documents by number, customer name, or line item content

Enhanced Multi-Field Search The search now finds documents even when the search term appears inside a **line item description**, not just in the customer name or document number. This makes it easy to answer questions like "Which invoices included 'website maintenance'?"

Examples:

- RE-2024-001 → Document with that number
- Acme → All documents for customers containing "Acme"
- website maintenance → All documents with a line item containing "website maintenance"
- 2024-003 → Documents whose number contains that fragment

[i] **Tip:** Shorter, more specific search terms work best. Searching for maintenance will find everything containing that word; searching for 2025 website maintenance contract may not match if the words appear in different fields.



The screenshot shows the same search interface as Figure 47, but with the search bar containing the text "Beratungsleistung". The filter sections are identical to the previous screenshot, with the same checkboxes and buttons. The "Zurücksetzen" button is still visible at the bottom right.

Figure 47a: Searching for a service description finds matching documents instantly

Opening Filters

Click the **filter icon** (funnel icon) in the header. The filter panel opens on the right side.

Dokumentenbereich	Dokumentstatus	Zahlungsstatus
----- bis: -----	☒ Entwurf	☒ Unbezahlt
	☒ Veröffentlicht	☒ Teilweise abgerechnet
	☐ Storniert	☒ Vollständig abgerechnet
☐ Fällige Zahlungen	☒ Angenommen	☒ Teilweise bezahlt
☐ Fällige Angebote	☒ Abgelehnt	☒ Vollständig bezahlt
☐ Hat Skonto	☐ Abgelaufen	☒ Überbezahlt
	☐ Löschar	
	☐ Obsolet	

Zurücksetzen

Figure 48: The filter panel offers numerous filter options

Available Filters

Document Types Select one or more document types:

- **Quote:** Non-binding offer to a customer
- **Invoice:** Payment request
- **Invoice Correction:** Cancellation or correction of an invoice
- **Payment Reminder:** Reminder for overdue invoices

Dokumentenbereich	Dokumentstatus	Zahlungsstatus
----- bis: -----	☒ Entwurf	☒ Unbezahlt
	☒ Veröffentlicht	☒ Teilweise abgerechnet
	☐ Storniert	☒ Vollständig abgerechnet
☐ Fällige Zahlungen	☒ Angenommen	☒ Teilweise bezahlt
☐ Fällige Angebote	☒ Abgelehnt	☒ Vollständig bezahlt
☐ Hat Skonto	☐ Abgelaufen	☒ Überbezahlt
	☐ Löschar	
	☐ Obsolet	

Zurücksetzen

Figure 49: Filter by one or more document types

[i] **Pro Tip:** Filters are additive – if you select "Quote" and "Invoice", both types are displayed.

Document Status Filter by current status:

- **Draft:** Document is still being edited
- **Published:** Document has been finalized and is immutable
- **Partially Paid:** Invoice has been partially paid
- **Fully Paid:** Invoice completely paid
- **Cancelled:** Invoice was cancelled (by correction invoice)
- **Accepted:** Quote was accepted by customer
- **Turned Down:** Quote was rejected
- **Expired:** Quote has expired
- **Deletable:** Document can be deleted after retention period

- **Obsolete:** Payment reminder is no longer current

Figure 50: Filter by one or more statuses

Due Payments With this switch, you only show invoices whose due date has been exceeded and which are not yet fully paid.

Figure 51: Show only overdue invoices

[>>] **Power Tip:** This filter is identical to clicking "Overdue" on the dashboard – use it for your daily dunning management.

Due Quotes This switch shows only quotes whose expiration date has been exceeded and which are still awaiting feedback.

Figure 52: Show only expired quotes

Document Range (From/To Date) Filter documents by their document date (e.g., invoice date or quote date):

1. Click **From** to select a start date
2. Click **To** to select an end date
3. The list shows only documents within this time period

Rechnungen durchsuchen

Dokumentenbereich: 2024 bis 2025

Status:

- ☐ Fällige Zahlungen
- ☒ Fällige Angebote
- ☐ Hat Skonto

Dokumententypen:

- ☐ Angebot
- ☐ Rechnung
- ☐ Rechnungskorrektur
- ☐ Zahlungserinnerung

Dokumentstatus:

- ☒ Entwurf
- ☒ Veröffentlicht
- ☐ Storniert
- ☒ Angenommen
- ☒ Abgelehnt
- ☐ Abgelaufen
- ☐ Löschbar
- ☐ Obsolet

Zahlungsstatus:

- ☒ Unbezahlt
- ☒ Teilweise abgerechnet
- ☒ Vollständig abgerechnet
- ☒ Teilweise bezahlt
- ☒ Vollständig bezahlt
- ☒ Überbezahlt

Zurücksetzen

Figure 53: Filter documents by creation period

[i] **Pro Tip:** You can set only "From" or only "To" – the fields are independent of each other.

Reset Filters

Click **Reset** at the bottom of the filter panel to remove all filters at once.

Rechnungen durchsuchen

Dokumentenbereich: ---- bis ----

Status:

- ☐ Fällige Zahlungen
- ☒ Fällige Angebote
- ☐ Hat Skonto

Dokumententypen:

- ☐ Angebot
- ☐ Rechnung
- ☐ Rechnungskorrektur
- ☐ Zahlungserinnerung

Dokumentstatus:

- ☒ Entwurf
- ☒ Veröffentlicht
- ☐ Storniert
- ☒ Angenommen
- ☒ Abgelehnt
- ☐ Abgelaufen
- ☐ Löschbar
- ☐ Obsolet

Zahlungsstatus:

- ☒ Unbezahlt
- ☒ Teilweise abgerechnet
- ☒ Vollständig abgerechnet
- ☒ Teilweise bezahlt
- ☒ Vollständig bezahlt
- ☒ Überbezahlt

Zurücksetzen

Figure 54: Reset all filters with one click

Reactivate Filters

If you've created a new document, filters are automatically temporarily deactivated so you can see the new document immediately. A yellow banner appears with the note "Filters were temporarily suspended". Click **Reactivate filters** to restore the previous filters.

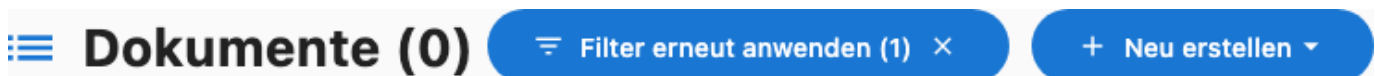


Figure 55: Reactivate filters after creating a document

3.3 Create Document

Create New Quote or Invoice

1. Click + **Create New** in the header
2. Select from the dropdown menu:
 - **New Invoice:** For a payment request
 - **New Quote:** For a non-binding offer

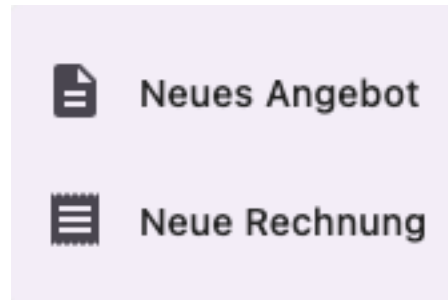


Figure 56: Choose between invoice and quote

The application opens the creation form in **Draft** status.

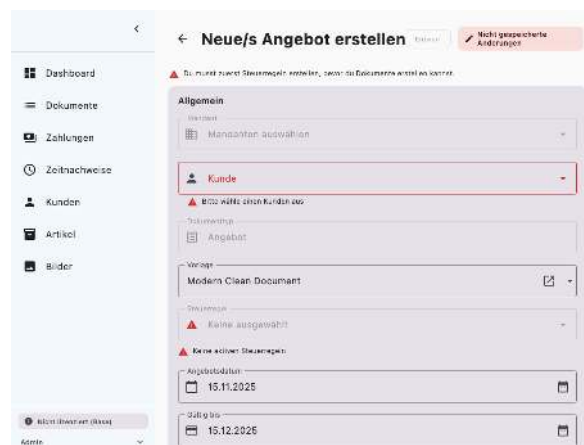


Figure 57: The creation form for a new document

Create From a Document Preset

If you regularly create similar quotes or invoices, use a **document preset** as your starting point. A preset is a reusable blueprint that can carry recurring content such as:

- Line items
- Text snippets
- Layout template
- Payment profile
- Order or contract references

Create from a preset like this:

1. Open the document creation flow.
2. Choose the option to start from a **document preset**.
3. Select the preset you want to reuse.
4. Review tenant, customer, and document type.
5. Adjust dates, quantities, prices, or other document-specific details.

6. Save the result as a **draft** and continue editing as needed.

If you open the creation flow from a **customer view**, the customer is already preselected. This is useful for recurring customer-specific offers or invoices.

[i] **Pro Tip:** Keep presets focused on recurring structure. Customer-specific dates, delivery details, and one-off notes are usually best adjusted in the draft created from the preset.

[i] **Pro Tip:** You can also **duplicate** an existing document to use it as a template (see section "Duplicate Document").

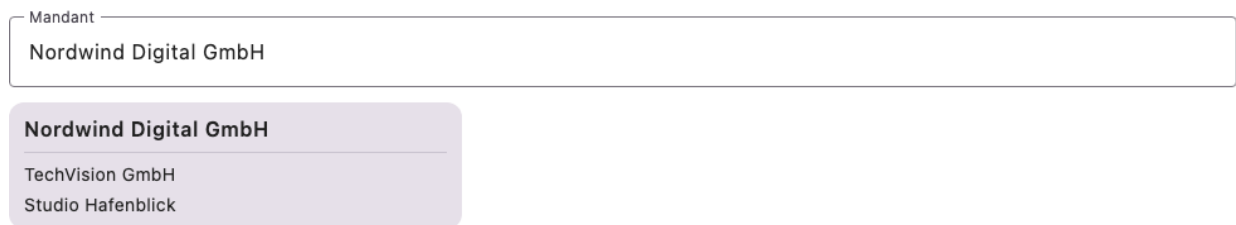
3.4 Edit Document (Draft)

In draft mode, you can freely edit all fields. Once a document is **published**, it becomes immutable for GoBD-oriented workflows.

General Information

Tenant (Sender) Select the tenant (your company) that appears as sender on the document. This also determines:

- Logo and company data on the PDF
- Numbering scheme (e.g., RE-2024- for tenant A, RE-2025- for tenant B)
- Bank details for payment information



Mandant

Nordwind Digital GmbH

Nordwind Digital GmbH

TechVision GmbH

Studio Hafenblick

Figure 58: Select the tenant for this document

[!] **Important:** The tenant cannot be changed after saving, as the document number uniquely belongs to the tenant.

Customer (Recipient) Select the customer from the dropdown list. The application automatically loads:

- Address data for the document
- Customer's default currency
- Payment terms (if stored)
- Default customer rebate (if stored)
- E-invoicing settings (ZUGFeRD/XRechnung)

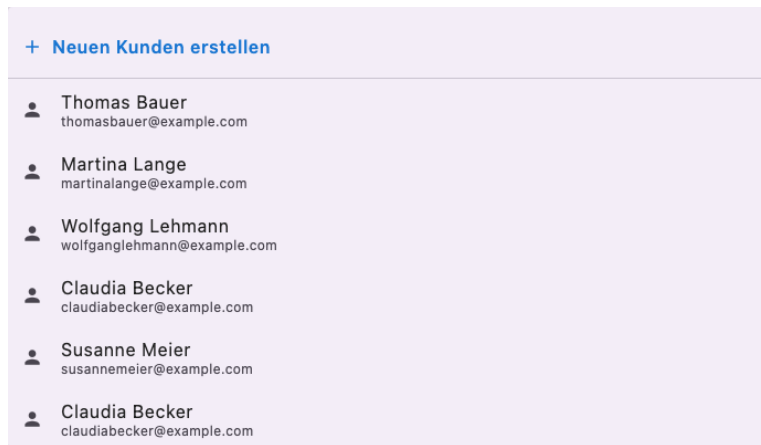


Figure 59: Select the customer for the document

If the customer doesn't exist yet:

1. Click + **Create new customer**
2. The customer creation form opens
3. After saving, the new customer is automatically selected

[i] **Pro Tip:** Linked data (address, currency) are permanently saved in the document when published – subsequent changes to the customer master data do not affect already published documents.

Customer Rebate If the customer has a default customer rebate, new quotes and invoices inherit it automatically. In the **Customer rebate** section you can use the customer default, choose **No rebate**, or set a custom rebate for this document.

Line item prices remain unchanged. Invoicer applies the rebate once as a document-level net allowance, distributes it across the applicable VAT groups, and reduces the taxable base before calculating VAT. The view and preview show the unreduced line subtotal, the rebate, and the resulting totals so you can check the effect before publishing. Published documents keep their frozen rebate; later customer master-data changes do not alter them retroactively. Corrections and reversals use that frozen value so their totals neutralize the source document correctly.

Document Number The document number is automatically generated as soon as you save the document for the first time. The format is based on the selected tenant's numbering pattern, e.g.:

- Invoices: RE-2024-001, RE-2024-002, ...
- Quotes: ANG-2024-001, ANG-2024-002, ...
- Correction invoices: RE-2024-001-KORR
- Payment reminders: MAH-2024-001-L1 (Level 1), MAH-2024-001-L2 (Level 2), ...

Dokumentnummer

ANG-2025-001

Figure 60: The document number is automatically assigned

[!] **Important:** Document numbers are unique and sequential. You cannot manually change them to ensure unbroken numbering sequences (GoBD requirement).

Document Date Set the document date:

- **Invoices:** Invoice date (important for payment terms and tax period)
- **Quotes:** Quote date
- **Correction invoices:** Correction date

- **Payment reminders:** Reminder date

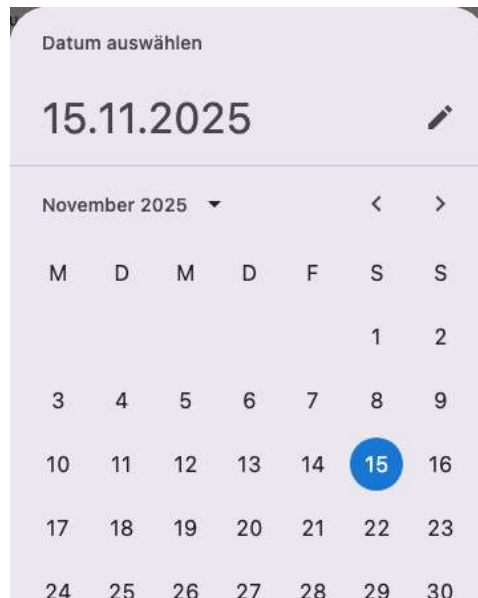


Figure 61: Select the document date via calendar

[i] **Pro Tip:** The document date defaults to today but can be freely adjusted.

Due Date / Action Date Depending on document type:

- **Invoices:** Payment term (due date) – default is 14 days after invoice date
- **Quotes:** Expiration date – until when the quote is valid
- **Payment reminders:** Payment term for the reminder

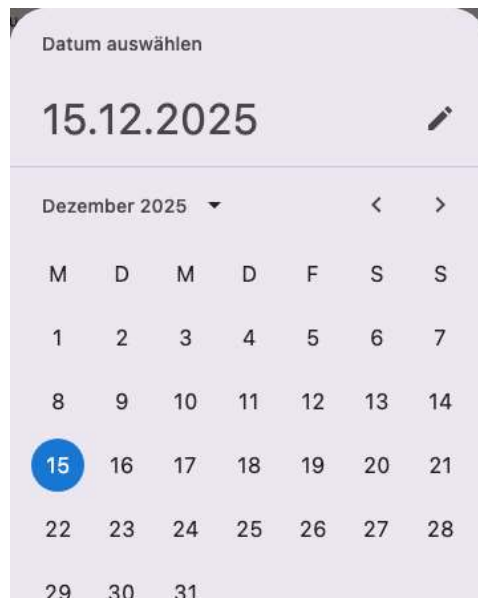


Figure 62: Set the due or expiration date

[i] **Pro Tip:** You can store individual payment terms in customer settings – these are automatically pre-filled.

Delivery Date (required) For **invoices** and **invoice corrections**, you must specify a **delivery date**. It is printed on the PDF document.

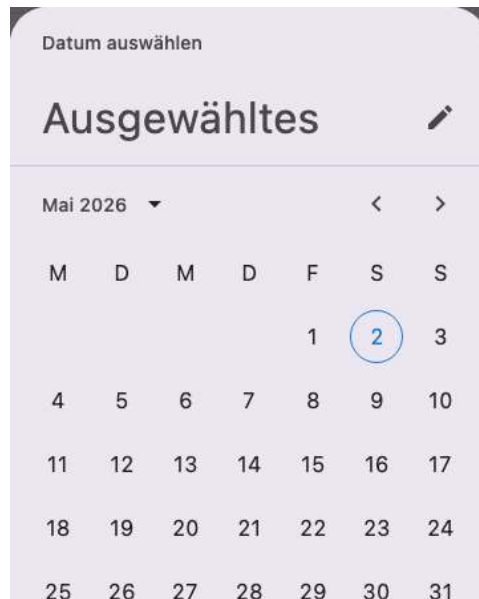


Figure 63: Set the delivery date

Service Period Start (optional) If you set a **service period start** date, the document represents a **service period**. In that case, the **delivery date** becomes the **end** of the service period.

Order ID / Contract ID (optional) You can optionally store an **order ID** and/or **contract ID** for internal reference (e.g., to match an ERP/order system). These values are stored with the document data.

Line Items

Line items represent the services or products to be billed.

Add Line Item

1. Click **Add line item** below the line item table
2. A new empty row is inserted



Figure 64: Add a new line item with the + button

Edit Line Item Each line item has the following fields:

- **Description:** Description of service or product (required field)

- **Quantity:** Number or hours (required field, decimals possible)
- **Unit price:** Price per unit in document currency (required field)
- **VAT %:** Value-added tax rate (e.g., 19%, 7%, 0%) (required field)

Figure 65: Edit the fields of a line item

The application automatically calculates:

- **Subtotal** = Quantity × Unit price
- **VAT amount** = Subtotal × (VAT % / 100)
- **Total** = Sum of all subtotals + Sum of all VAT amounts

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use the **Tab key** to quickly jump between fields and efficiently enter multiple line items.

Optional (Alternative) Line Items in Quotes In **quotes**, you can mark a line item as **optional** (alternative). Optional items are shown in the export (PDF/HTML) with an **Optional** badge, but they **do not contribute to totals**.

- Use the **layers icon** at the end of the line item row to toggle a line item as optional.
- You can optionally assign a **group name** (e.g., "Premium") so multiple optional items belong to the same alternative group.
- When converting a quote to a **standard invoice**, you select which optional groups should be included. Selected optional items become **normal** invoice items.

Add Line Item From Product If you maintain product master data, you can add pre-filled line items:

1. In the line items header, click **Add line item from product**
2. Search and select a product
3. The new line item is filled with the product's defaults (price, unit, tax rule, description)

You can still edit all fields after adding the product.

[?] **Continue reading:** Product management and CSV import/export are described in Chapter 9 (Products).

Delete Line Item Click the **trash icon** to the right of the line item to remove it.

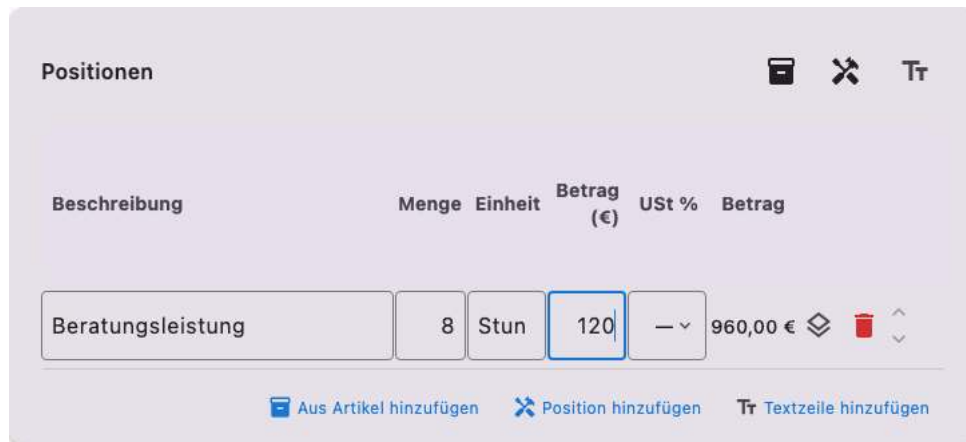


Figure 66: Delete a line item with the trash icon

Text-Only Line Items In addition to regular billed line items, you can add **text-only line items** to any document. A text-only item is purely presentational – it does **not** contribute to the document total and is not billed.

When to use text-only items:

- Section headings within the line item table (e.g., "Phase 1: Design", "Phase 2: Development")
- Separator lines or space between item groups
- A "Thank you for your business!" note embedded within the line items
- Company images or logos to be displayed between item blocks
- Any descriptive text that should appear inline with the line items

Adding a text-only item:

1. In the line items section, click **Add Text Line**
2. A new row is inserted with a text editor (Markdown supported)

Positionen



Figure 66a: The **Add Text Line** action in the line items section

Adding an image to a text-only item:

1. Expand the text-only row and click **Add Image**
2. Select an existing image from the image library or upload a JPEG/PNG image
3. The image is stored as an embedded graphic in the text-only row



Figure 66b: A text-only row with an embedded company graphic

How text-only items appear on the PDF:

- They are printed in the line item table at their position
- They have no quantity, unit price, or tax columns
- They are visually distinct from billed items (no amount columns)
- Images are rendered inline at the position in the table

[!] **Note:** Text-only items are never included in totals, never subject to tax, and do not affect the invoice balance. They are purely decorative/structural.

The application validates line items in real-time:

- Empty descriptions are marked red with "Required field"
- Invalid numbers are marked with "Must be a valid number"

[!] **Important:** You cannot publish the document as long as validation errors exist.

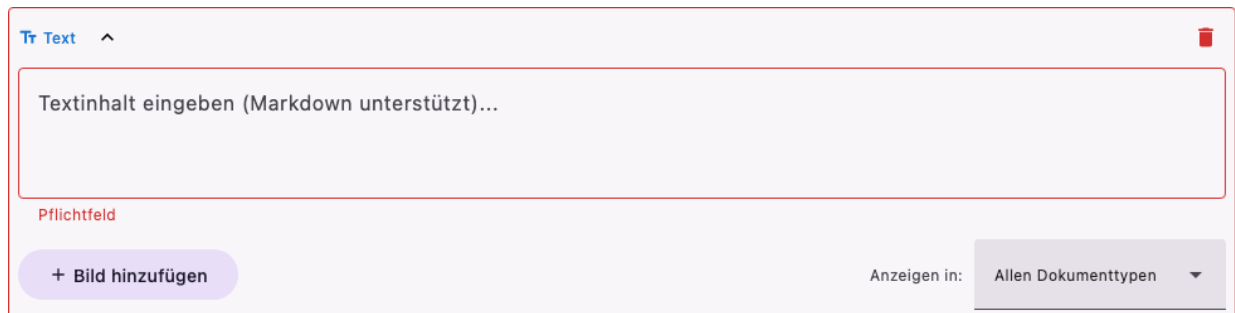


Figure 67: Validation errors are displayed directly below the field

[!] **Important:** You cannot publish the document as long as validation errors exist.

Text Snippets

Text snippets are reusable text blocks (e.g., introductions, payment notes, closing formulas) that you can add to your documents. They support **Markdown formatting** for bold text, lists, and more.

Add Text Snippet

1. Scroll to the **Text blocks** section below the line items
2. Click **Add text block**
3. Select a text snippet from the dropdown list
4. Choose the **position**:
 - **Before line items:** Text appears above the line item table (e.g., introduction text)
 - **After line items:** Text appears below the line item table (e.g., payment notes, closing formula)



Figure 68: Add a text block and choose the position

Remove Text Snippet Click the **delete icon** to the right of the text snippet to remove it.



Figure 69: Remove a text snippet with the delete icon

[i] **Pro Tip:** You can add multiple text snippets – they appear in the order you add them.

[*] **Workflow Tip:** Create standard snippets for common scenarios (e.g., "Payment note 14 days", "Project start introduction") and add them quickly via dropdown.

Text Snippets Library Empty If you haven't created any text snippets yet, the application shows a note:

"Create a text block first to use it here."

Click **Manage text snippets** in the sidebar to create new snippets (see Chapter 10).

Textbaustein-Bibliothek

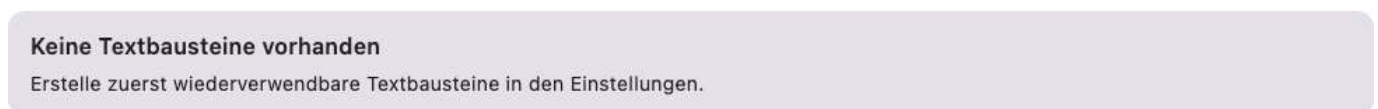


Figure 70: Note when no text snippets exist yet

Description / Notes (optional)

In the **Description** field, you can store internal notes about the document. These do **not** appear on the PDF, but are only visible to you.

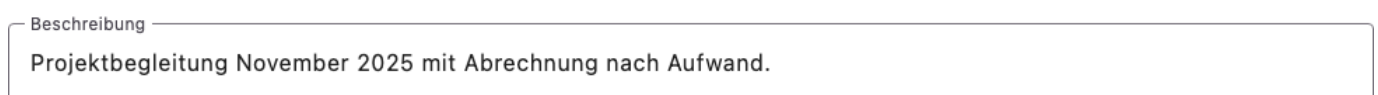


Figure 71: Internal notes for the document

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use this field for project notes, follow-up questions, or context information.

3.5 Save Document

Save as Draft

Click **Save** (or "Save quote" / "Save invoice") to save the document as a draft. The document:

- Receives a document number (if not already present)
- Remains editable
- Appears in the document list with status "Draft"

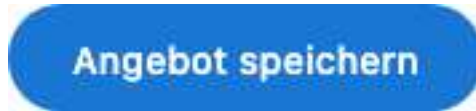


Figure 72: Save the document as draft

[i] **Pro Tip:** Save regularly to avoid losing your work. The application doesn't save automatically.

Go Back Without Saving

Click the **back arrow** in the upper left corner to return to the previous screen. If you have unsaved changes, a dialog appears:

Unsaved Changes

"You have unsaved changes. Do you really want to continue?"

- **Discard:** Changes will not be saved
- **Cancel:** Stay in the form

Save a Draft as a Document Preset

If a draft contains a structure you want to reuse later, you can save it as a **document preset**.

This is especially useful for:

- Recurring monthly or quarterly invoices
- Standard offers with optional add-on packages
- Project templates with fixed introductions, closing text, or payment setup

When saving a preset, review whether the draft should contribute reusable content such as line items, text snippets, layout, payment profile, and references. Leave out details that only apply to one specific transaction.

[i] **Pro Tip:** Document presets are best treated as maintained blueprints. Update the preset when your recurring wording, payment setup, or standard add-ons change, instead of correcting the same details in every new draft.

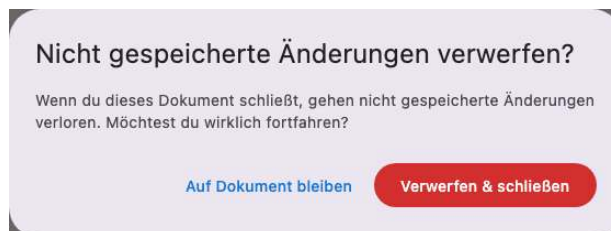


Figure 73: Warning for unsaved changes

[!] **Important:** Unsaved changes are irretrievably lost if you choose "Discard".

3.6 Document Status and Lifecycle

Each document type goes through a defined lifecycle with different statuses. The statuses determine which actions are possible.

Status Overview

Draft

- Document is fully editable
- Can be deleted
- Can be duplicated (except invoice corrections)
- **Next step:** Publish

Published

- Document is **immutable** (for GoBD-oriented workflows)
- Receives a timestamp `published_at`
- Can be exported (PDF with optional ZUGFeRD/XRechnung)
- Cannot be deleted (only after 10-year retention period)
- **Next steps** (depending on document type):
 - **Invoice:** Record payment, create reminder, cancel
 - **Quote:** Mark as accepted/rejected, create invoice



Figure 74: Published document with status badge

Additional Statuses (depending on document type)

- **Partially Paid** (Invoice): Part of the invoice amount has been paid
- **Fully Paid** (Invoice): Invoice amount fully paid
- **Cancelled** (Invoice): Invoice was cancelled by correction invoice
- **Accepted** (Quote): Customer accepted quote
- **Turned Down** (Quote): Customer rejected quote
- **Expired** (Quote): Quote is past expiration date
- **Obsolete** (Payment Reminder): Reminder is no longer current (e.g., due to payment)
- **Deletable** (all types): Document can be deleted after 10-year retention period



Figure 75: Overview of different document statuses with color coding

Status Transitions

The application always shows you the possible **Next Steps** based on the current status.

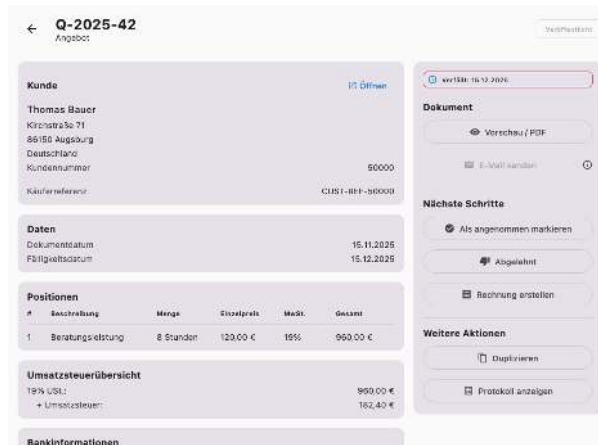


Figure 76: The action buttons show available next steps

3.7 Publish Document

Publishing a document is the most important step in the lifecycle. After that, the document becomes **immutable**.

Prerequisites

Before publishing, the application checks:

- [+] Customer selected
- [+] At least one line item present
- [+] All fields valid (no red validation errors)

Perform Publication

1. Click **Publish** in the "Next Steps" section
2. A confirmation dialog appears:

Publish quote?

"After publishing the quote, you can no longer change it."

- **Publish:** Confirm
- **Cancel:** Abort operation



Figure 77: Confirmation dialog when publishing a quote

3. After confirmation:
 - Status changes to **Published**
 - Timestamp published_at is set
 - All fields become write-protected (gray background)
 - New actions become available (e.g., "Create invoice", "Record payment")

Figure 78: Published document with write-protected fields

[i] **Pro Tip:** Check all data carefully before publishing – there's no going back.

[>] **Power Tip:** Use the **PDF preview** (see section "PDF Export") to check the document before publishing or exporting.

3.8 Record Payment

For invoices, you can record payment receipts to track payment status.

Add Payment

1. Open the published invoice
2. Click **Record payment** in the "Next Steps" section
3. A dialog opens:

Figure 79: Dialog for recording a payment

Fields in Payment Dialog

- **Payment amount:** Amount of payment in document currency
- **Payment date:** When the payment was received
- **Auto-calculate payment:** If enabled, the remaining amount is automatically pre-filled

[i] **Pro Tip:** Enable "Auto-calculate payment" to enter the exact remaining amount for full payment.

Partial Payments

You can record multiple payments if the customer pays in installments:

1. Record the first partial payment → Status changes to **Partially Paid**
2. Record additional payments until the amount is reached → Status changes to **Fully Paid**

Teilweise bezahlt
Rechnung RE-2025-018
Bezahlt: 500,00 EUR
Offen: 740,00 EUR

Figure 80: Document with partial payment shows the remaining amount

The application shows you:

- **Amount paid:** Sum of all payments
- **Remaining amount:** Outstanding amount (Total - Amount paid)

Overpayment

If the customer pays more than the invoice amount (e.g., for tip or rounding), the application accepts this. The status still changes to **Fully Paid**.

Überzahlung
Rechnung RE-2025-021
Zahlungseingang: 1.350,00 EUR
Guthaben: 110,00 EUR

Figure 81: Overpayment is accepted and marked as fully paid

Undo Payment

If you recorded a payment by mistake (e.g., wrong amount, wrong date, or a transfer that never actually arrived), you can reverse it.

How to undo a payment:

1. Open the invoice whose payment you want to reverse
2. In the detail panel, find the **Payments** section – all recorded payments are listed there
3. Click the undo icon next to the payment you want to reverse
4. Confirm the action in the dialog

Zahlungen

Zahlung vom 12.11.2025
500,00 EUR
Banküberweisung
Aktion: Zahlung rückgängig machen

Figure 81a: A recorded payment with the revert action

When is undoing a payment appropriate?

- A payment was entered with the wrong amount
- A payment was assigned to the wrong invoice
- A customer's bank transfer was reversed (chargeback)

What happens after undoing?

- If the invoice was **Fully Paid**, it returns to **Published** (unpaid)

- If the invoice was **Partially Paid** and other payments remain, the status is recalculated from the remaining payments
- If all payments are removed, the invoice returns to **Published** (unpaid)

[!] **Note:** Undoing a payment removes the payment record but does **not** delete the **audit log entry**. The audit log faithfully records that a payment was created and subsequently reversed, preserving your complete audit trail.

3.9 Create Invoice from Quote

Once a quote has been accepted, you can create an invoice directly from it.

Workflow: Quote → Invoice

1. Open the published quote
2. Click **Mark as accepted** (optional but recommended)
3. Click **Create invoice**
4. The application creates a new invoice draft with:
 - Same line items and text snippets
 - Reference to the quote (source document)
 - New invoice number
 - Today's invoice date and adjusted payment term

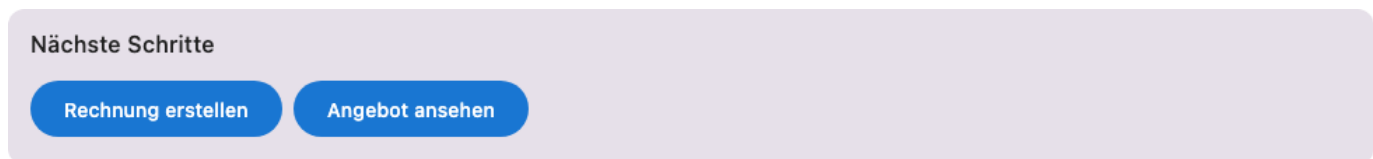


Figure 82: "Create invoice" button on published quote

5. Edit the invoice if needed (e.g., adjust date, add line items)
6. Save and publish the invoice

[i] **Pro Tip:** The link to the quote remains – you see the quote number in the "Source" field.

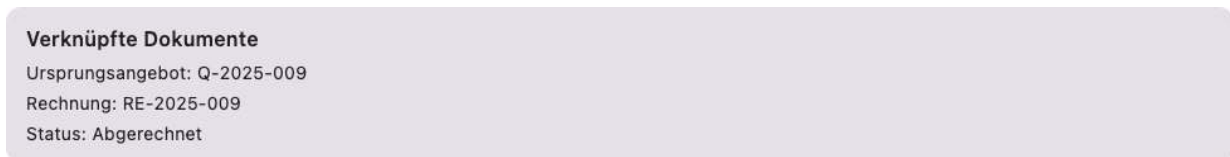


Figure 83: Invoice shows the linked quote in the "Source" field

Quote Revisions

For a published quote, use the **Revisions** section to create a **New revision**. Invoicer creates a draft revision with the next revision number; if an open draft revision already exists, open or delete that draft first.

After publication, the new revision replaces the earlier quote version for the ongoing quote process. Earlier revisions remain visible in the revision list and audit trail. Use revisions for quote changes before the customer places the order; for published invoices, correction invoices and cancellation remain the right workflow.

[*] **Workflow Tip (5–10 minutes):**

1. Create quote and send to customer (3 minutes)
2. Wait for feedback
3. Mark quote as accepted (10 seconds)
4. Create invoice (30 seconds)

3.10 Create Payment Reminder (Dunning)

If an invoice is overdue, you can create a payment reminder (dunning letter).

Prerequisites

The application shows the **Create payment reminder** button only when:

- [+] Invoice is **published** or **partially paid**
- [+] Due date has been exceeded
- [+] No active payment reminder exists

Create Reminder

1. Open the overdue invoice
2. Click **Create payment reminder** in the "Next Steps" section
3. The application creates a new reminder draft with:
 - Reference to the original invoice (Source field)
 - Escalation level (Level 1, Level 2, Level 3, ...)
 - New date and new payment term
 - Line items of the original invoice

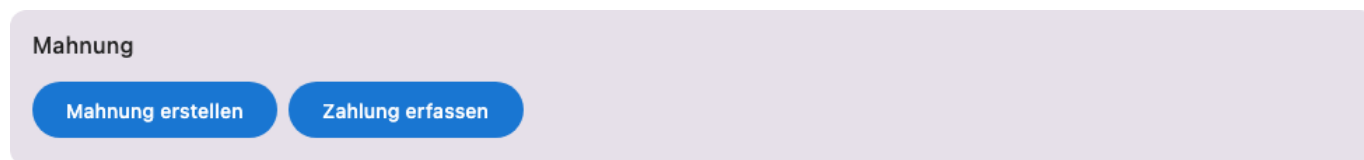


Figure 84: "Create payment reminder" button on overdue invoice

4. Edit the reminder if needed. Add text snippets as usual; record reminder fees in the dedicated **Payment reminder fees** section.
5. Save and publish the reminder

Payment Reminder Fees

Payment reminder fees are not additional invoice line items. In the **Payment reminder fees** section, click + **Add payment reminder fee**, enter a description and amount, and review the displayed tax treatment. The amount starts blank or at zero; Invoicer deliberately does not suggest an amount as generally permissible.

You can remove a newly added fee while the reminder is still a draft. After publication, it is part of the immutable reminder. When you create a later reminder level, previously issued fees that remain open retain their original description and issue time and are shown as locked entries.

[!] **Legal note:** VAT treatment does not establish whether a reminder fee is legally owed or collectible at the entered amount. The debtor generally needs to have already been in default. Ordinary internal labour and administrative overhead are not a reliably recoverable cost basis. Review the individual case; Invoicer does not validate collectibility and does not recommend a standard amount.

Escalation Levels

The application automatically assigns escalation levels:

- **Level 1:** First payment reminder (e.g., MAH-2024-001-L1)
- **Level 2:** Second reminder (e.g., MAH-2024-001-L2)

- **Level 3:** Third reminder (e.g., MAH-2024-001-L3)



Figure 85: Reminder shows escalation level in badge

[i] **Pro Tip:** The escalation level automatically appears in the document number and status badge.

Record a Payment with Reminder Fees

When you record a payment for an invoice with open reminder fees, the existing **Record payment** dialog shows a read-only allocation between the invoice receivable and reminder fees before saving. For German documents, an otherwise undesignated receipt settles the oldest open reminder fees first and then the invoice receivable. Select **Different payment designation: invoice receivable first** only when the payer has clearly made that designation.

For Austrian and Swiss documents, Invoicer rejects an ambiguous partial receipt instead of assuming an unconfirmed allocation. A receipt split across multiple components can only be reversed in full and then recorded again if needed. Once the invoice receivable is fully settled, the reminder family closes; remaining reminder fees are not carried forward as a separate residual claim.

Mark Reminder as Obsolete

If the customer has paid in the meantime or an out-of-court settlement has been reached, you can mark the reminder as **obsolete**:

1. Open the published reminder
2. Click **Mark as obsolete**
3. Status changes to **Obsolete**

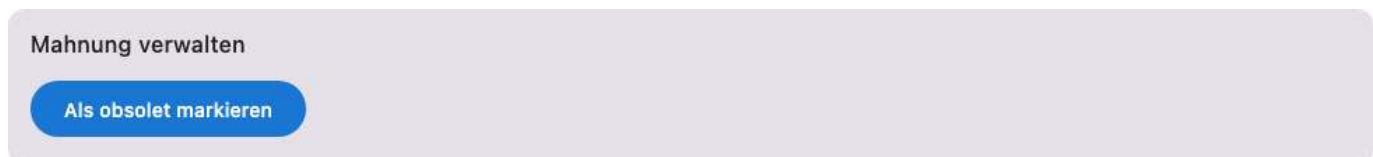


Figure 86: "Mark as obsolete" button on published reminder

3.11 Invoice Correction Options

If you need to correct or cancel an invoice, the application provides three options for different scenarios that support GoBD-oriented workflows.

Prerequisites

You can correct an invoice if it is:

- [+] **Published** or **partially paid**

[!] **Important:** Fully paid invoices can no longer be corrected or cancelled.

Perform Correction

1. Open the published invoice
2. Click **Correct Invoice** in the "Next Steps" section
3. A dialog appears with three options:



Figure 87: Dialog for choosing the correction type

Option 1: Full Cancellation (Cancellation Invoice / Stornorechnung) The application:

1. Creates a new cancellation invoice with negated line items (negative amounts matching the full original)
2. Automatically publishes the cancellation invoice
3. Sets the original invoice to **Cancelled** status
4. Links both documents

When to use?

- Invoice was issued to the wrong customer
- Invoice was completely incorrect
- Full refund is required

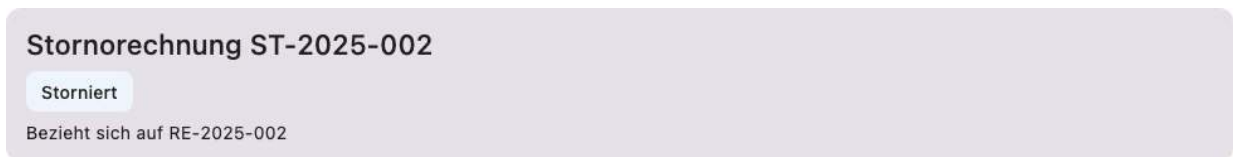


Figure 88a: Cancellation invoice with fully negated line items

Option 2: Partial Adjustment (Invoice Correction / Rechnungskorrektur) The application:

1. Creates a new correction invoice as a **Draft**
2. Allows you to edit specific line items to adjust partial amounts
3. You must manually publish the correction after editing

When to use?

- Only specific line items need adjustment
- Partial refund is required
- You need to customize the correction before sending

[i] **Pro Tip:** After selecting this option, you can modify the correction draft to reflect only the specific adjustments needed, rather than negating the entire invoice.

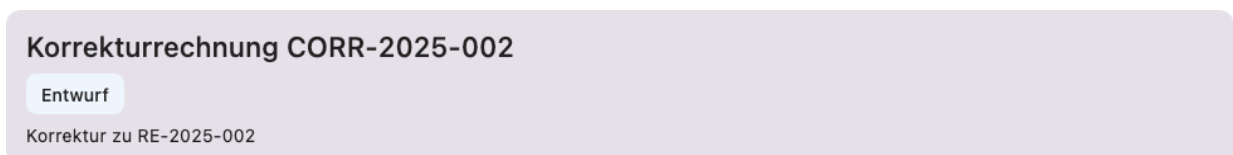


Figure 88b: Correction invoice draft ready for editing

Option 3: Cancel and Replace (Invoice Revision / Rechnungsberichtigung) The application:

1. Creates a cancellation invoice with fully negated line items
2. Automatically publishes the cancellation invoice

3. Creates a new invoice **Draft** with the same content as the original
4. The new draft has a new invoice number and can be edited before publishing

When to use?

- Minor errors need correction (wrong address, typo in description)
- You need to issue a corrected version of the same invoice
- The customer should receive a replacement invoice

[i] Pro Tip: This is the recommended option when you need to fix small mistakes. The new draft preserves all line items, so you can quickly make corrections and publish.

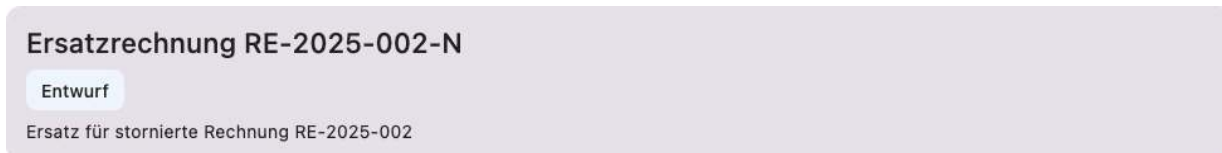


Figure 88c: New invoice draft created as replacement

[*] Workflow Tip (2–3 minutes):

1. Choose "Cancel and Replace" option (30 seconds)
2. Export and archive the cancellation invoice (30 seconds)
3. Edit the new draft with corrections (1 minute)
4. Publish and export the corrected invoice (1 minute)

3.12 Duplicate Document

To save time, you can use an existing document as a template for a new document.

Note: Invoice correction documents cannot be duplicated.

Perform Duplication

1. Click the **three-dot menu** to the right of the document in the document list
2. Select **Duplicate**
3. A confirmation dialog appears:

Duplicate invoice?

"A copy of invoice RE-2024-005 will be created as a new draft. Continue?"

- **Duplicate:** Confirm
- **Cancel:** Abort operation



Figure 89: Confirmation dialog when duplicating an invoice

4. The application creates a new draft with:
 - Same line items and text snippets
 - New document number
 - Today's date
 - Status **Draft**

Rechnung RE-2025-014-KOPIE

Entwurf

Dupliziert aus RE-2025-014

Figure 90: The duplicated document is a new draft

[i] **Pro Tip:** Duplicates are ideal for recurring invoices (e.g., monthly maintenance contracts).

[>] **Power Tip:** Combine duplication with text snippets to create standard invoices in seconds.

3.13 PDF Export and Preview

The application creates professional PDF documents with optional ZUGFeRD or XRechnung integration.

Show PDF Preview

1. Open the document (draft or published)
2. Click **Preview** in the toolbar
3. The application generates a temporary PDF and displays it in the browser viewer

Export

PDF-Vorschau

Figure 91: "Preview" button in the toolbar

PDF-Vorschau

invoice-preview.html

Rechnung RE-2025-014

TechVision GmbH

Leistungszeitraum: November 2025

Positionen

1. Beratungspaket Enterprise | 8 h | 1.240,00 EUR
2. Projektkoordination | 2 h | 310,00 EUR

Gesamtbetrag: 1.550,00 EUR

Figure 92: PDF preview in browser viewer

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use the preview to check the layout and all content before publishing or exporting the document.

Export PDF

1. Open the published document
2. Click **Export** in the toolbar
3. A file selection dialog opens
4. Choose the storage location and filename
5. Click **Save**

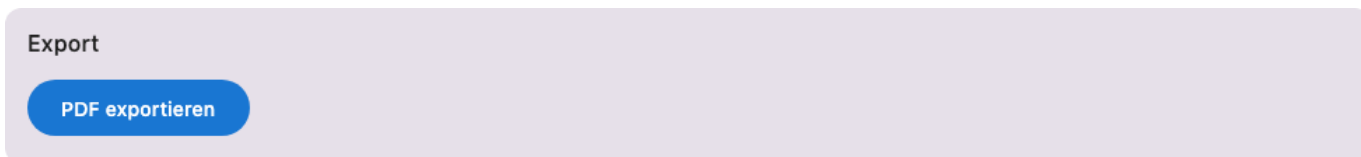


Figure 93: "Export" button in the toolbar

The application:

- Generates the PDF with all data, line items, and text snippets
- Optionally embeds ZUGFeRD/XRechnung XML (if enabled for customer)
- Saves the file in the selected directory
- Shows a success message with the file path

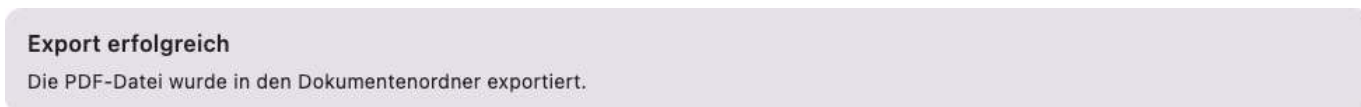


Figure 94: Success message after PDF export

ZUGFeRD and XRechnung

If you've enabled **ZUGFeRD** or **XRechnung** in customer settings, the corresponding XML is automatically embedded in the PDF:

- **ZUGFeRD**: XML data according to ZUGFeRD standard (machine-readable)
- **XRechnung**: XML data according to XRechnung standard (for public contractors)

A light purple form titled 'Kundenprofil'. It contains two input fields: 'Firmenname' with the value 'TechVision GmbH' and 'E-Rechnung' with the value 'ZUGFeRD / Factur-X'. Below these fields is a section titled 'Export-Eigenschaften' which lists 'XML eingebettet', 'Profil: EN16931', and 'PDF + strukturierte Metadaten'.

Figure 95: Customer settings with enabled ZUGFeRD

[i] **Pro Tip:** ZUGFeRD PDFs can be automatically read by modern accounting software – saving your customer time.

Review Exported E-Invoice Data

After exporting a document with embedded e-invoice data, you can open the exported file again inside Invoicer and inspect the structured data directly in the application.

This is useful when you want to verify:

- Seller and buyer details
- Invoice number, dates, and references
- Line items and totals
- Payment details

- Whether the exported structure matches the PDF content

In workflows that require additional control, review the exported PDF and the structured e-invoice data side by side before sending the document to the customer.

Validate Exported E-Invoices

For exported e-invoices, Invoicer can also run a validation step similar to the validation available for incoming documents.

Use validation when:

- A customer or public-sector recipient requires strict XRechnung or ZUGFeRD conformance
- You changed customer master data or e-invoicing settings shortly before export
- You want to catch structured-data issues before delivery

If validation reports problems, correct the document or master data, export again, and rerun the check before sending the file onward.

For supplies using VAT category 0 (not subject to VAT), use ZUGFeRD/EN 16931 output. The current German XRechnung rules require a VAT rate in every VAT breakdown while EN 16931 forbids that rate for category 0; Invoicer therefore blocks this category/profile combination instead of generating contradictory XML.

Export History

The application logs every export with:

- Date and time
- Filename and path
- SHA-256 hash of the file (for integrity verification)

You can view the export history in the audit log (see Chapter 10 "GoBD Support").

Prüfprotokoll

12.11.2025 09:14 | PDF exportiert

12.11.2025 09:15 | ZUGFeRD-Export erstellt

Figure 96: Export history with verification status

[*] **Workflow Tip:** Always export documents immediately after publishing and save them in your archive directory (e.g., ~/Documents/Invoices/2024/).

3.14 Send Document via Email

Invoicer can send a document directly via email using your configured templates and email settings.

Prerequisites

- Configure email sending in **Settings** (see Chapter 11: Email)
- Maintain customer email addresses (billing/general) in **Customers**
- The document should be in a state that can be exported (typically **published**)

Send an Email

1. Open the document
2. Click **Send via email** (or the email action in the toolbar)
3. Review the recipient fields:

- **To:** billing email, general email, or custom addresses
 - **CC:** optional copy recipients
 - **BCC:** optional blind-copy recipients
4. Review and edit **Subject** and **Body**
 - Defaults come from your **Document Emails** templates
 - The body supports **Markdown**
 5. (Optional) Insert tokens into subject/body using the token list
 6. Use **Preview** to check recipients, subject, body, and attachments before sending
 7. Click **Send**

Invoicer normalizes multiple addresses, removes duplicates, and highlights invalid recipient fields before sending is allowed. The send action and used recipients are recorded in the document audit trail.

[!] **Important:** If the dialog shows warnings about unknown tokens, fix them before sending to avoid placeholders being sent to the customer.

Copy to Sent Folder (IMAP)

If you enabled “copy to sent” via IMAP and the copy fails, the dialog provides a retry flow. You may be asked to confirm or adjust the **Sent folder** name and retry the copy.

3.15 Delete Document

Delete Drafts

Drafts can be deleted at any time:

1. Click the **three-dot menu** to the right of the draft in the document list
2. Select **Delete**
3. A confirmation dialog appears:

Delete draft?

”Do you really want to delete the draft ”RE-2024-007”? This action cannot be undone.”

- **Delete:** Confirm (red button)
- **Cancel:** Abort operation



Figure 97: Confirmation dialog when deleting a draft

[!] **Important:** If the draft originated from another document (e.g., correction invoice), the parent document is reset to its previous state (see warning in dialog).

Delete Published Documents

Published documents **cannot be deleted** to support GoBD-oriented retention workflows. They generally must be retained for 10 years.

After the retention period expires (10 years after full payment or cancellation), the status changes to **Deletable**. Then the actions **Mark as deletable** and **Delete** appear.

Löschbare Dokumente

RE-2025-031 | Entwurf | Löschbar

Q-2025-018 | Abgelaufen | Löschbar

Figure 98: Document with status "Deletable" can be deleted

[i] **Pro Tip:** The application automatically calculates the retention period – you don't need to track anything manually.

3.16 Show Audit Log

Each document has a complete audit log that records all changes and status transitions.

Open Audit Log

1. Open the document
2. Click **Show audit log** in the "Next Steps" section or in the toolbar
3. A dialog opens with the complete history

Protokoll

Protokoll anzeigen

Figure 99: "Show audit log" button in the toolbar



Figure 100: Audit log shows all changes with timestamp

What is Logged?

- **Creation:** When the document was created
- **Status changes:** All transitions (e.g., Draft → Published, Published → Fully Paid)
- **Payments:** Every recorded payment with amount and date
- **Exports:** When the document was exported as PDF (with filename and hash)
- **Changes:** Changes to line items, text snippets, or customer data (only in draft)

[i] **Pro Tip:** The audit log is part of GoBD-oriented traceability and cannot be manipulated through the application.

3.17 Practical Workflows

Workflow 1: Quote Process – From Quote to Invoice (5–10 minutes)

Goal: Create a quote, get customer approval, and create the invoice.

Steps:

1. **Create quote** (3 minutes)
 - Click + **Create New** → **New Quote**
 - Select tenant and customer
 - Add line items
 - Add text snippets (e.g., "Quote valid until ...")
 - Save as draft
 - Check **PDF preview**
2. **Publish quote** (30 seconds)
 - Click **Publish**
 - Confirm the dialog
 - **Export PDF** and send to customer via email
3. **Wait for feedback** (external waiting time)
 - Customer reviews quote
 - Customer accepts
4. **Mark quote as accepted** (10 seconds)
 - Open the quote
 - Click **Mark as accepted**
5. **Create invoice from quote** (1 minute)
 - Click **Create invoice**
 - Check line items and date
 - Save as draft
6. **Publish and export invoice** (1 minute)
 - Click **Publish**
 - Click **Export**
 - Save PDF in archive directory
 - Send PDF to customer via email

Result: Customer receives binding invoice based on their accepted quote. All steps are logged traceably.

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use text snippets for standard phrases like "Thank you for your trust" or "Payable within 14 days".

Workflow 2: Dunning Management – Process Overdue Invoices (5–10 minutes daily)

Goal: Identify and process overdue invoices.

Steps:

1. **Open dashboard** (10 seconds)
 - Click **Dashboard** in the sidebar
 - Check the **Overdue** card
2. **Filter overdue invoices** (10 seconds)
 - Click on the number in the **Overdue** card
 - You automatically land in the document list with "Due payments" filter
3. **Check each invoice** (1–2 minutes per invoice)
 - Open the invoice
 - Check if payment was received (banking app, bank statement)
 - **If paid:** Click **Record payment**, enter amount and date

- **If not paid:** Check how long overdue (due date)
4. **Create payment reminder** (if necessary, 2 minutes per reminder)
 - Click **Create payment reminder**
 - Optionally add text snippets (e.g., "Friendly payment reminder")
 - Save and publish
 - Export PDF and send via email
 5. **Escalation for repeated reminders** (optional)
 - At Level 2 or Level 3: Add stricter text snippets
 - If needed, add a new fee in the dedicated **Payment reminder fees** section via + **Add payment reminder fee**

Result: All overdue invoices are processed, payment receipts recorded, reminders sent.

[>>] **Power Tip:** Perform this workflow daily or weekly to minimize payment defaults.

Workflow 3: Month-End Closing – Export All Invoices (15–30 minutes monthly)

Goal: Export all invoices of the current month for accounting and archiving.

Steps:

1. **Filter document list** (30 seconds)
 - Click **Documents** in the sidebar
 - Open the filter panel
 - Select **Document type:** Invoice
 - Set **Document range:** From 1st of the month to last day of the month
 - Click **Apply filters**
2. **Export all invoices** (10–15 minutes)
 - Open each invoice individually
 - Click **Export**
 - Save PDF in archive directory (e.g., ~/Documents/Invoices/2024/November/)
 - Use consistent filenames (e.g., RE-2024-123_CustomerName.pdf)
3. **Check export history** (5 minutes)
 - Open the audit log of an invoice
 - Check that all exports are logged
 - Optional: Perform file integrity check (see Chapter 10 "GoBD Support")
4. **Create backup** (5 minutes)
 - Go to **Settings** → **Backup**
 - Click **Create backup now**
 - Save the backup file on external drive or cloud

Result: All invoices of the month are exported, archived, and backed up. Ready for accounting and tax advisor.

[*] **Workflow Tip:** Create a monthly archive directory (e.g., 2024/November/) to store invoices in a structured way.

3.18 Pro Tips for Efficient Work

[>>] **Use keyboard shortcuts:**

- **Tab:** Jump between fields
- **Enter:** Save (in many dialogs)

- **Esc:** Close dialog

[i] **Duplicates for recurring invoices:** If you send monthly maintenance invoices, duplicate the last invoice and only adjust the date.

[*] **Text snippets for common scenarios:** Create snippets for:

- Payment notes (e.g., "Payable within 14 days")
- Project start (e.g., "Thank you for the order. We start on ...")
- Reminders (e.g., "Friendly payment reminder – please transfer by ...")

[!] **Check filters regularly:** If you don't see a new document in the list, check if a filter is active (blue badge on filter icon).

[~] **Regular backups:** Create weekly or monthly backups to avoid data loss (see Chapter 11 "Settings").

[i] **PDF preview before sending:** Always check the PDF preview before sending the document to the customer. Verify:

- Customer data correct
- Line items and amounts correct
- Text snippets appropriate
- Payment terms correct

3.19 Related Documents Panel

When documents are linked to each other – for example, an invoice derived from a quote, or a correction invoice created from an original invoice – AGYNAMIX Invoicer visualizes these connections in the **Related Documents** panel.

Where the Panel Appears

The Related Documents panel is shown in the right-hand detail area whenever you open a document that is part of a document chain. Look for the **Related Documents** section below the document details.

Verknüpfte Dokumente

Angebot Q-2025-002

Rechnung RE-2025-002

Korrektur CORR-2025-002

Figure 100a: The Related Documents panel showing a linked quote, invoice, and correction

What Links Are Shown

The panel displays the entire document chain, including:

Source document

- Example: The quote that this invoice was created from

Derived documents

- Example: Invoices or reminders that were created from this document

Corrections

- Example: Correction invoices that cancel or partially correct this invoice

Each linked document shows its:

- Document number
- Document type (quote, invoice, correction, reminder)

- Current status (Draft, Published, Paid, etc.)
- Date

Navigate Between Linked Documents

Click any entry in the Related Documents panel to navigate directly to that document. This makes it easy to trace the full history of a business transaction:

- Start with a quote → see the invoice it turned into
- Open an invoice → see if a payment reminder was sent
- Open a corrected invoice → see the original it corrects

[i] Pro Tip: The Related Documents panel is especially useful during customer disputes or audits – you can trace the complete document trail in a few clicks without using the search field.

Sales Artefacts

Published sales documents can also include **sales artefacts**: supporting files that belong to the business transaction but are not themselves part of the document chain.

Typical examples are:

- Signed quotes
- Customer correspondence
- Specifications or statements of work
- Progress evidence
- Relevant email attachments

Use the artefacts area to keep these materials together with the related sales transaction. Artefacts can be added from local files, by drag and drop, or from email-based intake flows when available.

Before archiving an artefact, review whether it belongs to the transaction and whether the file name and content are clear enough for later retrieval.

[i] Pro Tip: Use sales artefacts for supporting evidence and communication history. Use the Related Documents panel for actual document-to-document relationships such as quote → invoice or invoice → reminder.

3.20 Payment Overview

In addition to the per-invoice payment tracking described in section 3.8, AGYNAMIX Invoicer provides a dedicated **Payment Overview** screen that gives you a bird's-eye view of all payment transactions across all your invoices at once.

How to Open the Payment Overview

Click **Payments** in the left sidebar.

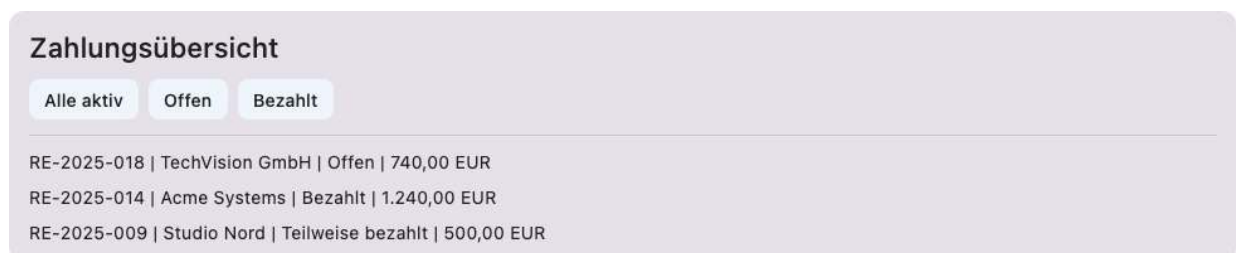


Figure 100b: The Payment Overview screen shows all payment transactions across all documents

What the Payment Overview Shows

The overview lists all payment entries with the following columns:

- **Document:** Invoice number and document type
- **Customer:** Customer name
- **Amount:** Payment amount (or total invoice amount)
- **Due Date:** When the invoice is / was due
- **Status:** Payment status (Overdue, Due Soon, Paid, etc.)

Available Filters

Use the status filters at the top of the screen to focus on what matters most:

- **All:** Every invoice with a payment status
- **Overdue:** Invoices past their due date that are not yet paid
- **Due Soon:** Invoices due within the next few days
- **Paid:** Invoices that have been fully paid

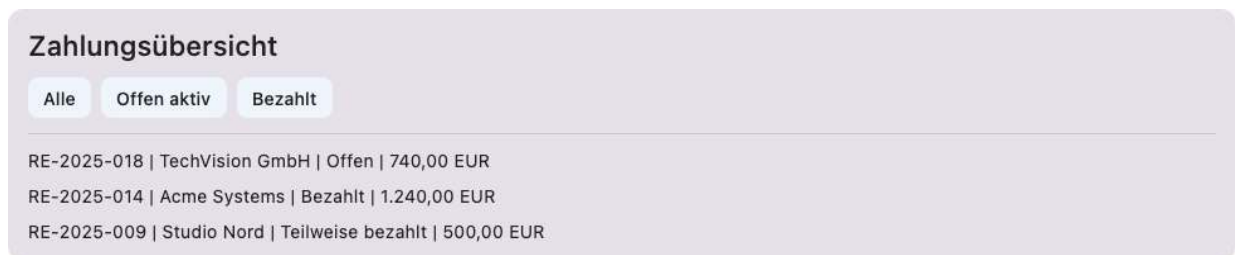


Figure 100c: The filter tabs narrow the list to the most important items

Visual Payment Badges

Payment status badges (colored indicators) are also shown directly on document list entries and the dashboard summary widgets. These give you an at-a-glance warning for overdue items without navigating to the Payment Overview.

Using the Payment Overview to Manage Receivables

The Payment Overview is designed for a quick daily or weekly check of open receivables:

1. Open the **Payment Overview**
2. Switch to the **Overdue** filter
3. Review which invoices are past due
4. Click any entry to open the invoice and take action (record a payment, send a reminder)

[i] **Pro Tip:** Start your work day with a quick glance at the **Overdue** and **Due Soon** filters – this prevents invoices from slipping through the cracks.

Continue with Chapter 4: Incoming Documents

4. Incoming Documents

Incoming Documents are the purchase-side counterpart to your sales documents. Use this area for supplier invoices, receipts, and other documents that you receive, need to review, categorize, pay, and archive traceably.

The workflow is designed for everyday bookkeeping preparation: you upload the original invoice file, review the extracted data, assign the supplier and expense category, approve the document, record payments, and keep the source document together with its audit trail.

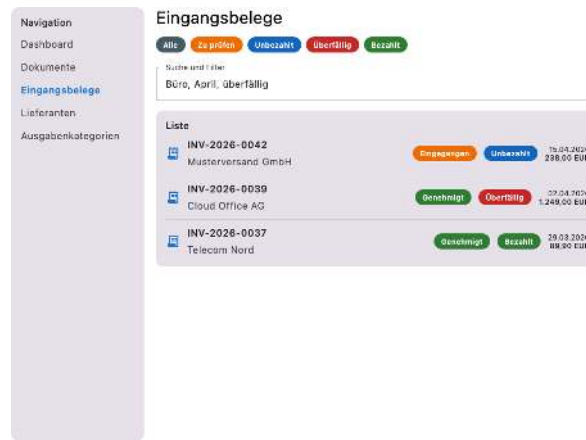


Figure XX: The incoming documents list with filters for review, unpaid, overdue, and paid documents

4.1 What Incoming Documents Are For

Incoming documents help you manage documents that represent costs for your business, for example:

- Supplier invoices
- Software subscriptions
- Office and travel expenses
- Service provider invoices
- Receipts that need to be archived with the accounting records

Each incoming document stores the business metadata separately from the original file. The original PDF or e-invoice remains the source document, while Invoicer records supplier, dates, amounts, payment status, expense category, attachments, and state changes.

Important: AI and e-invoice extraction help with data entry, but you remain responsible for checking supplier data, amounts, tax values, account assignment, and payment information before approval or export.

4.2 Recommended Setup Before First Use

Before importing real supplier invoices, complete these settings and master data steps:

1. Open **Tenants** and check the tenant's accounting system, usually **SKR03** or **SKR04**.
2. Open **Expense Categories** and review the default categories and account mappings.
3. Open **Settings** → **Archive** and configure the archive storage.
4. Optional: open **Settings** → **AI** and connect a local or OpenAI-compatible AI endpoint.
5. Optional: create important suppliers in advance, or let Invoicer suggest supplier creation during import.
6. Open **Settings** → **DATEV / Tax Advisor** and check advisor number, client number, revenue account, default expense account, and whether incoming documents must always have mapped expense accounts.

Empfohlene Einrichtung für Eingangsbelege

Bevor du echte Lieferantenrechnungen importierst, richte die wichtigsten Einkaufs- und Archivbereiche ein.

Einrichtungsbereiche

**Kontenrahmen**
Mandant auf SKR03 oder SKR04 prüfen

**Ausgabenkategorien**
Standardkategorien und Kontenzuordnung prüfen

**Archiv**
Archivspeicher und WORM-Strategie festlegen

**KI**
Lokalen oder OpenAI-kompatiblen Endpunkt verbinden

**DATEV / Steuerberater**
Beraternummer, Mandantennummer und Standardkonten prüfen

Figure XX: Recommended setup areas for incoming document processing

4.3 Import Documents

Open **Incoming Documents** from the sidebar and use the import action to add files. You can select one or more document files. PDF files are the main workflow; PDFs with embedded e-invoice data can be used to prefill fields more reliably. If your mailbox intake is configured, you can also start the same workflow from email.

During intake, Invoicer asks you to choose the **Primary Source Document** when multiple files are selected. The primary source document is used for preview, e-invoice extraction, AI analysis, and as the primary attachment after saving.

Typical intake flow:

1. Open **Incoming Documents**.
2. Click the import or upload action.
3. Select or drop one or more PDF files.
4. If several files are present, choose the **Primary Source Document**.
5. Review duplicate warnings.
6. Extract data from an e-invoice or analyze the PDF with AI, if available.
7. Review and correct the metadata.
8. Click **Save & Review** to create the incoming document and open it for review.

Eingangsbeleg-Erfassung

PDF-Vorschau, Metadaten und Extraktionsaktionen in einem Arbeitsbereich.

 rechnung-april.pdf
PDF-Vorschau

Lieferantenrechnung April 2026
Mustervsand GmbH
Rechnungsnummer: INV-2026-0042
Leistungszeitraum: April 2026
Gesamtbetrag: 238,00 EUR
Seite 1 / 1

Quelldateien
Primäres Quelldokument:
rechnung-april.pdf

E-Rechnung extrahieren

Mit KI analysieren

Metadaten
Lieferant:
Mustervsand GmbH
Rechnungsnummer:
INV-2026-0042
Rechnungsdatum:
14.04.2026
Fälligkeitsdatum:
28.04.2026
Bruttobetrag:
238,00 EUR
Ausgabenkategorie:
Bürobedarf

Speichern & Prüfen

Figure XX: Intake workspace with PDF preview, metadata fields, and extraction actions

Duplicate Warnings

The intake screen checks whether a selected file already exists as an attachment or incoming document. If a duplicate is detected, Invoicer shows a warning and can take you to the existing document. You can still include a file when you intentionally need a second record, but this should be rare.

Import From an Email Mailbox

Incoming documents can also be collected directly from an email mailbox. This is useful when supplier invoices arrive by email and you want to move them into the incoming-document workflow without first saving attachments manually.

Typical email-intake flow:

1. Open the email-based intake dialog from **Incoming Documents**.
2. Browse or search the available messages.
3. Open a message and review its attachments.
4. Select the files that belong to the incoming document.
5. Decide whether the source email should also be kept as traceable evidence.
6. Continue into the normal intake workspace for metadata review, e-invoice extraction, AI analysis, and duplicate checks.

When an email contains several relevant files, you can still choose the **Primary Source Document** in the intake workspace. In some cases, keeping the .eml message itself or one selected attachment as the primary source makes later review easier.

[i] **Pro Tip:** Keep the source email when it contains important context such as order references, supplier explanations, or approval history. This improves traceability without forcing you to manage the whole process outside Invoicer.

4.4 E-Invoice Extraction

If the selected file contains embedded e-invoice data, Invoicer can use it to prefill document metadata. Supported e-invoice data can include invoice number, invoice date, due date, totals, VAT details, supplier information, payment references, and bank details.

When several selected files contain e-invoice data, Invoicer asks which one should be used for prefilling. You can skip extraction and enter the metadata manually.

The document view also includes an **E-Invoice** tab when structured data is available. This tab displays document information, seller, buyer, line items, totals, payment details, references, and supporting document metadata.

Strukturierte E-Rechnung

Original-PDF und strukturierte Daten können nebeneinander geprüft werden.

PDF E-Rechnung Nebeneinander

rechnung-zugferd.pdf

PDF-Vorschau

Lieferantenrechnung April 2026

Mustervsand GmbH

Rechnungsnummer INV-2026-0042

Leistungszeitraum: April 2026

Gesamtbetrag: 238,00 EUR

Seite 1 / 1

E-Rechnung

Verkäufer	Mustervsand GmbH
Rechnungsnummer	INV-2026-0042
Leistungsdatum	14.04.2026
Gesamt	238,00 EUR
Zahlungsdaten	
IBAN	DE12500105170648489890
Verwendungszweck	KRED-2026-0042

Figure XX: Structured e-invoice details shown next to the original PDF

4.5 AI-Assisted Analysis

If configured, AI analysis can extract invoice metadata from PDFs that do not contain usable e-invoice data. Open **Settings** → **AI** to connect a provider, then return to the intake workspace and use **Analyze with AI**.

AI analysis can suggest:

- Invoice number
- Invoice date and due date
- Gross, net, VAT amount, and VAT rate
- Supplier name and contact data
- IBAN, BIC, and bank name
- Currency
- Payment evidence and payment reference
- Expense category suggestions

Invoicer first tries text-based analysis when the PDF contains extractable text. If the PDF is scanned and the selected model supports image understanding, Invoicer can use vision analysis.

Known working examples include local Ollama or LM Studio models and OpenAI-compatible hosted models; model availability may vary. Prefer local providers for sensitive business documents when practical.

Privacy note: For AI analysis, contents of incoming documents are sent to the selected AI provider. Make sure this matches your privacy policy and contractual obligations.

KI-Analyseergebnis

Die Analyse zeigt extrahierte Felder, Konfidenz und Alternativen für unklare Werte.

The screenshot displays the 'KI-Analyseergebnis' (AI Analysis Result) interface. It is divided into two main sections. The left section, titled 'scan-rechnung.pdf' and 'PDF-Vorschau', shows a preview of the invoice document. The right section, titled 'Extrahierte Felder' (Extracted Fields), lists the extracted data points with their corresponding confidence scores (Konfidenz). Below this, an 'Alternativen' (Alternatives) section provides suggestions for unclear values.

Extrahierte Felder	Konfidenz
Rechnungsnummer INV-2026-0042	0,92
Lieferant Musterversand GmbH	0,95
Ausgabenkategorie Bürobedarf	0,81
IBAN DE12500105170648489890	0,77

Alternativen
INV-2026-0042
INV-2026-0047
Office & Supplies

Figure XX: AI extraction results with suggested fields and alternatives

4.6 Review Metadata

Before saving or approving an incoming document, verify every extracted field. Pay special attention to:

- Supplier and supplier address
- Invoice number
- Invoice date, received date, and due date
- Net, VAT, and gross amounts
- VAT rate
- Currency
- Expense category
- Payment reference and bank details
- Notes and attachments

If AI found alternatives for a field, use the alternatives picker to compare candidates and confidence. If a supplier was detected but does not yet exist, Invoicer can prefill a supplier form from e-invoice data or AI analysis.

Metadaten prüfen
Extrahierte Werte müssen vor dem Speichern und vor jeder Genehmigung geprüft werden.

rechnung-april.pdf
PDF-Vorschau

Lieferantenrechnung April 2026
Musterversand GmbH
Rechnungsnummer INV-2026-0042
Leistungszeitraum: April 2026
Gesamtbetrag: 238,00 EUR

Seite 1 / 1

Lieferant

Lieferant
Musterversand GmbH

USt-IdNr.
DE123456789

[Lieferant anlegen](#)

Rechnungsdaten

Rechnungsnummer
INV-2026-0042

Ausgabenkategorie
Bürobedarf

Brutto
238,00 EUR

Figure XX: Metadata review with supplier, amounts, dates, and expense category

4.7 Suppliers During Intake

Suppliers are the companies or people who send invoices to you. During intake, Invoicer can match extracted supplier data to existing suppliers by name, VAT ID, IBAN, or other identifying data.

If no matching supplier exists, create one directly from the extracted e-invoice or AI data. Review the prefilled fields before saving. You can link supplier and customer records when the same business partner appears in both roles.

Good supplier data improves:

- Future supplier matching
- Payment assistant suggestions
- Expense category suggestions based on supplier history
- DATEV and bookkeeping preparation

4.8 Assign Expense Categories

Every incoming document should be assigned to an expense category. The category determines how the expense is grouped and which accounting account is used for export and reporting.

Invoicer can suggest categories from:

- The supplier's default category
- Previous documents from the same supplier
- AI analysis
- E-invoice summary data

Always review the suggestion before approval. If no category fits, create or adjust categories in **Expense Categories**.

See Chapter 5: Suppliers and Expense Categories for the accounting setup.

4.9 Document States

Incoming documents move through a small state workflow:

Received

- Meaning: New or reopened document in review
- Typical use: Check metadata, supplier, category, and attachments

Approved

- Meaning: Reviewed and accepted
- Typical use: The document is archived and locked for normal attachment changes

Disputed

- Meaning: Approved document needs clarification
- Typical use: Supplier correction, amount mismatch, or internal question

Cancelled

- Meaning: Approved/disputed document is no longer valid
- Typical use: Final state for invalidated business documents

Rejected

- Meaning: Not a valid document for booking
- Typical use: Accidental import, duplicate, or non-business document

Deletable

- Meaning: Eligible for deletion after retention rules allow it
- Typical use: Cleanup state after the required waiting period

Approval is the important transition: approve only when source file, supplier, amounts, tax values, expense category, and attachments are correct. After approval, attachments are moved into archive storage, attachment changes are locked, and deletion is restricted by retention rules.

Rejected documents are removed from the active workflow and can later be deleted or reopened. Invoicer shows the remaining auto-purge period for rejected documents.

Figure XX: Confirmation before approving, rejecting, disputing, cancelling, or reopening an incoming document

4.10 Payment Tracking

Incoming documents have their own payment status:

- **Unpaid**

- **Partially Paid**
- **Paid**

The list provides filters for **To Review**, **Unpaid**, **Overdue**, and **Paid** documents. In the document view, use **Record Payment** or **Mark as Paid** to keep the internal payment record up to date.

If e-invoice or AI data contains payment evidence, Invoicer can prefill recipient, IBAN, BIC, amount, due date, and payment reference. The payment assistant can show an EPC QR code for EUR bank transfers. Always verify the banking details before executing a payment in your banking app.

Zahlungsassistent

Bankdaten, Referenz und EPC-QR werden aus E-Rechnung oder KI-Analyse vorausgefüllt.

Überweisungsdaten

Empfänger
Musterversand GmbH

IBAN
DE12500105170648489890

BIC
INGDDEFFXXX

Betrag
238,00 EUR

Verwendungszweck
KRED-2026-0042

IBAN kopieren Referenz kopieren

EPC-QR

EPC-QR
SEPA Überweisung

Figure XX: Payment assistant with bank details, reference, amount, and QR code

4.11 Attachments

An incoming document can have multiple attachments. The primary attachment is the authoritative source document used for preview and extraction. Additional attachments can include supporting documents, supplier correspondence, delivery notes, internal notes, or the source email from mailbox-based intake.

Attachment behavior depends on the document state:

- While the document is still in review, attachments can be added, removed, and marked as primary.
- After approval, attachments are archived and normal attachment editing is locked.
- Duplicate attachments are detected and reported.
- Attachments can be downloaded from the document view.

If the document originated from email intake, the source message can be kept as provenance while the selected attachment files continue through the normal incoming-document workflow. This helps preserve context without requiring you to archive the same attachment twice.

Anhänge

Der primäre Anhang bleibt das maßgebliche Quelldokument für Vorschau und Extraktion.

Anhänge

	lieferantenrechnung.pdf Primär	Primär	Download
	lieferschein-42.pdf Zusätzlicher Anhang		Download
	mail-an-lieferant.txt Zusätzlicher Anhang		Download

Figure XX: Attachment panel with primary marker and download action

4.12 Client-Server Mode

In client-server mode, the host database remains authoritative. Incoming document metadata, suppliers, expense categories, payments, and attachment metadata are synchronized to clients. The actual file bytes remain managed by the host and are fetched when needed.

This means clients can review and work with incoming documents while keeping archive paths and binary document storage controlled centrally on the host.

4.13 Practical Workflow

A reliable weekly workflow looks like this:

1. Import all new supplier invoices.
 - Use file import for local PDFs or mailbox intake for emailed invoices.
2. Use e-invoice extraction or AI analysis to prefill data.
3. Create or match suppliers.
4. Assign expense categories.
5. Review amounts, dates, VAT, and payment details.
6. Approve valid documents.
7. Record payments as they are executed or confirmed.
8. Use DATEV export when handing data to your tax advisor.

Best practice: Do not approve documents in bulk unless every invoice has been checked. Approval is the point where archive handling and later export assumptions become important.

Continue with Chapter 5: Suppliers and Expense Categories

5. Suppliers and Expense Categories

Suppliers and **Expense Categories** are the master data behind incoming document processing. Suppliers identify who sent the invoice. Expense categories describe what kind of cost it is and which accounting account should be used for bookkeeping and DATEV export.

Together they make incoming documents faster to review and more reliable for tax advisor handover.

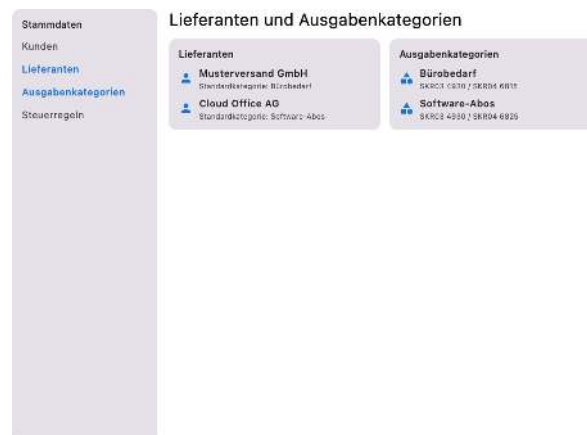


Figure XX: Supplier and expense category navigation entries in the sidebar

5.1 Suppliers

A supplier is a business partner who sends invoices to you. Supplier records can include:

- Company or person name
- Address
- Email and phone
- VAT ID and tax number
- IBAN, BIC, and bank name
- Optional link to an existing customer record
- Default expense category

Supplier data is used during incoming document intake, payment assistance, duplicate checks, and category suggestions.

Lieferantenformular

Adresse, Steuerdaten, Zahlungsinformationen und Standard-Ausgabenkategorie in einem Formular.

Stammdaten	Zahlung & Zuordnung
Name Musterversand GmbH	IBAN DE12500105170648489890
Straße Musterstraße 7	BIC INGDEFFXXX
PLZ / Ort 20457 Hamburg	Standard-Ausgabenkategorie Bürobedarf
USt-IdNr. DE123456789	Verknüpfter Kunde Nicht verknüpft

Figure XX: Supplier form with address, tax, and payment details

Create Suppliers

You can create suppliers in three ways:

1. Open **Suppliers** from the sidebar and create a new supplier manually.
2. During incoming document intake, create a supplier from e-invoice data.
3. During AI-assisted intake, create a supplier from the AI analysis result.

When creating a supplier from extracted data, review the fields carefully before saving. Extracted supplier data is a convenience, not a legal verification.

Link Suppliers and Customers

Some business partners are both customers and suppliers. Invoicer can link a supplier to an existing customer record. This keeps the two roles visible without mixing sales-side and purchase-side workflows.

Use this when, for example, a partner buys services from you but also invoices you for subcontracted work.

5.2 Expense Categories

Expense categories classify incoming documents for bookkeeping preparation. A category can represent costs such as software, office supplies, travel, professional services, telecommunications, rent, or insurance.

Each category can define:

- Name and description
- Short code and color

- Account system, usually SKR03 or SKR04
- Account number from the account catalog or a custom account
- DATEV BU key
- Default tax rule
- Whether the expense is normally deductible
- Deductible share in percent
- Sort order

Ausgabenkategorien

Kontonummern, Kontenrahmen und Aktivstatus für die Eingangsbeleg-Zuordnung.

Liste	
Bürobedarf SKR03 · Konto 4930	Aktiv
Software-Abos SKR04 · Konto 6825	Aktiv
Reisekosten SKR03 · Konto 4660	Inaktiv

Figure XX: Expense categories with account numbers and active status

5.3 SKR03 and SKR04

SKR03 and SKR04 are standard German account frameworks. Your tenant chooses one accounting system, and expense categories use accounts from that system.

- **SKR03** is organized by business process.
- **SKR04** is organized more closely around financial statement structure.

Most small businesses use the framework recommended by their tax advisor. If you are unsure, ask your tax advisor before changing the tenant's accounting system or custom category mappings.

The selected accounting system affects:

- Account suggestions in expense categories
- Default system categories
- DATEV export account numbers
- Category remapping when changing the tenant accounting system

5.4 Default Categories and Account Catalog

Invoicer includes default expense categories for the selected account system. These categories are meant as a practical starting point and can be reset when needed.

Use **Reset Defaults** when you want to restore system-provided categories. Existing custom categories remain your responsibility; if you switch from SKR03 to SKR04 or the other way around, custom categories may need manual target account mapping.

The account catalog helps you search and choose valid account numbers. You can still enter a custom account when your tax advisor uses a special account setup.

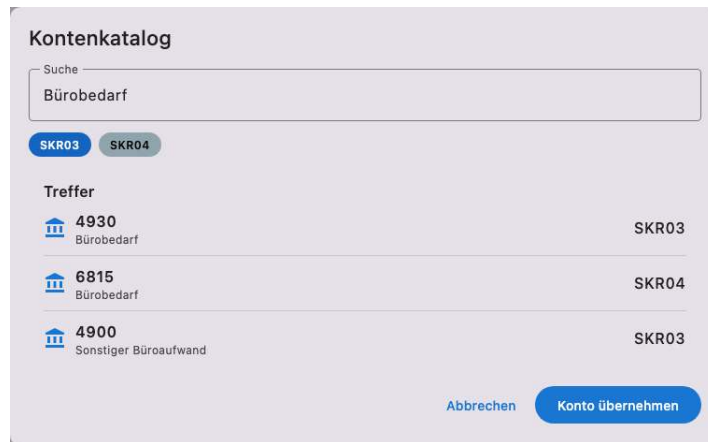


Figure XX: Account catalog search while editing an expense category

5.5 Create or Edit an Expense Category

To create a category:

1. Open **Expense Categories**.
2. Click the create action.
3. Enter a clear name, for example `Software subscriptions`.
4. Choose the accounting system if it is not already inherited from the tenant.
5. Select an account from the catalog or enter a custom account number.
6. Optionally set DATEV BU key, default tax rule, deductibility, and sort order.
7. Save the category.

Use precise category names that your team and tax advisor will understand later. Avoid overly broad categories when different tax treatment or account mapping is needed.

Deductibility

The deductibility settings are defaults for how the cost is normally treated. For example, some costs may only be partially deductible. If you are unsure, keep the default or ask your tax advisor.

5.6 Expense Category Suggestions

During incoming document review, Invoicer can suggest categories from several signals:

- Supplier default category
- Previous documents from the same supplier
- E-invoice summary
- AI analysis

The suggestion dialog shows the source and, when available, confidence and reason. Use suggestions to speed up review, but verify the final category before approving the document.

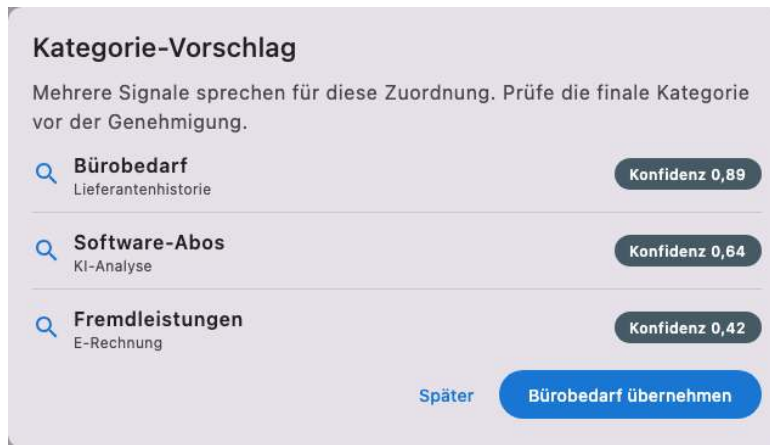


Figure XX: Category suggestion with source, confidence, and reason

5.7 DATEV Export Behavior

Expense category account mapping is important for DATEV export. For incoming documents, Invoicer can use the category's mapped expense account. If a document has no mapped category account, the export can use the default expense account from **Settings → DATEV / Tax Advisor**.

You can also enable **Require mapped expense accounts for incoming documents**. When enabled, DATEV export blocks incoming documents that would otherwise use the fallback expense account. This is stricter, but it prevents accidental posting to a generic expense account.

Use this setting when you want every exported incoming document to have an explicit category-to-account assignment.

5.8 Changing the Tenant Accounting System

The tenant form contains the accounting system setting. Changing it affects future incoming document categories and DATEV export behavior.

When you switch account systems:

- System categories can be remapped automatically.
- Custom categories may require manual target account selection.
- Already exported incoming documents keep their archived category and account snapshot.

Best practice: Coordinate an accounting system change with your tax advisor and choose a clean point in time, for example before a new fiscal year or before importing many incoming documents.

5.9 Practical Setup Checklist

Before processing real incoming invoices, check:

1. Tenant accounting system is correct: SKR03 or SKR04.
2. Default expense categories exist and look sensible.
3. Important recurring suppliers have supplier records.
4. Common suppliers have a default expense category.
5. DATEV default expense account is configured.
6. Decide whether DATEV export should require mapped expense accounts.
7. Confirm custom account mappings with your tax advisor.

Continue with **Chapter 6: Time Tracking**

6. Time Tracking (Timesheets)

Time Tracking (Timesheets) is the perfect tool for project-based billing according to actual hours worked. Record your working hours continuously, organize them into billing periods, and create professional invoices from them with one click. Ideal for freelancers, consultants, and service providers who bill by the hour.

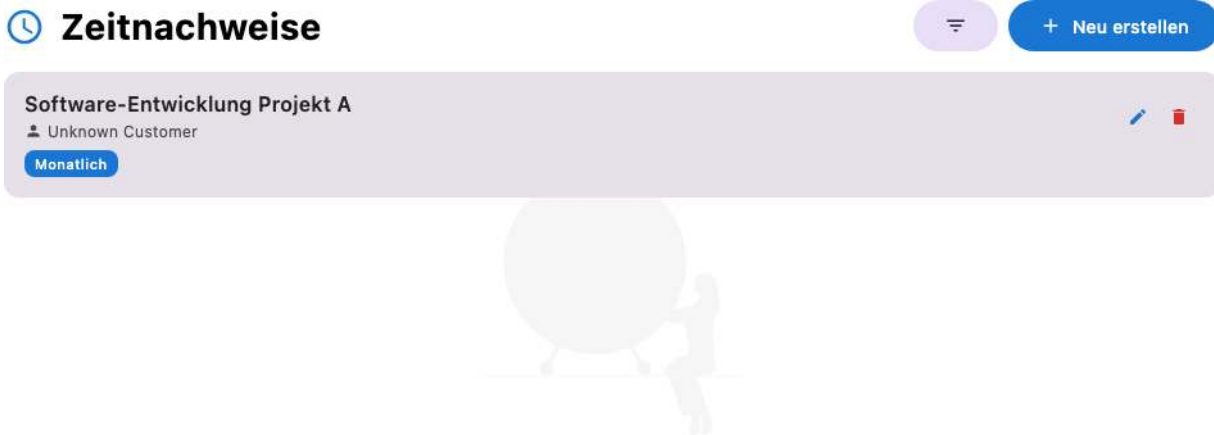


Figure 101: The timesheet list shows all active and archived time tracking records

6.1 Timesheet Concept

A **timesheet** is a container for time entries for a specific customer and project. It defines:

- **Customer:** For whom the work is performed
- **Reporting period:** Weekly, bi-weekly, monthly, or custom
- **Default hourly rate:** Your billing rate (can be overridden per entry)
- **Billing periods:** Automatically calculated time periods that are billed as invoices

Workflow: From Time Tracking to Invoice

1. **Create timesheet:** Define customer, reporting period, and hourly rate
2. **Record time entries:** Enter your hours worked daily or weekly
3. **Finalize period:** Create an invoice from the current time period
4. **Edit invoice:** Adjust the invoice if needed (e.g., add text snippets)
5. **Publish invoice:** Finalize the invoice and export it as PDF



Figure 102: The complete workflow from time tracking to invoice

[i] **Pro Tip:** A timesheet can be used over months – you simply create a new invoice for each reporting period (e.g., each week).

6.2 Timesheet List

The timesheet list is your central workspace for all time tracking records.

List Overview

The list shows for each timesheet:

- **Title:** Descriptive name (e.g., "Project Alpha - January 2025")
- **Customer:** Customer name
- **Status:** Active or Inactive
- **Reporting period:** Weekly, bi-weekly, monthly, or custom
- **Time period:** Start date (and optional end date)
- **Hourly rate:** Default billing rate

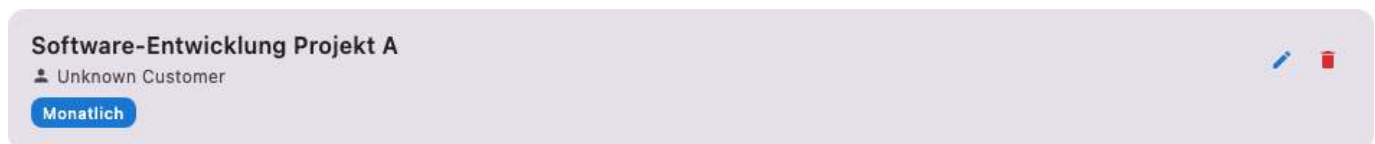


Figure 103: Each entry shows all important information at a glance

Status Display

- **Active:** Timesheet is open for new entries (green badge)
- **Inactive:** Timesheet is archived and read-only (gray badge)



Figure 104: Active and inactive timesheets with color coding

[i] **Pro Tip:** A customer can only have **one active** timesheet at a time. If you create a new timesheet for the same customer, the old one automatically becomes inactive.

6.3 Filters and Search

Using the Search Field

The search field searches:

- Timesheet title
- Description
- Customer name

The search is real-time – as you type, the list updates immediately.

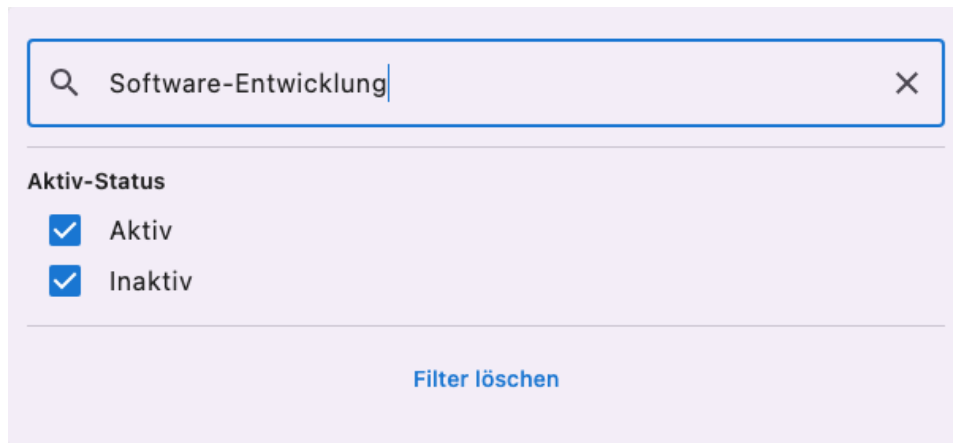
A screenshot of a search interface. At the top is a search bar with a magnifying glass icon on the left and an 'X' icon on the right. The text 'Software-Entwicklung' is entered in the search bar. Below the search bar is a section titled 'Aktiv-Status'. It contains two filter options: 'Aktiv' with a checked checkbox and 'Inaktiv' with a checked checkbox. At the bottom of this section is a button labeled 'Filter löschen'.

Figure 105: Real-time search finds timesheets by title or customer

Filter by Customer

Click the **"All Customers" dropdown menu** to show only timesheets for a specific customer.

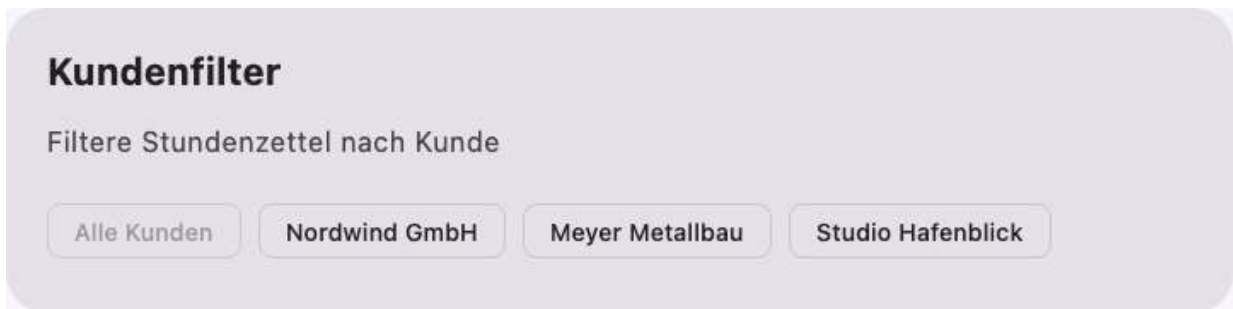
A screenshot of a filter section titled 'Kundenfilter'. Below the title is the text 'Filtere Stundenzettel nach Kunde'. There are four buttons: 'Alle Kunden', 'Nordwind GmbH', 'Meyer Metallbau', and 'Studio Hafenblick'. The 'Alle Kunden' button is highlighted with a light blue background.

Figure 106: Filter timesheets by customer

Filter by Status

Choose between:

- **Active:** Show only active timesheets
- **Inactive:** Show only archived timesheets
- **All:** Show all timesheets (default)

Figure 107: Filter by active or inactive status

6.4 Create Timesheet

Create New Timesheet

1. Click + **Create new timesheet** in the header
2. The creation form opens



Figure 108: Button to create a new timesheet

Form Fields

Basic Information Title (required field)

- Descriptive name for the timesheet
- Examples: "Project Alpha - Q1 2025", "Consulting Customer XY", "January 2025 - Development"

Figure 109: Give the timesheet a meaningful title

Description (optional)

- Additional notes or context information
- Only visible to you, does not appear on invoices

The screenshot shows the 'Neuen Zeitrachweis erstellen' (Create new timesheet) form. At the top, there's a header with a back arrow and the title 'Neuen Zeitrachweis erstellen', and a status indicator 'Nicht gespeicherte Änderungen'. Below this is a section 'Kunde & Zeitraum' with three fields: 'Mandant' (set to 'TechVision GmbH'), 'Kunde' (set to 'Thomas Bauer'), and 'Vorlage' (set to 'Modern Clean Timesheet'). The main section 'Grundinformationen' contains a required field 'Titel des Zeitrachweises' (set to 'z.B. Januar 2025 - Kundenname') and an optional field 'Beschreibung (optional)' (set to 'Monatliche Entwicklung und Wartung'). Below this is a note 'Notizen zu diesem Zeitraum hinzufügen'. There are also optional fields for 'Auftrags-ID' (set to 'z.B. ORDER-123') and 'Vertrags-ID' (set to 'z.B. CONTRACT-9'). The 'Abrechnungsinformationen' section has a required field 'Berichtszeitraum' (set to 'Monatlich') and a required field 'Standard-Stundensatz' (set to '100.00'). A note 'Stundensatz eingeben (z.B., 100.00)' is present. At the bottom are two buttons: 'Abbrechen' and 'Zeitrachweis erstellen'.

Figure 110: Optionally add a description

Customer & Time Period Tenant (required field, read-only)

- Your currently selected tenant (company)
- Automatically pre-filled

This screenshot is identical to Figure 110, showing the 'Neuen Zeitrachweis erstellen' form. The 'Kunde' field is pre-filled with 'Thomas Bauer' and is read-only, indicated by a lock icon. The 'Mandant' field is set to 'TechVision GmbH' and the 'Vorlage' field is set to 'Modern Clean Timesheet'.

Figure 111: The tenant is pre-selected

Customer (required field)

- Select the customer from the dropdown list
- If the customer doesn't exist yet, click + **Create new customer**

The screenshot shows the 'Neuen Zeitrachweis erstellen' form. In the 'Kunde & Zeitraum' section, the 'Mandant' field is set to 'TechVision GmbH'. The 'Kunde' field is a dropdown menu currently showing 'Thomas Bauer' with a plus icon and a lock icon, indicating it's a required and read-only field. The 'Vorlage' field is set to 'Modern Clean Timesheet'. The rest of the form, including the 'Grundinformationen' and 'Abrechnungsinformationen' sections, is identical to the previous figures.

Figure 112: Select the customer for this timesheet

[!] **Important:** If the customer already has an active timesheet, a warning appears. You can proceed, but the old timesheet will automatically become inactive and all non-finalized entries will be moved to the new timesheet.

Aktiver Stundenzettel vorhanden

Für diesen Kunden existiert bereits der aktive Stundenzettel "Software-Entwicklung Projekt A" mit 12 offenen Einträgen.

[Abbrechen](#)[Trotzdem erstellen](#)

Figure 113: Warning when an active timesheet exists for this customer

Period Start (required field)

- Start date of the timesheet
- Default: Today
- Determines the start of the first billing period

Startdatum

10.03.2026

März 2026

1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21
22	23	24	25	26	27	28
29	30	31				

Figure 114: Select the start date via calendar

Period End (optional)

- End date of the timesheet (only for time-limited projects)
- If empty: Timesheet runs indefinitely

Enddatum

17.03.2026

Optional

März 2026

1	2	3	4	5	6	7
8	9	10	11	12	13	14
15	16	17	18	19	20	21
22	23	24	25	26	27	28
29	30	31				

Figure 115: Optionally set an end date

[i] **Pro Tip:** Leave the end date empty for ongoing projects – you can manually archive the timesheet at any time.

Billing Information Reporting Period (required field)

Choose how often you want to bill:

- **Weekly:** Billing periods from Monday to Sunday (7 days)
- **Bi-weekly:** Billing periods of 14 days (2 weeks)
- **Monthly:** Billing periods from beginning to end of month
- **Custom:** Flexible periods – you decide when the period ends when finalizing



Figure 116: Select the billing rhythm

[i] **Pro Tip:**

- **Weekly** is ideal for short-term projects with regular billing
- **Monthly** is typical for maintenance contracts or retainer models
- **Custom** is perfect for irregular or project-based billing

[!] **Important:** The reporting period cannot be changed after creation once a period has been finalized. In this case, create a new timesheet.

Default Hourly Rate (required field)

- Your billing rate per hour in the tenant currency (e.g., EUR)
- Used as default for all time entries
- Can be overridden individually per entry

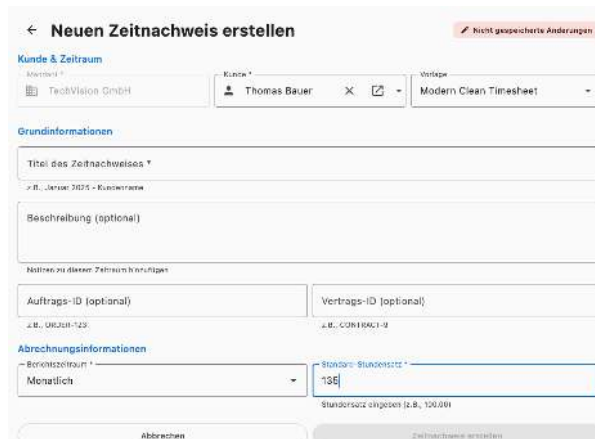


Figure 117: Set your default hourly rate

[i] **Pro Tip:** Enter your standard hourly rate – for overtime or special activities, you can later set a different rate for individual entries.

Invoice Preset (optional)

- Lets you link a **document preset** to the timesheet
- Useful for recurring invoice structure such as standard text snippets, fixed add-on items, layout, or payment setup
- The preset is not frozen at timesheet creation time; the current preset content is applied when you later create the invoice from a period

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use a preset when each timesheet invoice should include the same supporting wording, payment profile, or recurring fixed items in addition to the recorded hours.

Save Timesheet

Click **Create timesheet** to save the timesheet. The application:

- Saves the timesheet with status **Active**
- Deactivates any existing active timesheet for the same customer if necessary
- Opens the detail view where you can record time entries



Figure 118: Save the timesheet with the create button

6.5 Edit Timesheet

Open Timesheet

Click on a timesheet in the list to open the **detail view**.

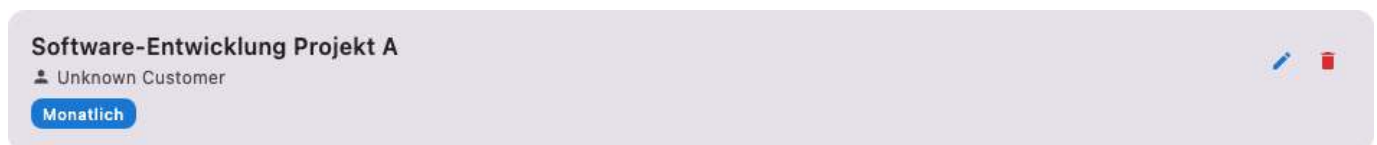


Figure 119: Click on a timesheet to open it

Detail View Overview

The detail view shows:

1. **Header area** with title, customer, and status
2. **Edit button** (pencil icon) to change title, description, and hourly rate
3. **Current period** with all open time entries
4. **Past periods** with finalized (billed) time periods

← Zeitnachweis-Details

Zeitnachweis-Informationen
Software-Entwicklung Projekt A
Thomas Bauer
Auftrags-ID
ORD-cd38-1
Vertrags-ID
CON-cd38-1

Gesamt abrechenbar
3016h 0min
Gesamt nicht abrechenbar
415h 30min

Gesamtbetrag
377.000,00 €
Monatlich

Zeiteinträge

+ Eintrag hinzufügen

Figure 120: The detail view of an active timesheet

Edit Basic Data

1. Click the **pencil icon** in the header area
2. The edit form opens
3. You can change:
 - Title
 - Description
 - Default hourly rate

[!] **Important:** Customer and reporting period cannot be changed once finalized periods exist.

← Zeitnachweis aktualisieren

Kunde & Zeitraum

Mandant * Kunde * Vorlage *

Grundinformationen

Titel des Zeiteintrags *
Software-Entwicklung Projekt A

z.B. Januar 2025 - Kundenname

Beschreibung (optional)
Entwicklung und Wartung der Hauptanwendung

Notizen zu diesem Zeitraum hinzufügen

Auftrags-ID (optional)
ORD-cd38-1

Vertrags-ID (optional)
CON-cd38-1

z.B. ORDER-123

z.B. CONTRACT-0

Abrechnungsinformationen

Berichtszeitraum *
Monatlich

Stunden-/Stundensatz *
125.0

Stundensatz abgesetzt (z.B. 105.00)

Abbrechen Zeitnachweis aktualisieren

Figure 121: Edit title, description, and hourly rate

[i] **Pro Tip:** Changes to the hourly rate only affect new entries – existing entries keep their previous rate.

6.6 Record Time Entries

Time entries are the individual work hours you perform for a customer.

Add New Time Entry

1. Scroll to **Current Period**
2. Click + **Add entry**
3. The input form opens

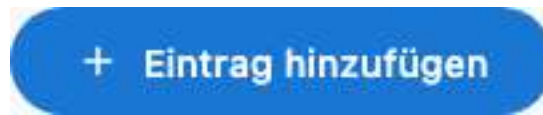


Figure 122: Button to add a new time entry

Input Form

Work Date (required field)

- Select the date when the work was performed
- Must be within the current period

Figure 123: Select the work date via calendar

[!] **Important:** If you select a date outside the current period, an error message appears. Finalized periods can no longer be edited.

Start Time (optional)

- Beginning time of work (e.g., 09:00)
- Can be left empty if only duration is important

Figure 124: Optionally enter a start time

End Time (optional)

- End time of work (e.g., 17:00)
- If start and end time are provided, the application automatically calculates the duration

← Zeitrechnung-Details

Zeitrechnungs-Informationen
Software-Entwicklung Projekt A
 Thomas Stuhl
 Auftrags-ID: 082-088-1
 Vertrags-ID: CON-0038-1

Gesamt abrechenbar: 3016h 0min
 Gesamt nicht abrechenbar: 0h00-00min

Dokumentationspreis: 377.000,00 €
 Monatlich

Zeiteinträge
 + Erstellung hinzufügen

Aktuelle Periode
 01.12.2020 - 31.12.2020
 10 Einträge 119:19 Stunden

Zeiteintrag hinzufügen

Arbeitsdatum: 15.11.2025 Startzeit: 11:30 Endzeit: Dauer (Stunden):
 z.B. 2,5 oder 2h30min oder 150min

Dauer muss größer als 0 sein

Aufgabenkategorie: Abrechenbar: ☒ Stufe: 125.00

Beschreibung:

Figure 125: Optionally enter an end time

Duration (Hours) (depending on completion status)

- Number of hours worked
- Decimal numbers possible (e.g., 2.5 for 2.5 hours)
- Automatically calculated if start and end time are provided
- If you change the duration manually, it remains manual until you recalculate it from start/end time

← Zeitrechnung-Details

Zeitrechnungs-Informationen
Software-Entwicklung Projekt A
 Thomas Stuhl
 Auftrags-ID: 082-088-1
 Vertrags-ID: CON-0038-1

Gesamt abrechenbar: 3016h 0min
 Gesamt nicht abrechenbar: 0h00-00min

Dokumentationspreis: 377.000,00 €
 Monatlich

Zeiteinträge
 + Erstellung hinzufügen

Aktuelle Periode
 01.12.2020 - 31.12.2020
 10 Einträge 119:19 Stunden

Zeiteintrag hinzufügen

Arbeitsdatum: 15.11.2025 Startzeit: Endzeit: Dauer (Stunden):
 z.B. 2,5 oder 2h30min oder 150min

Aufgabenkategorie: Abrechenbar: ☒ Stufe: 125.00

Beschreibung:

Figure 126: Enter duration in hours or have it calculated

[i] Pro Tip: Use start and end time to have duration calculated automatically – saves time and avoids calculation errors.

Description (required field)

- What did you do?
- This description will appear on the invoice later

← Zeitrnachweis-Details

Zeitrnachweis-Informationen
Software-Entwicklung Projekt A
 Thomas Schulz
 Auftrags-ID: 082-088-1
 Vertrags-ID: 000-000-1

Gesamt anrechenbar: 3016h 0min
 Gesamt nicht abrechenbar: 0h 0min 30min
 Gesamtbetrag: **377.000,00 €**
 Monatlich

Zeiteinträge + Erstellung Zeiteinträge

Aktuelle Periode
 01.12.2025 - 31.12.2025
 15 Einträge 119:19 Stunden

Zeiteintrag hinzufügen

Arbeitsdatum: 15.11.2025 Startzeit Endzeit Dauer (Stunden) *
* z.B. 2,5 oder 26,50h oder 0,0h

⚠ Dauer muss größer als 0 sein

Aufgabenkategorie: Entwicklung Abrechenbar ☒ Stk 125.00

Beschreibung:

Warten: First-In-First-Out

Figure 127: Describe the work performed

[i] Pro Tip: Write customer-friendly descriptions like "Development of login feature" instead of "Programming" – this makes invoice review easier for the customer.

Task Category (optional)

- Select a category from the dropdown list (e.g., "Development", "Consulting", "Support")
- Categories can be managed in settings (currently not implemented)

Aufgabenkategorie

Aufgabenkategorie: Entwicklung

Entwicklung

Meeting

Support

Figure 128: Optionally select a task category

Work Location (optional)

- Select an existing work location or enter a new one
- Locations are reusable per tenant and help with reporting or customer proof of work

Billable

- Checkbox: Should this entry appear on the invoice?
- Default: Enabled
- Disable this option for internal work that should not be billed (e.g., administrative tasks)

Figure 129: Mark whether this entry should be billed

[i] Pro Tip: Use non-billable entries for internal administrative work or to track all working hours, even if not everything is billed.

Hourly Rate Override (optional)

- Override the default hourly rate for this specific entry
- Useful for overtime, special activities, or discounts

Figure 130: Optionally set a different hourly rate

[i] Pro Tip: Use a higher hourly rate for emergency support or weekend work.

Complete and Incomplete Entries

You can save incomplete entries when, for example, duration or description is still missing. These entries remain visible in the timesheet, but they do not count toward billable totals or customer-facing finalizations until you complete them.

Save Entry

Click **Add entry** to save the entry. The entry appears in the current period list.

Figure 131: Save the entry with the add button

6.7 Manage Time Entries

Display Entries

The detail view shows all entries of the **current period** in a list with:

- **Date:** Work date
- **Description:** What was done
- **Duration:** Number of hours
- **Work location:** Optional location where the work was performed
- **Amount:** Calculated from duration × hourly rate
- **Billable status:** Badge "Billable" or "Not billable"
- **Completion:** Indicator when an entry is still incomplete

Figure 132: List of all time entries in the current period

Edit Entry

1. Click the **pencil icon** to the right of the entry
2. The edit form opens with all pre-filled values
3. Change the desired fields
4. Click **Save changes**

Figure 133: Edit an existing time entry

[!] **Important:** Finalized entries (from billed periods) can no longer be edited.

Delete Entry

1. Click the **trash icon** to the right of the entry
2. A confirmation dialog appears
3. Confirm with **Delete**

Figure 134: Confirmation dialog when deleting an entry

[!] **Important:** Deleted entries cannot be recovered.

6.8 Periods Overview

The detail view shows two areas:

1. **Current Period:** All open time entries that have not yet been billed
2. **Past Periods:** Finalized or archived time periods

Current Period

The current period shows:

- **Time period:** Start and end date (automatically calculated based on reporting period)
- **Number of entries:** How many time entries are recorded
- **Total hours:** Sum of all hours
- **Billable hours:** Sum of billable hours
- **Total amount:** Calculated from billable hours × hourly rate

Aktuelle Periode
01.12.2025 - 31.12.2025
15 Einträge




119:15 Stunden

Figure 135: The current period with summary

[i] **Pro Tip:** The period ends automatically based on your reporting period (e.g., every Sunday for weekly billing).

Past Periods

Past periods are **automatically displayed** once you've finalized a period, either by creating an invoice or by finalizing it without an invoice. They show the same information as the current period but are read-only.

Vergangene Perioden

01.09.2025 - 30.09.2025
8 Einträge
30 Stunden
28 abrechenbar

Abgerechnet  

3.780,00 €

01.10.2025 - 31.10.2025
11 Einträge
38 Stunden
35 abrechenbar

Rechnungsentwurf   

4.725,00 €

Figure 136: List of finalized periods with green border

Each finalized period shows:

- **Status:** "Draft invoice", "Billed", "Finalized", or "Archived"
- **Show invoice button:** Opens the linked invoice when the period was closed via an invoice
- **PDF preview/download:** Shows or downloads the period PDF when the period was finalized without an invoice
- **Archive button:** Archives the period PDF when no archive proof exists yet
- **Delete period button:** Only visible when the linked invoice is still a draft and the period is not archived (see section "Delete Period")

01.10.2025 - 31.10.2025
11 Einträge
38 Stunden
35 abrechenbar

Abgerechnet  

4.725,00 €

Figure 137: Finalized period shows the linked invoice

Finalize and Archive a Period Without an Invoice

If you want to close a time record without creating an invoice, click **Finalize period** in the current period. The confirmation dialog shows the period and warns about incomplete entries. If incomplete entries exist, you must explicitly confirm that they will not be included in customer-facing reporting.

After finalization, Invoicer opens a PDF preview of the time record. With **Archive PDF**, the PDF is stored in the configured archive; hash, file size, and storage reference are saved, and the period is marked **Archived**. You can later retrieve the archived PDF via **Download**.

In Client mode, finalization and archiving require a connection to the Host because the Host owns the authoritative archive and audit-trail entries.

6.9 Create Invoice from Period

The heart of time tracking: Create an invoice from your recorded hours with one click.

Prerequisites

You can create an invoice from the current period if:

- [+] At least one billable entry exists
- [+] The period contains hours with amount > 0

Incomplete entries are not included in customer-facing totals or finalizations. Review them before finalizing, or explicitly confirm in the dialog that they should be left out.

Create Invoice

1. Click **Create invoice** (receipt icon) in the header area of the current period
2. A confirmation dialog opens



Figure 138: "Create invoice" button for the current period

Confirmation Dialog

The dialog shows:

- **Title:** "Create invoice from period"
- **Time period:** Start and end date of the period
- **Note:** Explanation that the period will be finalized and a draft invoice created
- **Warning** (only for custom reporting period): You can adjust the end date

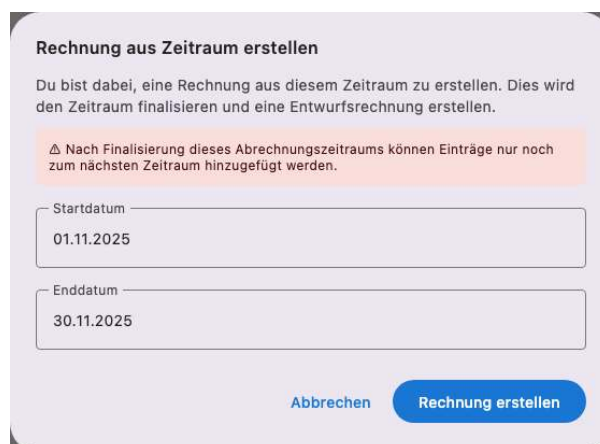


Figure 139: Dialog to confirm invoice creation

Adjust End Date (only for custom reporting period) If your timesheet is set to **Custom**, you can adjust the **end date** in the dialog:

- Default: Date of the last time entry

- You can choose an earlier or later date
- Only entries up to this date will be included in the invoice

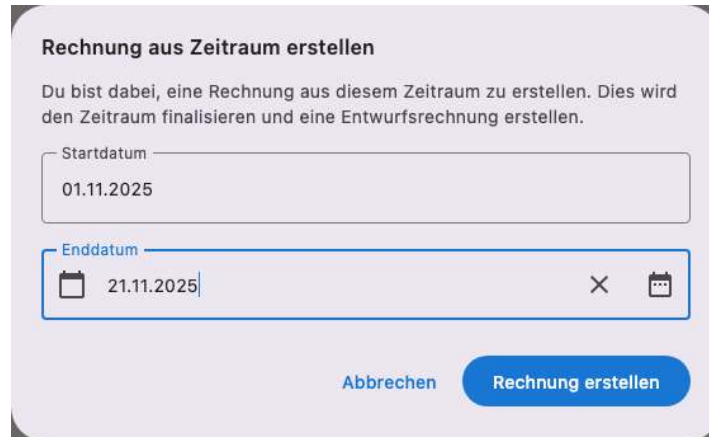


Figure 140: Adjusting end date for custom reporting period

[i] **Pro Tip:** For monthly, weekly, or bi-weekly billing, the end date is read-only and automatically calculated.

3. Click **Create invoice** to confirm

What Happens in the Background?

The application automatically performs the following steps:

1. **Finalize period:** The current period is closed and marked as "past period"
2. **Create invoice:** A new invoice with status **Draft** is created. The invoice always includes the finalized time entries and, if the timesheet is linked to an invoice preset, also uses the **current preset content** for the reusable invoice structure.
3. The draft can therefore include:
 - One entry per time entry
 - Description: Date + description of entry (e.g., "01.03.2025: Development of login feature")
 - Quantity: Number of hours (e.g., 2.5)
 - Unit price: Hourly rate of entry
 - VAT: Customer's default VAT rate
 - Reusable preset content such as text snippets, fixed additional items, layout, payment profile, or references
4. **Link entries:** All time entries are linked to the invoice (finalized)
5. **Start new period:** A new current period is automatically created (start date = day after end date of finalized period)
6. **Navigation:** You are automatically redirected to the newly created invoice

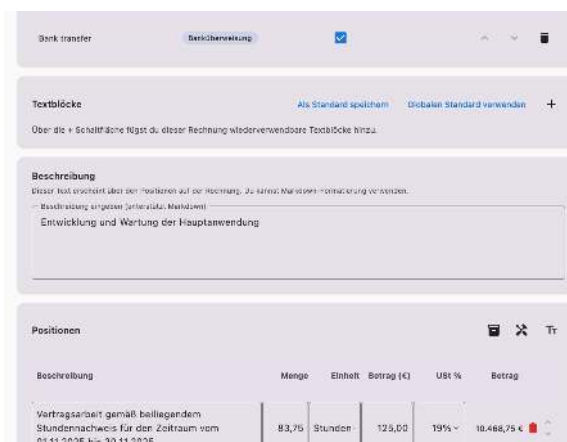


Figure 141: The created invoice with time entries and reusable invoice structure

[i] **Pro Tip:** The invoice is initially a **draft**. Even when it was created from a preset-backed timesheet, you can still adjust line items, text snippets, dates, and other details before publishing.

6.10 Edit and Publish Invoice

Edit Invoice

After creation, you can edit the invoice like any other invoice:

- **Line items:** Adjust descriptions, add line items, or remove some
- **Text snippets:** Add or refine introductions and closing formulas
- **Date:** Change invoice date or payment term

If the timesheet used an invoice preset, review the preset-derived content as part of this step. This is the right place to confirm that recurring wording, fixed add-ons, payment information, and references still fit the specific billing period.

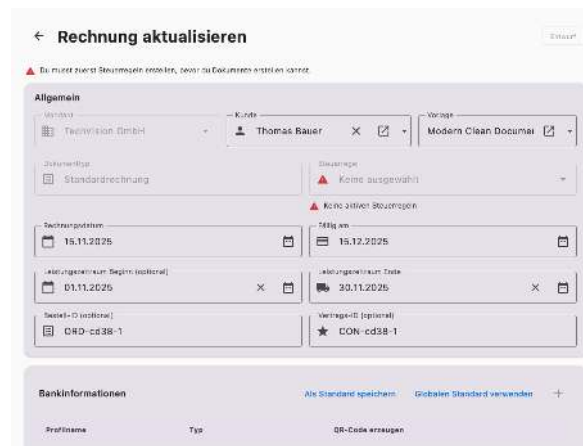


Figure 142: Edit the invoice created from time entries

[i] **Pro Tip:** Combine time entries with a preset when you regularly need the same explanatory text such as "Hourly billing according to time tracking" or the same fixed service items on every invoice.

Publish Invoice

When the invoice is ready:

1. Click **Publish** in the "Next Steps" section
2. Confirm the dialog
3. The invoice becomes **immutable** (Status: Published)
4. The finalized period in time tracking is marked green (Status: "Billed")



Figure 143: Published invoice marks period as "Billed"

Return to Time Tracking

Click **Back** or navigate via the sidebar to **Timesheets** to return to time tracking. You now see:

- The finalized period in the "Past Periods" area with green border
- **Show invoice** button to open the linked invoice
- A new **current period** for the next time entries

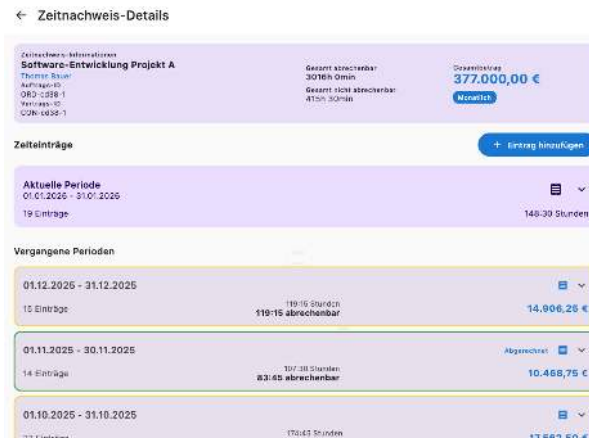


Figure 144: Time tracking shows the finalized period and a new current period

6.11 Delete Period (Drafts Only)

If you accidentally finalized a period or don't want to create the invoice after all, you can delete the period – but **only** as long as the invoice is still a draft.

Prerequisites

You can delete a period if:

- [+] The linked invoice is still in **Draft** status
- ✕ Published invoices cannot be deleted to support GoBD-oriented workflows

Delete Period

1. Open the time tracking detail view
2. Scroll to past periods
3. Click **Delete period** (trash icon) for the desired period
4. A confirmation dialog appears:

Delete period and invoice?

"This will delete the draft invoice and unlink all time entries from this period. This action cannot be undone."

- **Delete:** Confirm (red button)
- **Cancel:** Abort operation

Periode löschen

Möchtest du diese Periode wirklich löschen? Die zugehörigen Einträge werden wieder der aktuellen Periode zugeordnet.

Abbrechen

Löschen

Figure 145: Confirmation dialog when deleting a period

5. Confirm with **Delete**

What Happens When Deleting?

- The linked draft invoice is deleted
- All time entries of this period are **unfinalized** and moved back to the current period
- The period itself is removed

Aktuelle Periode

01.12.2025 - 31.12.2025

15 Einträge



119:15 Stunden

Figure 146: Entries are back in the current period after deletion

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use this function to undo accidentally created invoices – but only as long as they're still drafts.

6.12 Archive Timesheet (Set Inactive)

When a project is completed or you want to create a new timesheet for the same customer, you can archive the old timesheet.

Manually Set Inactive

(Currently not implemented – timesheets automatically become inactive when a new timesheet is created for the same customer)

Automatically Inactive Through New Timesheet

When you create a new timesheet for a customer who already has an active timesheet:

1. Warning appears: "Active timesheet exists"
2. If you proceed:
 - The old timesheet becomes **inactive**
 - All non-finalized entries are moved to the new timesheet
 - Finalized periods remain with the old timesheet

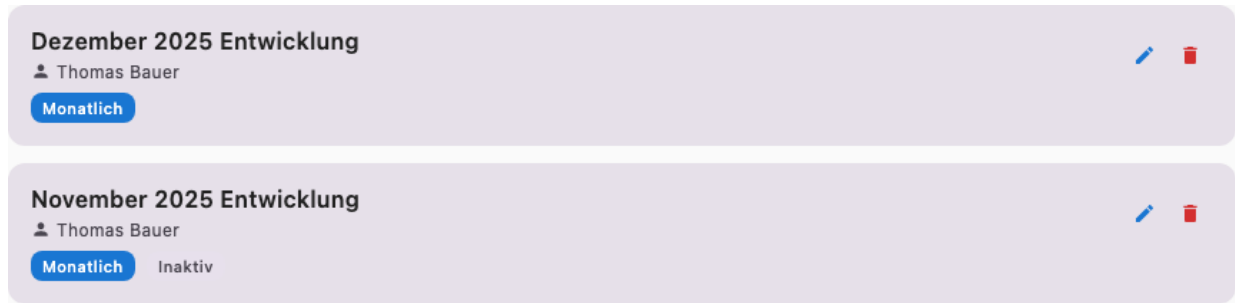


Figure 147: Old timesheet becomes inactive when a new one is created

Display Inactive Timesheets

Inactive timesheets appear with a **gray badge** in the list. They are read-only and show only finalized periods.

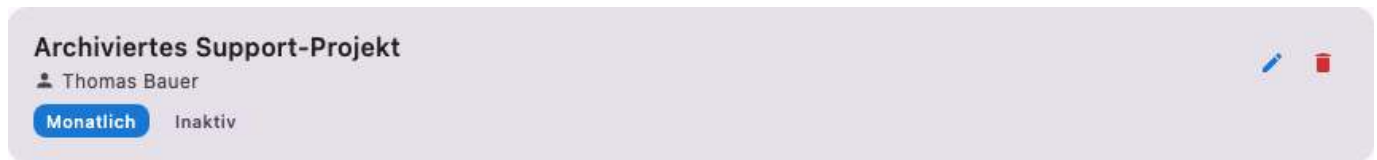


Figure 148: Inactive timesheet with gray badge

[i] **Pro Tip:** Inactive timesheets serve as an archive – you can always go back and view old invoices.

6.13 Practical Workflows

Workflow 1: Complete Workflow – Time Tracking to Invoice (15–30 minutes initial, then 5–10 minutes weekly)

Goal: Create a timesheet, record time entries over several weeks, and create monthly invoices from them.

Steps:

Initial Setup (15–30 minutes, one-time)

1. Create timesheet (5 minutes)

- Click + **Create new timesheet**
- Title: "Consulting Customer XY - 2025"
- Customer: Select Customer XY
- Reporting period: **Weekly** (for regular billing)
- Start date: Monday of current week
- Default hourly rate: 120 EUR
- Click **Create timesheet**

2. Record first time entry (2 minutes)

- Click + **Add entry**
- Work date: Today
- Start time: 09:00
- End time: 12:00
- Description: "Kick-off meeting and project planning"
- Billable: Enabled
- Click **Add entry**

Weekly Routine (5–10 minutes per week)

3. **Record time entries** (daily 1–2 minutes)
 - Open the timesheet
 - Add all time entries daily or at the end of the week
 - Use concise, customer-friendly descriptions
4. **Create weekly invoice** (Friday or Monday, 3 minutes)
 - Open the timesheet
 - Check summary of current period (hours and amount)
 - Click **Create invoice**
 - Confirm the dialog
 - The invoice opens automatically
5. **Finalize invoice** (2 minutes)
 - Check all line items
 - Optionally add text snippets (e.g., "Weekly hourly billing")
 - Click **Publish**
 - Confirm the dialog
6. **Export and send invoice** (2 minutes)
 - Click **Export**
 - Save PDF in archive directory
 - Send via email to customer

Monthly Closing (optional)

7. **Check all invoices of the month** (10 minutes)
 - Go to **Documents**
 - Filter for invoices of the current month
 - Check if all payments have been received
 - Record payments (see Chapter 3 "Documents")

Result: You have an ongoing timesheet with weekly invoices automatically generated from your time entries. All hours are cleanly documented and billed.

[i] **Pro Tip:** Set up a weekly appointment in your calendar (e.g., Friday 4 PM) for "Complete time tracking and create invoice" – so you won't forget.

Workflow 2: Project-Based Billing with Custom Period (10–15 minutes at completion)

Goal: Record time entries for a project over several weeks or months and bill at project end or after milestones.

Steps:

1. **Create timesheet with custom period** (3 minutes)
 - Title: "Project Alpha - MVP Development"
 - Customer: Select customer
 - Reporting period: **Custom**
 - Start date: Project start
 - End date: Leave empty (open-ended)
 - Default hourly rate: 150 EUR
2. **Record time entries continuously** (daily/weekly)
 - Record all hours worked
 - Use meaningful descriptions like "Feature X developed", "Bug Y fixed"

3. **Intermediate billing at milestone** (5 minutes)

- Click **Create invoice**
- In dialog: Adjust **end date** to milestone (e.g., end of Sprint 1)
- Confirm
- Only entries up to this date are billed

4. **Finalize and send invoice** (5 minutes)

- Add text snippet: "Billing Milestone 1 – MVP Sprint 1"
- Publish and export invoice

5. **Continue next phase** (0 minutes)

- The new current period automatically starts the day after the milestone end date
- Continue recording time entries for the next milestones

Result: Flexible billing according to project progress or milestones, without rigid weekly or monthly rhythms.

[*] **Workflow Tip:** Use custom periods for projects with irregular billing (e.g., agency projects with partial payments after deliverables).

Workflow 3: Track Partially Non-Billable Hours (5 minutes daily)

Goal: Record all working hours, including internal activities, to have a complete overview – but only bill billable hours.

Steps:

1. **Create timesheet** (as usual)

- Reporting period: **Monthly** (for monthly billing)

2. **Record billable entries** (daily)

- Work for customer: **Billable** enabled
- Example: "Consultation meeting with stakeholders" – 2 hours – Billable

3. **Record non-billable entries** (daily)

- Internal activities: **Billable** disabled
- Example: "Internal meeting for project planning" – 1 hour – Not billable

4. **Create monthly invoice** (end of month, 5 minutes)

- Click **Create invoice**
- Only billable entries appear on the invoice
- Non-billable entries are documented but not billed

5. **Check overall overview** (optional)

- Open the period
- Summary shows:
 - **Total hours:** All hours (billable + non-billable)
 - **Billable hours:** Only billed hours
 - **Total amount:** Only from billable hours

Result: You have a complete overview of all hours worked but only bill actually billable work. Ideal for projects with mixed activities (e.g., consulting + internal administration).

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use task categories (if implemented) to group billable and non-billable activities for better analysis.

6.14 Pro Tips for Efficient Time Tracking

[>>] **Record times daily:** Don't wait until the weekend – record your hours daily while they're still fresh in your memory. This only takes 1–2 minutes per day.

[i] **Use start and end time:** Enter start and end time to have duration calculated automatically – this avoids calculation errors and is faster than manual calculation.

[*] **Customer-friendly descriptions:** Write descriptions so the customer understands what you did. "Development of login feature" is better than "Programming".

[!] **Track non-billable hours:** Also record internal activities as non-billable entries to have a complete overview of your working time.

[~] **Establish weekly or monthly routine:** Set up a fixed appointment in your calendar (e.g., "Friday 4 PM: Create invoice") – so you won't forget billing.

[i] **Hourly rate override for special activities:** Use a higher hourly rate for emergency support, weekend work, or overtime – this keeps billing transparent and fair.

[*] **Custom periods for projects:** If you bill project-based, use custom periods and adjust the end date at milestones – so you can bill flexibly according to progress.

[>>] **Check summaries before invoice creation:** Before creating an invoice, check the current period summary (total hours, billable hours, total amount) – this avoids errors.

[i] **Text snippets for standard phrases:** Create text snippets like "Weekly hourly billing according to time tracking" and add them automatically to each invoice – saves time and creates consistency.

Continue with **Chapter 7: Tenant Management**

7. Tenant Management

Tenant Management allows you to manage multiple companies or business units in one application. Each tenant has its own company data, bank details, numbering schemes, and an optional logo. Ideal for self-employed individuals with multiple companies, tax advisors, or agencies billing for different businesses.

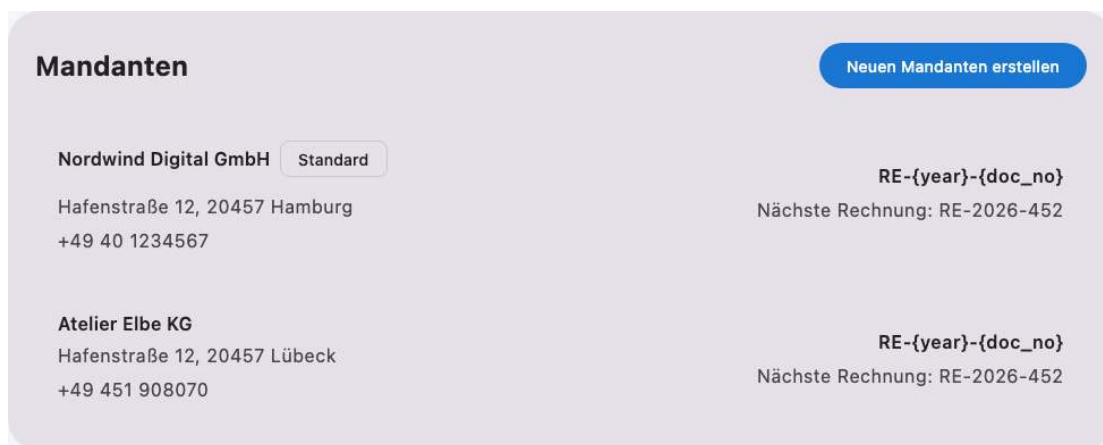


Figure 149: The tenant list shows all your companies

7.1 Tenant Concept

A **tenant** represents a company or business unit. Each tenant:

- Has **own company data**: Name, address, contact details

- Has **own bank details**: IBAN, BIC, bank name
- Has **own numbering schemes**: Separate counters for invoices, quotes, and reminders
- Can have its **own logo** for PDF documents
- Is completely **independent** from other tenants

Why Multiple Tenants?

Scenarios for Multi-Company Management:

1. **Self-employed with multiple companies**: Bill separately for sole proprietorship + GmbH
2. **Tax advisor**: Create invoices for different clients
3. **Agency with brands**: Different brands with their own company data
4. **Freelancer with side project**: Keep main activity + side activity separate



Figure 150: Each tenant has its own data and numbering schemes

[i] Pro Tip: Even if you only have one company, you must create at least one tenant – it will automatically be set as the default tenant.

7.2 Tenant List

The tenant list shows all your companies at a glance.

List Overview

Each entry shows:

- **Company name**: Name of the business
- **Address**: Street, postal code, and city in one line
- **Contact details**: Phone number (if available)
- **Invoice format**: Current numbering pattern and next invoice number
- **Default badge**: Yellow star for default tenant

Nordwind Digital GmbH	Standard	RE- <code>{year}</code> - <code>{doc_no}</code>
Hafenstraße 12, 20457 Hamburg		Nächste Rechnung: RE-2026-452
+49 40 1234567		

Figure 151: Each entry shows company data and invoice format

Default Tenant

The **default tenant** is automatically pre-selected when you:

- Create a new document (invoice, quote)
- Create a new timesheet
- Start the application

The default tenant is marked with a **yellow star** [*].



Standard

Figure 152: The default tenant is marked with a yellow star

[i] **Pro Tip:** Set the company you work with most frequently as the default tenant – this saves time.

7.3 Create Tenant

Create New Tenant

1. Click + **Create new tenant** in the header
2. The creation form opens



Neuen Mandanten erstellen

Figure 153: Button to create a new tenant

The form is divided into several sections:

- Company information
 - Contact information
 - Bank information
 - Invoice settings
 - Quote and reminder settings
 - Logo
-

7.4 Company Information

Company Name (required field)

The name of your company as it should appear on invoices.

Examples:

- Sole proprietorship: "John Doe – IT Consulting"
- GmbH: "TechVision GmbH"
- Freelancer: "Dr. Jane Smith – Legal Consulting"



Firmenname

Firmenname

Nordwind Digital GmbH

Figure 154: Enter the company name

[i] Pro Tip: Use the official company name as registered in the commercial register or on your business license.

Owner (optional)

Name of the owner or managing director (appears on invoices).

Examples:

- "John Doe"
- "Dr. Michael Johnson"
- "Jane Smith, Managing Director"

A screenshot of a form field for the owner's name. The field is titled 'Inhaber' in bold. Below the title is a text input box with a placeholder label 'Inhaber' and the text 'Mara Hoffmann' entered.

Figure 155: Optionally enter the owner

Address (required fields)

Street (required field)

- Street and house number
- Example: "Main Street 123"

A screenshot of a form field for the street name. The field is titled 'Straße' in bold. Below the title is a text input box with a placeholder label 'Straße' and the text 'Hafenstraße 12' entered.

Figure 156: Enter street and house number

Address Supplement (optional)

- Additional address information
- Examples: "4th Floor", "Rear Building", "c/o Schmidt"

A screenshot of a form field for the address supplement. The field is titled 'Adresszusatz' in bold. Below the title is a text input box with a placeholder label 'Adresszusatz' and the text '3. Etage' entered.

Figure 157: Optionally enter an address supplement

Postal Code (required field)

- Postal code
- Example: "10117"

A light purple rounded rectangular form with the label **PLZ** at the top left. Below it is a text input field with a light blue border. The input field contains the text '20457' and has a small 'PLZ' label at its top left corner.

Figure 158: Enter the postal code

City (required field)

- City name
- Example: "Berlin"

A light purple rounded rectangular form with the label **Stadt** at the top left. Below it is a text input field with a light blue border. The input field contains the text 'Hamburg' and has a small 'Stadt' label at its top left corner.

Figure 159: Enter the city

State / Region (optional)

- State or region (especially relevant for USA, Canada)
- Examples: "Berlin", "Bavaria", "California"

A light purple rounded rectangular form with the label **Bundesland / Region** at the top left. Below it is a text input field with a light blue border. The input field contains the text 'Hamburg' and has a small 'Bundesland / Region' label at its top left corner.

Figure 160: Optionally enter the state

Country (required field)

- Country as text
- Examples: "Germany", "Austria", "Switzerland", "United States"

A light purple rounded rectangular form with the label **Land** at the top left. Below it is a text input field with a light blue border. The input field contains the text 'Deutschland' and has a small 'Land' label at its top left corner.

Figure 161: Enter the country

[i] Pro Tip: Use consistent spellings – either always in German ("Deutschland") or always in English ("Germany") – this looks more professional on invoices.

Tax Information

Tax Number (required field)

- Your tax number from the tax office
- Format: Depends on the state (e.g., "27/123/45678" for Berlin)



The image shows a light purple rounded rectangular box. At the top left, the text 'Steuernummer' is displayed in a bold, dark font. Below this, there is a white rectangular input field with a thin grey border. Inside the input field, the text 'Steuernummer' appears in a small, light grey font at the top left, and the value '47/123/45678' is entered in a dark font.

Figure 162: Enter your tax number

VAT ID (required field)

- Value Added Tax Identification Number (for businesses)
- Format: DE + 9 digits (e.g., "DE123456789")



The image shows a light purple rounded rectangular box. At the top left, the text 'USt-IdNr.' is displayed in a bold, dark font. Below this, there is a white rectangular input field with a thin grey border. Inside the input field, the text 'USt-IdNr.' appears in a small, light grey font at the top left, and the value 'DE123456789' is entered in a dark font.

Figure 163: Enter your VAT ID

[!] **Important:** Both fields are required because they are legally mandated on German invoices. If you don't have a VAT ID yet, apply for it at the Federal Central Tax Office.

[i] **Pro Tip:** The VAT ID is mandatory for intra-community business (EU).

Legal Form And Registration Details

Select the tenant's legal form:

- **Sole proprietor / sole business**
- **Company / partnership**
- **Registered association (e.V.)**

For sole proprietors and sole businesses, the additional registration and representation fields remain hidden. For companies and partnerships, you can enter the register court, commercial register number, managing directors or authorized representatives, and an optional supervisory board chairman.

For a registered association, the application instead uses **Register Number, Board / representation**, and the optional **Supervisory board / additional body** field. The two representation fields support multiline text. These details use legal-form-specific labels in document footers and e-invoice information.

7.5 Contact Information

General Email (required field)

Your general business email address (appears on invoices).

Examples:

- "info@techvision-gmbh.com"
- "contact@johndoe.com"
- "jane.smith@legal-consulting.com"



The screenshot shows a light purple rounded rectangular form. At the top, the text "Allgemeine E-Mail" is displayed in a bold, dark font. Below this, there is a text input field with a light gray border. Inside the field, the text "hallo@nordwind-digital.de" is entered in a dark font. Above the input field, the placeholder text "Allgemeine E-Mail" is visible in a smaller, lighter gray font.

Figure 164: Enter your business email address

Billing Email (optional)

Dedicated email address for invoices (recommended if different from the general email).

Examples:

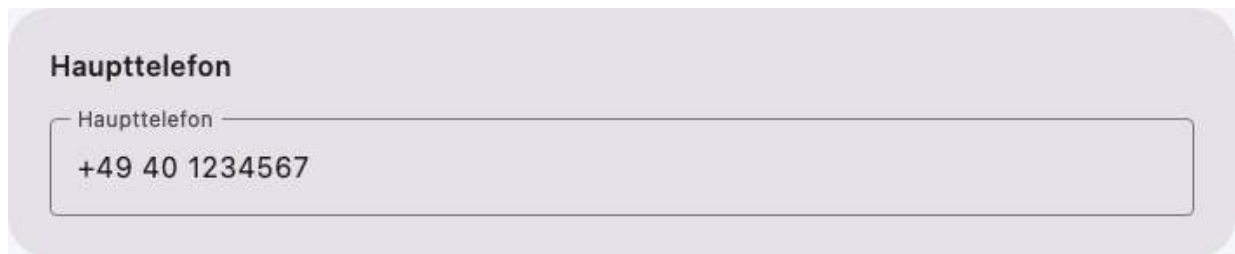
- "invoices@techvision-gmbh.com"
- "accounting@johndoe.com"

Main Phone (required field)

Your business phone number (appears on invoices).

Examples:

- "+49 30 12345678" (with country code)
- "030 / 123 456 78" (without country code)
- "0171 / 123 45 67" (mobile number)



The screenshot shows a light purple rounded rectangular form. At the top, the text "Haupttelefon" is displayed in a bold, dark font. Below this, there is a text input field with a light gray border. Inside the field, the text "+49 40 1234567" is entered in a dark font. Above the input field, the placeholder text "Haupttelefon" is visible in a smaller, lighter gray font.

Figure 165: Enter your phone number

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use a consistent format with country code (e.g., "+49 30 12345678") – this looks professionally international.

Alternate Phone (optional)

Additional phone number (e.g., mobile or back office).

Fax (optional)

Fax number (if relevant for your business).

Website (optional)

Your company website (appears on invoices).

Examples:

- "www.techvision-gmbh.com"
- "https://johndoe.com"
- "legal-consulting-smith.com"



The image shows a light purple rounded rectangular container. At the top left, the text 'Web-Adresse' is displayed in a bold, dark font. Below this, there is a white input field with a thin grey border. Inside the input field, the text 'www.nordwind-digital.de' is entered in a dark font. The input field has a small 'Web-Adresse' label on its top left corner.

Figure 166: Optionally enter your website

[i] **Pro Tip:** Enter the URL without "http://" or "https://" – this looks cleaner (e.g., "www.company.com" instead of "https://www.company.com").

7.6 Bank Information

Bank details appear on your invoices so customers can transfer payment.

Bank Name (required field)

Name of your bank.

Examples:

- "Deutsche Bank AG"
- "Sparkasse Berlin"
- "Bank of America"



The image shows a light purple rounded rectangular container. At the top left, the text 'Bankname' is displayed in a bold, dark font. Below this, there is a white input field with a thin grey border. Inside the input field, the text 'ElbBank Hamburg' is entered in a dark font. The input field has a small 'Bankname' label on its top left corner.

Figure 167: Enter your bank name

Account Holder (optional)

Name of the account holder (if different from company name).

Examples:

- Leave empty if identical to company name
- "John Doe" (for sole proprietorship)
- "TechVision GmbH" (if explicitly desired)

Kontoinhaber

Kontoinhaber

Nordwind Digital GmbH

Figure 168: Optionally enter the account holder

[i] Pro Tip: Leave this field empty if the account holder is identical to the company name – this saves space on the invoice.

IBAN (required field)

Your International Bank Account Number.

Format: DE + 2 check digits + 18 digits (total 22 characters)

Example: DE89370400440532013000

IBAN

IBAN

DE89 3704 0044 0532 0130 00

Leerzeichen werden automatisch entfernt.

Figure 169: Enter your IBAN

Validation:

- The application automatically checks if the IBAN is valid
- Format and checksum validation
- Error message: "Please enter a valid IBAN"

IBAN

IBAN

DE12 0000 0000 0000 0000 00

Bitte gib eine gültige IBAN ein

Figure 170: Error message for invalid IBAN

[i] Pro Tip: You can enter the IBAN with or without spaces – the application automatically removes spaces. Examples: "DE89 3704 0044 0532 0130 00" or "DE89370400440532013000".

[!] Important: Check the IBAN carefully – errors prevent customers from making payments.

BIC/SWIFT (required field)

SEPA Creditor ID (optional)

If you use SEPA direct debits, you can store your SEPA creditor identifier here.

Bank Identifier Code (also called SWIFT code).

Format: 8 or 11 characters (letters and digits)

Example: DEUTDEDB110



Figure 171: Enter your BIC/SWIFT code

Validation:

- The application automatically checks if the BIC is valid
- Format validation according to ISO 9362
- Error message: "Please enter a valid BIC/SWIFT"



Figure 172: Error message for invalid BIC

[i] **Pro Tip:** You can find the BIC on your bank statement, in online banking, or on your bank's website.

7.7 Invoice Settings

Invoice settings determine how your invoice numbers look and which number will be assigned next.

Invoice Number Pattern (required field)

The pattern defines how invoice numbers are generated.

Default: INV-`{doc_no}`

Available Placeholders:

- **`{doc_no}`**: Sequential document number (1, 2, 3, ...)
- **`{year}`**: Current year (e.g., 2025)
- **`{month}`**: Current month (01–12)
- **`{day}`**: Current day (01–31)

Examples:

- INV-`{doc_no}` → Output: INV-1, INV-2, INV-3; Use case: Simple sequential numbering
- RE-`{year}`-`{doc_no}` → Output: RE-2025-1, RE-2025-2; Use case: With year
- `{year}``{month}``{day}`-`{doc_no}` → Output: 20251116-1; Use case: With complete date
- INV-`{year}`-`{month}`-`{doc_no}` → Output: INV-2025-11-1; Use case: With year and month

Rechnungsnummern-Muster

Rechnungsnummern-Muster

RE-{year}-{doc_no}

Figure 173: Enter the invoice number pattern

Tooltip Help:

Click the **info icon (i)** next to the field to see detailed help on placeholders.

Verfügbare Platzhalter

{doc_no}: Fortlaufende
Dokumentnummer

{year}: Aktuelles Jahr

{month}: Aktueller Monat

Beispiel: INV-{doc_no}

Figure 174: Tooltip shows all available placeholders and examples

[i] Pro Tip: Use a pattern with year ({year}) to automatically start from the beginning each year and have clear numbers (e.g., RE-2025-1, RE-2026-1).

[!] Important: Don't change the pattern after the first invoices – this creates gaps in numbering.

Current Invoice Number (required field)

The next invoice number to be assigned.

Default: 1

When to change?

- For new setup: Leave at 1 if you want to start at 1
- When migrating from another system: Enter last invoice number + 1 (e.g., if your last invoice was "RE-2024-450", enter "451")

Aktuelle Rechnungsnummer

Aktuelle Nummer

451

Figure 175: Enter the next invoice number

Note text: "The next invoice will use this number + 1"

Preview:

Below the field you see a **preview** of the next invoice number based on your pattern and current number.

Example:

- Pattern: RE-`{year}`-`{doc_no}`
- Current number: 5
- Preview: "RE-2025-6"

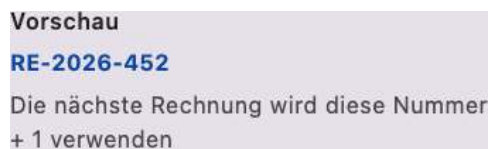


Figure 176: Preview shows the next invoice number

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use the preview to test your pattern before saving.

7.8 Quote and Reminder Settings

Just like invoices, you can define your own patterns and numbering schemes for quotes and reminders.

Quote Number Pattern

Default: Q-`{doc_no}`

Examples:

- ANG-`{doc_no}` → ANG-1, ANG-2, ANG-3
- Q-`{year}`-`{doc_no}` → Q-2025-1, Q-2025-2
- `{year}`-ANG-`{doc_no}` → 2025-ANG-1

Angebotsmuster

Angebotsmuster

ANG-`{year}`-`{doc_no}`

Figure 177: Enter the quote number pattern

Current Quote Number

The next quote number to be assigned.

Default: 1

Aktuelle Angebotsnummer

Aktuelle Nummer

82

Figure 178: Enter the next quote number

Reminder Number Pattern

Default: M-`{doc_no}`

Examples:

- MAH-`{doc_no}` → MAH-1, MAH-2, MAH-3
- M-`{year}`-`{doc_no}` → M-2025-1, M-2025-2

Mahnungsmuster

Mahnungsmuster

MAH-`{year}`-`{doc_no}`

Figure 179: Enter the reminder number pattern

[i] Pro Tip: Reminder numbers automatically have an **escalation level** (e.g., -L1, -L2, -L3) added by the application. Example: MAH-2025-1-L1 (first reminder), MAH-2025-1-L2 (second reminder).

Current Reminder Number

The next reminder number to be assigned.

Default: 0 (because reminders are less common)

Aktuelle Mahnungsnummer

Aktuelle Nummer

14

Figure 180: Enter the next reminder number

7.9 Upload Logo

Upload a company logo that appears in the top left of all PDF documents (invoices, quotes).

Select Logo

1. Click **Select logo**
2. A file selection dialog opens
3. Select an image file (PNG, JPG, GIF, SVG)
4. The logo is loaded into the form

Logo auswählen

Figure 181: Button to upload a logo

Logo Preview

After uploading, you see a **preview** of the logo in the form.



Figure 182: Preview of the uploaded logo

Delete Logo

Click **Delete logo** to remove the logo.

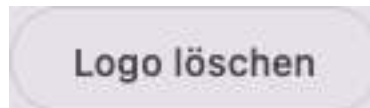


Figure 183: Button to delete the logo

Recommended Logo Formats

Recommendations:

- **Format:** PNG with transparent background (looks most professional)
- **Size:** Maximum 500 × 200 pixels (landscape format)
- **File size:** Under 500 KB
- **Color:** Color or black-and-white (depending on corporate design)

Examples of good logos:

- Company name + icon in one line
- Logo only without background
- Lettering in company colors

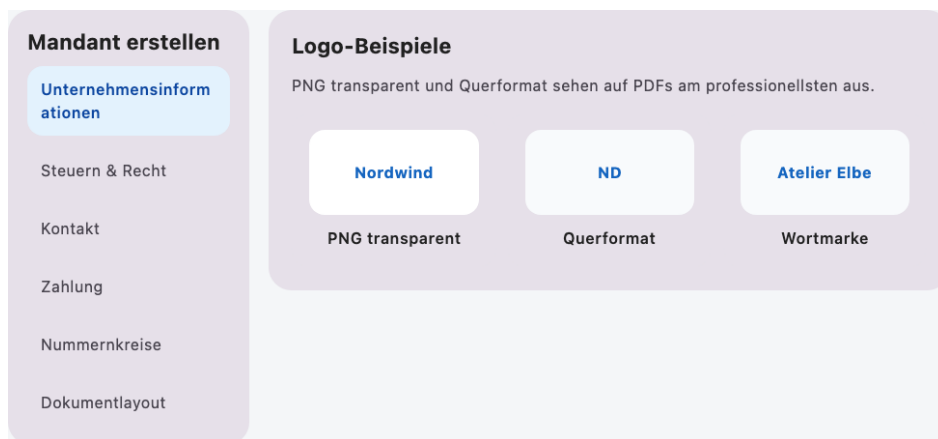


Figure 184: Examples of well-suited logos

[i] Pro Tip: A transparent background (PNG) looks more professional than a white background – especially on colored PDFs.

[!] Important: The logo is stored in the database – very large logos can cause performance issues. Keep file size under 500 KB.

7.10 Set as Default

The **default tenant** is automatically pre-selected when you create new documents or timesheets.

Set Default

Enable the checkbox **Set as default** to make this tenant the default tenant.

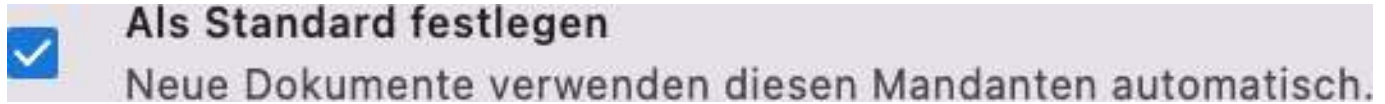


Figure 185: Checkbox to set as default tenant

What happens?

- The previous default tenant loses default status
- This tenant becomes the new default tenant
- This tenant is pre-selected for all new documents

[i] **Pro Tip:** Set the company you work with most frequently as default – this saves time when creating documents.

7.11 Save Tenant

Save

Click **Create tenant** (or **Update tenant** when editing) to save the tenant.



Figure 186: Save the tenant with the create button

Validation:

The application checks before saving:

- [+] Company name filled in
- [+] Street, postal code, city, country filled in
- [+] Tax number and VAT ID filled in
- [+] IBAN valid (format and checksum)
- [+] BIC valid (format according to ISO 9362)
- [+] Invoice pattern valid (at least one placeholder)

Figure 187: Validation errors are marked in red

Go Back Without Saving

Click the **back arrow** in the upper left corner to return to the previous screen. If you have unsaved changes, a dialog appears:

Unsaved Changes

"You have unsaved changes. Do you really want to continue?"

- **Discard:** Changes will not be saved
- **Cancel:** Stay in the form

Figure 188: Warning for unsaved changes

7.12 Edit Tenant

Open Tenant

Click on a tenant in the list to open it. The edit form shows all saved data.

Figure 189: Click on a tenant to edit it

Edit Fields

You can edit all fields, **except**:

- Company name (can be changed, but carefully – appears on all new documents)
- Current invoice number (editable only for a new number pattern that has not been used yet; existing patterns with published documents are locked)

[!] **Important:** Changes only affect **new** documents – already published documents keep their saved data so they remain traceable.

Change Number Pattern

You can change the number pattern, but:

- [!] Already created documents keep their old pattern
- [!] New documents use the new pattern
- [!] This can lead to inconsistent numbers

If you switch to a **completely new** number pattern (no documents created for it yet), you can set the **current number** freely (e.g., back to 0) to define the start value.

Recommendation: Only change the pattern at the beginning of the year or during fundamental restructuring.

[i] **Pro Tip:** If you need to change the pattern, also increase the current number to avoid overlaps.

7.13 Delete Tenant

Prerequisites

You can delete a tenant if:

- [+] No published documents exist (invoices, quotes, reminders)
- [+] It's not the only tenant (at least one tenant must remain)

[!] **Important:** Deletion is **permanent** and cannot be undone.

Perform Deletion

1. Click the **three-dot menu** to the right of the tenant in the list
2. Select **Delete**
3. A confirmation dialog appears:

Delete tenant?

"Do you really want to delete 'TechVision GmbH'? This action cannot be undone."

- **Delete:** Confirm (red button)
- **Cancel:** Abort operation

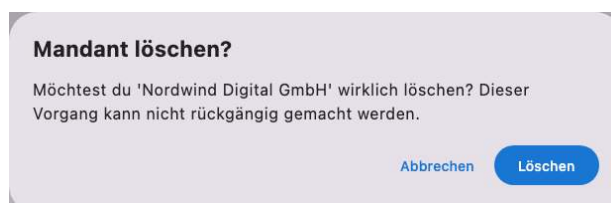


Figure 190: Confirmation dialog when deleting a tenant

4. Confirm with **Delete**

What Gets Deleted?

- All company data
- All bank details
- The logo
- All associated **drafts** (non-published documents)

What Remains?

- Published documents remain for traceability
- Customers remain (not assigned to any tenant)

[i] **Pro Tip:** If you want to "archive" a tenant without deleting it, simply create a new tenant and set it as default. The old tenant remains in the list but is no longer actively used.

7.14 Switch Tenant

Quick Tenant Switch in Menu Bar

In the top menu bar you see the **currently selected tenant** as a dropdown menu.

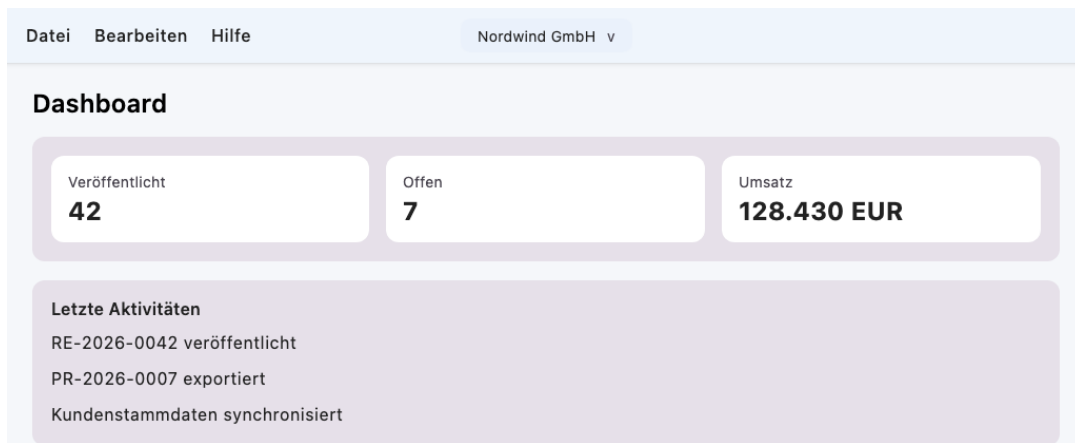


Figure 191: Tenant dropdown in the top menu bar

Switch tenant:

1. Click on the company name in the menu bar
2. A dropdown menu shows all tenants
3. Select another tenant
4. The application loads all data for the new tenant

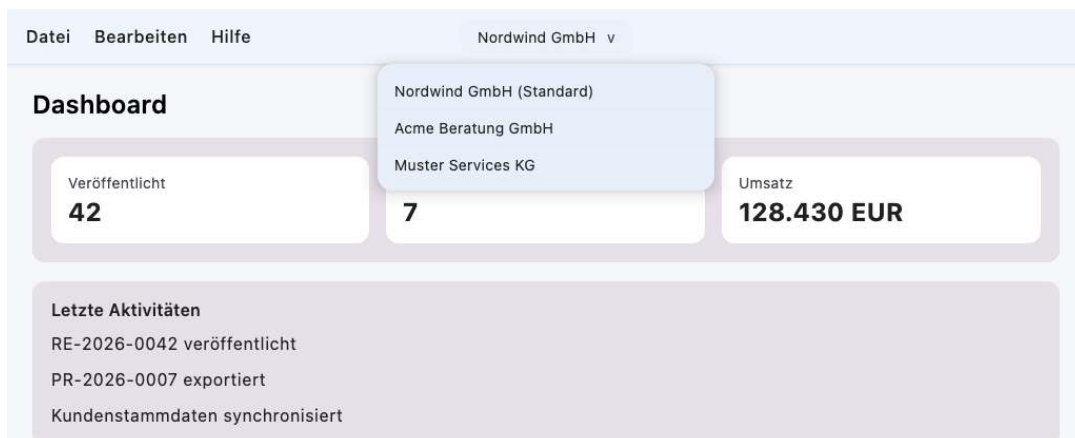


Figure 192: Dropdown menu shows all available tenants

What changes when switching?

- Dashboard shows only documents of the selected tenant
- Document list shows only documents of the selected tenant
- Timesheets show only timesheets of the selected tenant
- New documents are automatically created with the selected tenant

[i] **Pro Tip:** The default tenant is marked with a **yellow star** [*] – so you can find it faster.

Select Tenant When Creating Documents

When creating an invoice or quote, you can change the tenant in the form:

1. Open the creation form for an invoice
2. Select another tenant in the **Tenant** field
3. The invoice will be created for the selected tenant

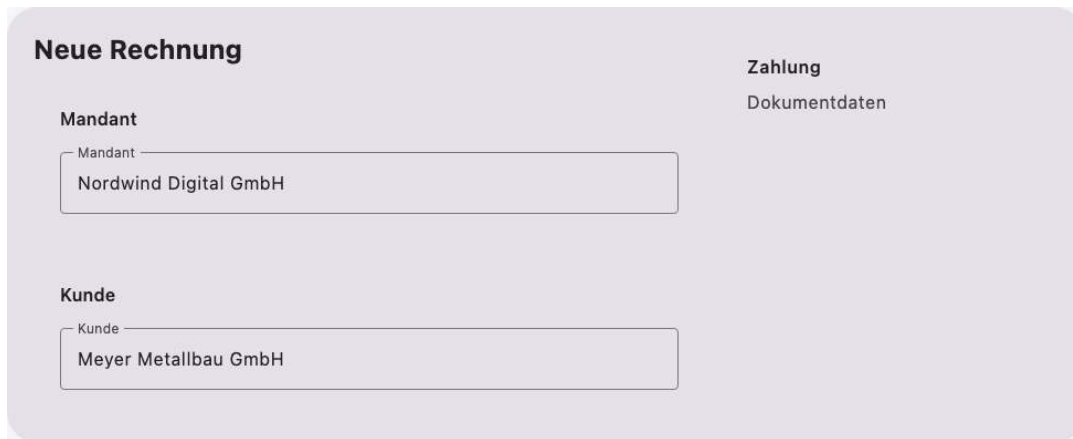


Figure 193: Tenant selection when creating an invoice

[!] **Important:** The tenant cannot be changed after the first save because the document number belongs to the tenant.

7.15 Understanding Numbering Schemes

Each tenant has **own numbering schemes** for:

- Invoices
- Quotes
- Reminders

Why Separate Numbering Schemes?

Reason 1: Legal Separation

- Each company must have gap-free, sequential invoice numbers (GoBD)
- Different companies cannot use the same numbers

Reason 2: Clarity

- Customers immediately see which company the invoice is from
- Example: "RE-2025-1" (TechVision GmbH) vs. "BW-2025-1" (Consulting Works GmbH)

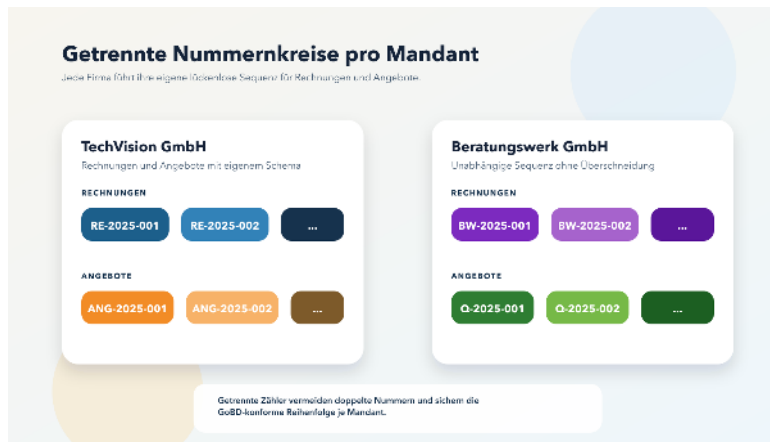


Figure 194: Each tenant has its own numbering schemes

Number Example

Tenant 1: TechVision GmbH

- Invoices: RE-2025-1, RE-2025-2, RE-2025-3, ...
- Quotes: ANG-2025-1, ANG-2025-2, ANG-2025-3, ...

Tenant 2: Consulting Works GmbH

- Invoices: BW-2025-1, BW-2025-2, BW-2025-3, ...
- Quotes: Q-2025-1, Q-2025-2, Q-2025-3, ...

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use different prefixes (e.g., "RE" vs. "BW") to easily distinguish tenants.

7.16 Practical Workflows

Workflow 1: Create First Company (10–15 minutes, one-time)

Goal: Create your first tenant with all necessary data.

Steps:

- 1. Create tenant** (2 minutes)
 - Click + **Create new tenant**
 - Company name: "John Doe – IT Consulting"
 - Owner: "John Doe"
- 2. Enter address** (1 minute)
 - Street: "Sample Street 123"
 - Postal code: "10117"
 - City: "Berlin"
 - Country: "Germany"
- 3. Enter tax information** (1 minute)
 - Tax number: Copy from tax office notice
 - VAT ID: Copy from notice if available (otherwise apply at Federal Central Tax Office)
- 4. Enter contact details** (1 minute)
 - Email: "contact@johndoe.com"
 - Phone: "+49 30 12345678"
 - Website: "www.johndoe.com"

5. **Enter bank details** (3 minutes)

- Bank name: "Sparkasse Berlin"
- IBAN: Copy from bank statement or online banking
- BIC: Copy from bank statement or online banking
- Account holder: Leave empty (identical to company name)

6. **Invoice settings** (2 minutes)

- Invoice pattern: RE-`{year}`-`{doc_no}` (Example: RE-2025-1)
- Current number: 1 (if starting at 1)
- Check preview: "RE-2025-1"

7. **Upload logo** (2 minutes, optional)

- Click **Select logo**
- Select your company logo (PNG with transparent background)
- Check preview

8. **Set as default** (10 seconds)

- Enable **Set as default**

9. **Save** (10 seconds)

- Click **Create tenant**
- Success message appears
- You land in the tenant list

Result: Your first tenant is created and set as default. You can now create invoices and quotes.

[i] **Pro Tip:** Have your tax notice, bank statement, and logo ready before starting – this saves time.

Workflow 2: Add Second Company (5–10 minutes)

Goal: Add a second company (e.g., GmbH alongside sole proprietorship).

Steps:

1. **Create tenant** (2 minutes)

- Click + **Create new tenant**
- Company name: "TechVision GmbH"
- Owner: "Dr. Michael Johnson, Managing Director"

2. **Enter address** (1 minute)

- GmbH address (can be identical to first company)

3. **Enter tax information** (1 minute)

- **Different** tax number (GmbH has its own tax number)
- **Different** VAT ID (GmbH has its own VAT ID)

4. **Enter contact details** (1 minute)

- Can be identical to first company or different email/phone

5. **Enter bank details** (2 minutes)

- **Different** IBAN (GmbH has its own bank account)
- **Different** BIC

6. **Invoice settings** (2 minutes)

- Invoice pattern: TG-`{year}`-`{doc_no}` (Example: TG-2025-1)
- **Important:** Use a **different prefix** than the first company (e.g., "TG" instead of "RE")

- Current number: 1 (new numbering scheme)
7. **Upload logo** (optional)
 - If the GmbH has a different logo, upload it
 8. **Set default** (optional)
 - If you mainly work with the GmbH, enable **Set as default**
 - Otherwise leave disabled
 9. **Save** (10 seconds)
 - Click **Create tenant**

Result: Second company is created with its own numbering schemes. You can now switch between both companies.

[*] **Workflow Tip:** Use unique prefixes in invoice patterns (e.g., "RE" for sole proprietorship, "TG" for GmbH) to easily assign documents.

Workflow 3: Switch Tenant and Create Invoice (1–2 minutes)

Goal: Switch between tenants and create an invoice for a specific company.

Steps:

1. **Switch tenant** (10 seconds)
 - Click on the company name in the top menu bar
 - Select "TechVision GmbH" from the dropdown
2. **Check dashboard** (5 seconds)
 - Dashboard shows only documents from TechVision GmbH
 - Tenant name is visible in the menu bar
3. **Create invoice** (30 seconds)
 - Click + **Create New** → **New Invoice**
 - Tenant is automatically set to "TechVision GmbH"
 - Select customer, add line items
 - Save
4. **Check invoice number** (5 seconds)
 - Invoice number follows TechVision GmbH pattern (e.g., "TG-2025-1")

Result: Invoice was created for the correct tenant with correct company details and numbering scheme.

[i] **Pro Tip:** Always check the tenant in the menu bar before creating a document – this prevents creating invoices for the wrong company.

7.17 Pro Tips for Tenant Management

[>>] **Use default tenant smartly:** Set the company you work with most frequently as default – this saves you a click for every document.

[i] **Use unique prefixes:** Use different prefixes in invoice patterns (e.g., "RE" for Company A, "BW" for Company B) to easily assign documents.

[*] **Number pattern with year:** Use {year} in the pattern (e.g., RE-{year}-{doc_no}) to automatically start from the beginning each year and have clear numbers.

[!] **Check IBAN and BIC carefully:** Check IBAN and BIC multiple times – errors prevent customers from making payments.

[~] **Logo with transparent background:** Use PNG logos with transparent background – this looks more professional on PDFs than white backgrounds.

[i] **Optimize logo size:** Keep logos under 500 KB to avoid overloading the database. Use online tools like TinyPNG for compression.

[*] **Don't delete tenants prematurely:** Only delete tenants if you're sure you'll never need them again – published documents remain, but all drafts are deleted.

[>] **Don't change number pattern:** Only change the number pattern at the beginning of the year or during fundamental restructuring – otherwise inconsistent numbering occurs.

[i] **Omit account holder:** If the account holder is identical to the company name, leave the field empty – this saves space on the invoice.

[*] **Use tenant dropdown in menu bar:** Use the tenant dropdown in the top menu bar for quick switches between companies – faster than via the sidebar.

7.18 Payment Profiles

What Is a Payment Profile?

A **payment profile** contains one set of payment details for a tenant – for example, a bank account (IBAN/BIC) or a PayPal link. Each tenant can have **multiple payment profiles**, making it easy to offer customers a choice of payment methods on the same invoice.

Examples:

- Profile 1: Bank transfer (IBAN/BIC)
- Profile 2: PayPal (payment link)

Create and Manage Payment Profiles

1. Open the tenant you want to add a profile to
2. Scroll to the **Payment Profiles** section
3. Click + **Add payment profile**
4. Fill in the profile details

The screenshot displays the 'Mandant erstellen' (Create Tenant) interface. On the left is a sidebar with navigation links: 'Unternehmensinformationen', 'Steuern & Recht', 'Kontakt', 'Zahlung' (highlighted in blue), 'Nummernkreise', and 'Dokumentlayout'. The main area is titled 'Zahlungsprofile' and features a blue button 'Zahlungsprofil hinzufügen'. Below this, three payment profiles are listed: 'Banküberweisung' with IBAN 'DE89 3704 0044 0532 0130 00' and 'QR-Code aktiv' (status: Standard); 'PayPal' with URL 'https://paypal.me/nordwind' (status: Aktiv); and 'Stripe Link' with URL 'https://pay.nordwind.example/checkout' (status: Aktiv). Each profile has a corresponding status button.

Figure XX: The payment profiles section in the tenant editor

Fields per Payment Profile

- **Name:** Label shown in the profile selector (e.g., "Bank Transfer", "PayPal")
- **Type:** Bank transfer or PayPal
- **IBAN** (bank transfer): International Bank Account Number
- **BIC** (bank transfer): Bank Identifier Code
- **Bank name:** Optional; displayed on invoice
- **Account holder:** Optional; if different from company name
- **PayPal email address** (PayPal): Address of the payment recipient
- **PayPal.me link** (PayPal): Optional link customers open to pay
- **Generate QR code:** Generates a bank-transfer or PayPal QR code, depending on the profile type

Customize Payment Instructions Every bank-transfer and PayPal profile has an independent German and English **payment instruction**. Expand **Payment instructions** in the payment profile to edit them:

- A blank field inherits the displayed standard for that same language.
- **Reset to standard** clears only the selected language field.
- The customer's invoice language determines whether the German or English instruction is used. A blank English instruction therefore inherits the English standard, not custom German text.
- When a document is published, its payment-profile content is stored with the document. Later profile changes do not alter documents that have already been published.

You can enter plain wording or use **Available variables** to insert these placeholders at the current cursor position:

- {ACTION_BY_DATE}: Customer-facing payment due date, formatted in the invoice language
- {DOCUMENT_NUMBER}: Customer-facing document number; previews use the localized draft label
- {AMOUNT}: Payable gross amount before a possible early-payment discount, localized with the document currency

Variables are optional. An instruction such as Payable immediately without deduction. is also valid. Unknown variables prevent saving and are shown next to the affected language field. Payment instructions are plain text; HTML and Markdown formatting are not interpreted.

The effective instruction appears in the PDF payment block. ZUGFeRD and XRechnung output also includes the same text in its structured payment terms.

Select Which Profile Appears on a Document

When creating or editing a document, you can choose which payment profile to use:

1. In the document editor, find the **Payment** section on the right-hand side
2. Select the desired profile from the **Payment profile** dropdown
3. The selected profile (including its QR code if one is configured) will appear on the exported PDF

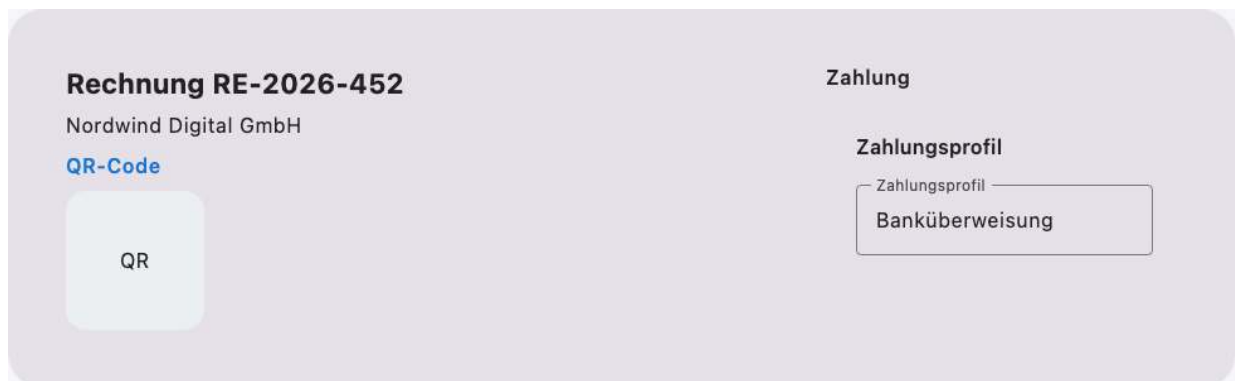


Figure XX: Selecting a payment profile in the document editor

QR Codes on Invoices

For payment profiles with bank transfer details, AGYNAMIX Invoicer can generate a **QR code** using the EPC (European Payments Council) standard. Customers can scan this QR code with their banking app to fill in the payment details automatically.

What the QR code encodes:

- Recipient name (tenant)
- IBAN
- BIC
- Payment amount
- Invoice number as reference

Useful for:

- Customers who use mobile banking apps (common in Germany, Austria, Switzerland)
- Reducing input errors in payment reference fields

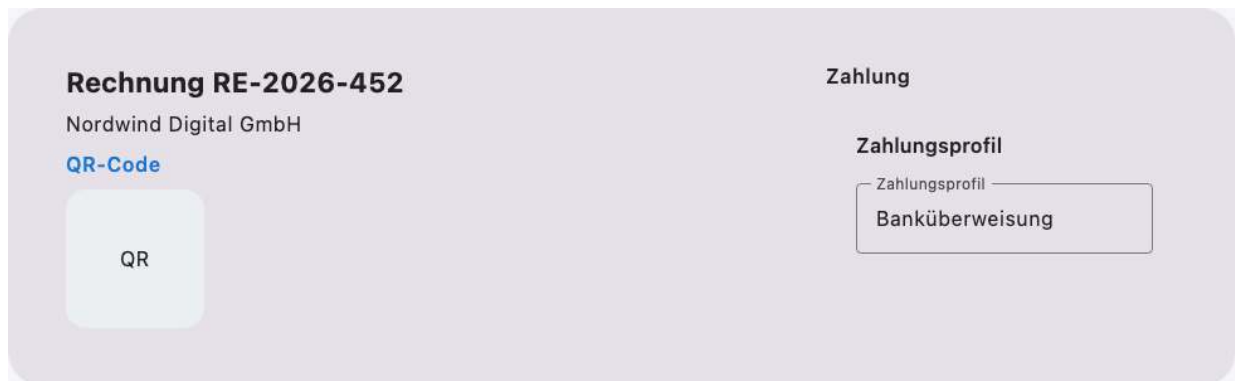


Figure XX: A QR code printed on the invoice for instant mobile payment

[i] **Pro Tip:** If you have clients who frequently miss the payment reference, enable QR codes on your invoices – it virtually eliminates reference errors.

[!] **Note:** Bank-transfer profiles generate an EPC QR code for banking apps. PayPal profiles can instead generate a PayPal QR code from the PayPal.me link or PayPal email address.

7.19 Document Templates

What Is a Document Template?

A **document template** controls the visual appearance of your exported PDF invoices and quotes: where the logo is placed, how the banner looks, which fonts are used, and the overall page layout. AGYNAMIX Invoicer ships with several preset templates and allows you to customize and duplicate them.

Opening the Template Editor

1. Open the tenant you want to customize
2. Scroll to the **Document Layout** section
3. Click **Edit template** (or **Select template** to choose a different preset)



Figure XX: Template selection and editing in the tenant editor

Available Layout Options

- **Banner placement:** Top, side, or no banner
- **Logo size and position:** Scale and placement of your company logo
- **Color scheme:** Primary color used for headings and accents
- **Font:** Select from available font families
- **Paper margins:** Adjust whitespace around the content area
- **Header / Footer content:** What appears in the static top and bottom area

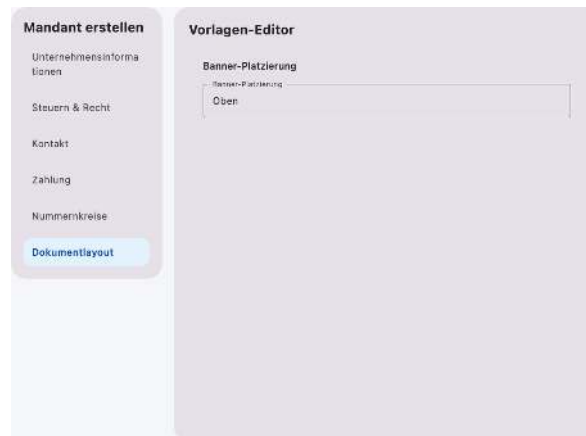


Figure XX: Layout controls in the template editor

Select or Duplicate a Preset Template

1. Click **Select template** to choose from the library of built-in designs
2. A gallery shows available presets with thumbnails
3. Click a preset to apply it
4. To keep the original preset intact and build on it: click **Duplicate** → a copy is created that you can freely modify



Figure XX: Gallery of preset templates

Live Preview

Click **Preview** at any time to see how a sample invoice would look with the current settings. The preview uses the real tenant data and a placeholder document.



Figure XX: Live PDF preview of the current template settings

Customize the PDF Footer

Footer settings belong to the layout template. Document and timesheet templates can therefore use different footer designs.

- Choose inherited or adaptive column layout and a footer font size from 6 to 12 pt. Sizes below 7 pt show a readability warning.
- Configure each available company, contact, legal, tax, and page-counter item independently. An item can inherit its default, be hidden, show only its value, use custom text, use a built-in icon, or combine icon and text.
- Custom text requires a German label. The optional English label is used for English documents; if it is empty, the German custom label is used.
- Set shared colors for labels, values, and headings. Built-in icons use the label color.
- A forced visible item still remains absent when the tenant has no authoritative value for it.

Use the legal-form, tax-status, and long-contact-data preview scenarios before saving. Published sales documents and finalized timesheet periods retain the footer settings stored in their template snapshot; later edits affect new drafts and periods, not those frozen artifacts.

Best Practices

- **Optimal logo dimensions:** Use a horizontal logo at roughly 400–600 px wide and 100–150 px tall with a transparent background (PNG)
- **Keep colors accessible:** Ensure there is good contrast between your chosen accent color and black text
- **Test on paper:** Print or save a test PDF to check how colors and fonts look when printed, not just on screen
- **Keep labels explicit:** Prefer text or icon-plus-text when an icon alone could be ambiguous

Continue with **Chapter 8: Customer Management**

8. Customer Management

Customer Management is the heart of your invoicing. Here you maintain all information about your business partners – from company data to contact details, tax rates, and e-invoice preferences. Well-maintained customer data speeds up invoice creation and ensures professional, error-free documents.

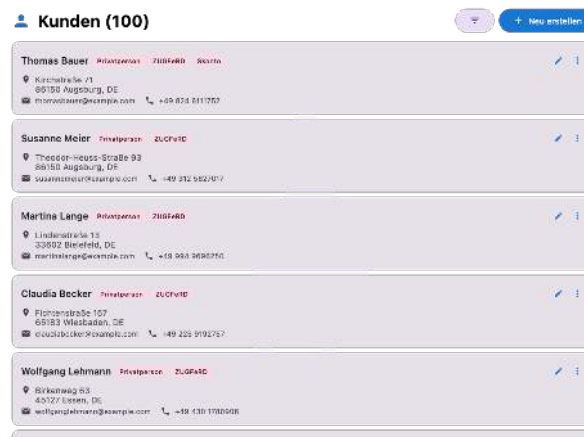


Figure 197: The customer list shows all your business partners

8.1 Customer Concept

A **customer** represents a company or individual for whom you create invoices. Each customer has:

- **Company data:** Name, owner, complete address
- **Contact details:** Billing email, general email, phone numbers, fax
- **Tax data:** VAT ID (optional), standard VAT rate
- **Currency, language, and rebate:** Which currency, language, and default customer rebate for invoices
- **E-invoice preference:** ZUGFeRD, XRechnung, or no electronic invoice

Why Customer Master Data Is Important

Benefits of well-maintained customer data:

1. **Faster invoice creation:** All data available with one click
2. **Error-free documents:** No typos in addresses or tax numbers
3. **Automatic pre-filling:** VAT rate, currency, language, and default customer rebate are automatically filled
4. **E-invoice compliance:** Correct XML formats for authorities and large companies
5. **Professional impression:** Consistent, correct customer data on all documents

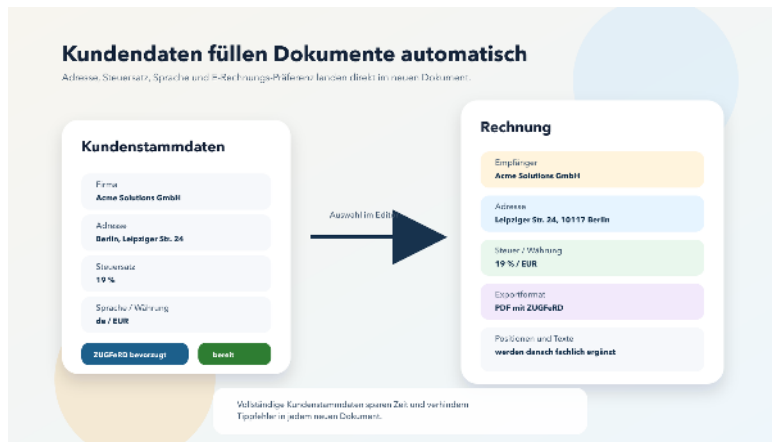


Figure 198: Customer data is automatically transferred to documents

[i] **Pro Tip:** Invest time in complete customer data when first creating them – it pays off with every invoice.

8.2 Customer List

The customer list shows all your business partners at a glance.

List Overview

Each entry shows:

- **Company name:** Name of the company or person
- **Address:** Street, postal code, and city in one line
- **Contact details:** Billing email and phone (if available)
- **VAT ID:** Value Added Tax Identification Number (if available)

Thomas Bauer
Privatperson
ZUGFeRD
Skonto

Kirchstraße 71
86150 Augsburg, DE
thomasbauer@example.com +49 824 6111752

Figure 199: Each entry shows the most important customer data

Search Customers

Use the **search bar** at the top to quickly find customers.

Search by:

- Company name (e.g., "Acme Corporation")
- Owner (e.g., "John Doe")

Figure 200: Search by company name or owner

[i] **Pro Tip:** The search works in real-time – just start typing without pressing Enter.

Filter Customers

Click the **filter icon** (funnel) to apply special filters.

Available filters:

- **Due payments:** Shows only customers with overdue invoices
- **Has open credit:** Shows only customers with remaining credit from published invoice corrections

Figure 201: Filter customers with due payments

Reset filters: Click **Clear filters** to remove all filters.



Figure 202: Reset filters

[*] **Workflow Tip:** Use the "Due payments" filter for weekly payment reminders – you'll immediately see who needs follow-up.

Open Credit Badges

If a customer has remaining credit from a published invoice correction, the customer list shows an **Open credit** badge. The badge is based only on open correction credit, not on the customer's net balance.

Use the **Has open credit** filter when you want to find customers whose credit can be refunded or applied to another published invoice.

Financial Profile

Open a customer to see the **Financial Profile** section. It summarizes open credit, open receivables, overdue receivables, net open position, lifetime billed totals, cash received, refunds, credit offsets, Skonto, and payment behavior.

The **Open credits** rows link to the correction document that created the credit. If the original invoice is known, the original invoice is shown as a separate link. Use the back button from the document view to return to the customer view.

Default Customer Rebate

In the customer form, you can optionally maintain a **default customer rebate (%)**. New quotes and invoices inherit this value as the customer default. In the document, you can use the default, choose **No rebate**, or set a custom rebate.

The customer view shows the stored customer rebate. Already published documents keep their rebate snapshot even if you later change the default customer rebate.

Empty Customer List

If you haven't created any customers yet, you'll see a message:

No customers found

"Create your first customer to get started"

 **Kunden (0)**

 **+ Neu erstellen**



Keine Kunden gefunden

Erstelle deinen ersten Kunden, um zu beginnen

Figure 203: Message when customer list is empty

8.3 Create Customer

Create New Customer

1. Click + **Create new customer** in the header
2. The creation form opens

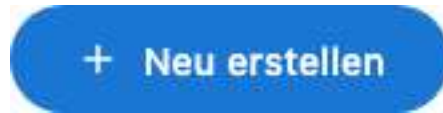


Figure 204: Button to create a new customer

The form is divided into five sections:

- Customer information
- Address
- Contact information
- Tax information
- Invoice settings

8.4 Customer Information

Company Name (required field)

The name of the company or person you're billing.

Examples:

- Company: "Acme Corporation GmbH"
- Individual: "Dr. Jane Smith"
- Authority: "City of Berlin – Department of Digitalization"

Figure 205: Enter the company name

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use the official company name as it appears in the commercial register or on the customer's website.

Owner (optional)

Name of the owner, managing director, or contact person.

Examples:

- "John Doe"
- "Dr. Jane Smith"
- "Managing Director: Michael Johnson"

Figure 206: Optionally enter the owner

[i] **Pro Tip:** The owner field appears on the invoice below the company name – use it for personal contact.

Salutation (optional)

Salutation of the contact person (useful for email communication).

Examples:

- "Mr"
- "Ms"

Title (optional)

Optional title for the contact person.

Examples:

- "Dr."
- "Prof."

Internal Notes (optional)

Internal notes are for your internal organization and are not printed on invoices.

Customer Number (required, unique)

The **Customer Number** is an internal, unique identifier for the customer. You can use it to reference customers consistently (e.g., in conversations or exports).

[!] **Important:** Each customer number must be unique.

Customer Reference / Leitweg-ID (optional)

An optional external reference for the customer, e.g. a **Leitweg-ID** (used by public-sector customers in Germany) or another internal identifier from your customer's systems.

8.5 Address

The customer's address appears on all invoices and must be complete.

Street (required field)

Street and house number.

Examples:

- "Main Street 123"
- "Friedrich Street 45b"
- "Market Square 7"

The screenshot shows a web form titled "Neuen Kunden erstellen". It has tabs for "Firma", "Öffentlicher Dienst", and "Privatperson". The "Firma" tab is selected. The form has sections for "Kundeninformationen", "Personendaten", "Adresse", and "Kontaktinformationen". In the "Adresse" section, the "Straße" field is filled with "Hauptstraße 123". The "Wohnung, Suite, Gebäude (optional)" field is empty. The "PLZ" and "Stadt" fields are also empty. The "Land" dropdown is set to "Deutschland".

Figure 207: Enter street and house number

Address Supplement (optional)

Additional address information such as floor, building, or c/o details.

Examples:

- "4th Floor"
- "Rear Building"
- "c/o Schmidt Administration GmbH"
- "Building A, Room 301"

The screenshot shows the same web form as Figure 207. In the "Adresse" section, the "Wohnung, Suite, Gebäude (optional)" field is now filled with "4. Etage". The "Straße" field remains "Hauptstraße 123". The "PLZ" and "Stadt" fields are still empty. The "Land" dropdown is still set to "Deutschland".

Figure 208: Optionally enter an address supplement

Postal Code (required field)

Postal code.

Examples:

- Germany: "10117", "80331"
- Austria: "1010", "5020"
- Switzerland: "8001", "3011"

The screenshot shows a web form titled "Neuen Kunden erstellen" (Create new customer). It has a back arrow and a status "Nicht gespeicherte Änderungen" (Changes not saved). The form is divided into sections: "Kundeninformationen" (Customer information) with tabs for "Firma" (Company), "Öffentlicher Dienst" (Public service), and "Privatperson" (Private person); "Personendaten" (Personal data) with fields for "Firmenname" (Company name), "Anrede" (Salutation), "Titel" (Title), "Inhaber" (Owner), "Kundennummer" (Customer number), and "Käuferreferenz" (Buyer reference); "Adresse" (Address) with fields for "Straße" (Street), "Wohnung, Suite, Gebäude" (Apartment, Suite, Building), "PLZ" (Postal code), "Stadt" (City), "Bundesland" (Federal state), and "Land" (Country); and "Kontaktinformationen" (Contact information). The "PLZ" field is highlighted with a blue border and contains the value "10115". The "Stadt" field is empty. The "Land" field is set to "Deutschland" (Germany). At the bottom, there are buttons for "Abbrechen" (Cancel) and "Kunde erstellen" (Create customer).

Figure 209: Enter the postal code

City (required field)

City name.

Examples:

- "Berlin"
- "Munich"
- "Vienna"
- "Zurich"

The screenshot shows the same "Neuen Kunden erstellen" form. In this view, the "Stadt" (City) field is highlighted with a blue border and contains the value "Berlin". The "PLZ" field is empty. The "Land" field is still set to "Deutschland". The other fields and the overall layout remain the same as in Figure 209.

Figure 210: Enter the city

State (optional)

State, region, or canton.

Examples:

- Germany: "Bavaria", "Berlin", "North Rhine-Westphalia"

- Austria: "Vienna", "Tyrol"
- Switzerland: "Zurich", "Bern"
- USA: "California", "New York"

Figure 211: Optionally enter the state

[i] Pro Tip: In Germany, the state is usually not necessary – but for international customers (especially USA, Canada) it's important.

Country (required field)

Country as text.

Default value: "Germany"

Examples:

- "Germany"
- "Austria"
- "Switzerland"
- "USA" or "United States"

Adresse

Das Land wird für internationale Rechnungsadressen als Freitext gepflegt.

Figure 212: Enter the country

[i] Pro Tip: Use consistent spellings – either always in German ("Deutschland", "Österreich") or always in English ("Germany", "Austria") – depending on whether your invoices are primarily in German or English.

[!] Important: The field is pre-filled with "Germany" – only change it for international customers.

8.6 Contact Information

Contact details are **not** printed on invoices but support your internal workflows (e.g., sending invoices and payment reminders via email).

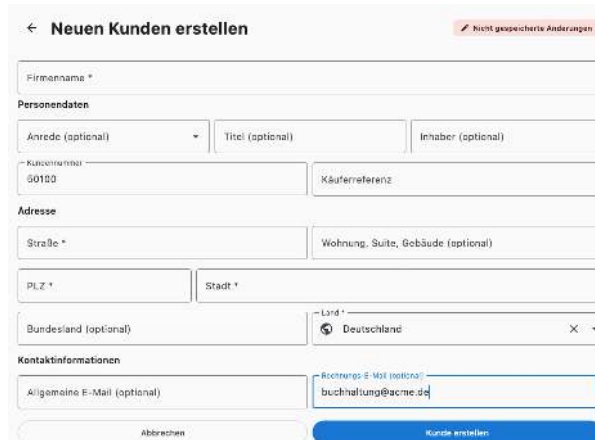
[i] Pro Tip: Use the **billing email** for invoices and the **general email** for general communication.

Billing Email

Email address for invoices/payment reminders (typically accounting).

Examples:

- "accounting@acme.com"
- "john.doe@company.com"
- "invoice@company.com"



The screenshot shows a web form titled "Neuen Kunden erstellen" (Create new customer). The form is divided into several sections: "Firmenname" (Company name), "Personendaten" (Person data), "Adresse" (Address), and "Kontaktinformationen" (Contact information). In the "Kontaktinformationen" section, the "Rechnungs-E-Mail (optional)" field is highlighted with a blue border and contains the text "buchhaltung@acme.de". Other fields include "Allgemeine E-Mail (optional)", "Anrede (optional)", "Titel (optional)", "Inhaber (optional)", "Kundennummer", "Kaufreferenz", "Straße", "Wohnung, Suite, Gebäude (optional)", "PLZ", "Stadt", "Bundesland", and "Land". At the bottom, there are two buttons: "Abbrechen" (Cancel) and "Kunde erstellen" (Create customer).

Figure 213: Enter the email address

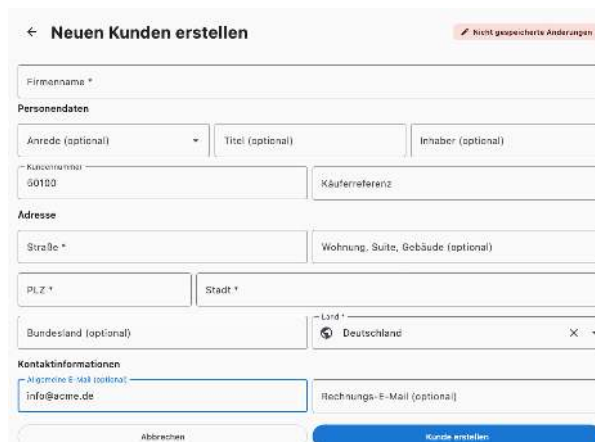
[i] **Pro Tip:** If the customer has a separate accounting email (e.g., accounting@...), use it – this way you reach the right department directly.

General Email (optional)

General email address for non-billing communication.

Examples:

- "info@acme.com"
- "office@company.com"



This screenshot shows the same "Neuen Kunden erstellen" form as Figure 213, but with the "Allgemeine E-Mail (optional)" field highlighted with a blue border and containing the text "info@acme.de". The "Rechnungs-E-Mail (optional)" field is now empty. All other fields and the bottom buttons remain the same.

Figure 213b: Enter the general email address

Main Phone

Phone number of the contact person.

Examples:

- "+49 30 12345678" (with country code)
- "030 / 123 456 78" (without country code)
- "0171 / 123 45 67" (mobile number)

Figure 214: Enter the phone number

[i] Pro Tip: Always save the **direct line** to accounting if available – this saves time for payment inquiries.

Alternate Phone (optional)

Additional phone number (e.g., mobile or back office).

Fax (optional)

Fax number (if the customer still uses fax for official communication).

8.7 Tax Information

Tax data determines how invoices are calculated for this customer.

VAT ID (optional)

Value Added Tax Identification Number of the customer (if available).

Format:

- Germany: DE + 9 digits (e.g., "DE123456789")
- Austria: ATU + 8 digits (e.g., "ATU12345678")
- Switzerland: CHE + 9 digits + MWST (e.g., "CHE123456789MWST")

Examples:

- "DE123456789"
- "ATU87654321"
- "FR12345678901"

Figure 215: Enter the customer's VAT ID

When do you need the VAT ID?

- For **intra-community supplies** (EU), the VAT ID is mandatory
- For **reverse charge procedure** (reversal of tax liability)
- For **public clients** with e-invoice obligation

[i] **Pro Tip:** You can find the VAT ID at the Federal Central Tax Office or on the customer's website (usually in the imprint).

[!] **Important:** If the customer doesn't have or provide a VAT ID, leave the field empty – not all businesses are subject to VAT (e.g., small business owners).

Tax ID / Tax Number (optional)

Optional tax identifier of the customer (if you need it for internal processes).

VAT Rate (%) (required field)

The standard VAT rate used for invoices to this customer.

Default value: 19 (for Germany)

Common rates:

- **19%:** German standard rate
- **7%:** Reduced rate (books, food, etc.)
- **0%:** Reverse charge, export delivery, small business regulation
- **20%:** Austria standard rate
- **8.1%:** Switzerland standard rate

Steuerinformationen

Standard-Umsatzsteuersatz für neue Rechnungen an diesen Kunden.

Figure 216: Enter the standard VAT rate

Input format:

- Enter the rate as a **decimal number**: "19" or "19.0" for 19%
- Use period or comma as decimal separator: "7.0" or "7,0"

Note text: "Enter VAT percentage (e.g., 19.0 for 19%)"

[i] **Pro Tip:** The rate entered here is used as the **default pre-fill** for all line items in invoices to this customer – but you can override it for each line item individually.

[*] **Workflow Tip:** For customers you frequently bill with a reduced rate (e.g., publishers, food retailers), set the default rate to 7% – this saves time when creating invoices.

Currency (required field)

The currency in which invoices to this customer are issued.

Default value: EUR

Common currencies:

- **EUR:** Euro (Germany, Austria, etc.)
- **USD:** US Dollar
- **GBP:** British Pound
- **CHF:** Swiss Franc

Input format:

- Enter the **ISO 4217 currency code** (3 letters)
- Examples: "EUR", "USD", "GBP", "CHF", "JPY"

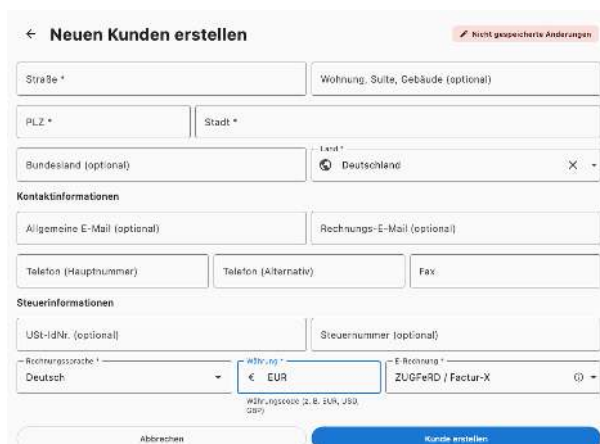
The screenshot shows the 'Neuen Kunden erstellen' (Create new customer) form. The 'Land' (Country) field is set to 'Deutschland'. The 'Währung' (Currency) field is set to '€ EUR'. The 'E-Rechnung' (E-Invoice) field is set to 'ZUGFeRD / Factur-X'. The 'Rechnungssprache' (Invoice language) field is set to 'Deutsch'. The 'Steuernummer' (Tax number) field is empty. The 'USt-IdNr.' (VAT ID number) field is empty. The 'Abbrechen' (Cancel) and 'Kunde erstellen' (Create customer) buttons are at the bottom.

Figure 217: Enter the currency

Note text: "Currency code (e.g., EUR, USD, GBP)"

Warning for unknown currency: If you enter an unknown code, a warning appears:

"Unknown currency code. The code will be displayed unchanged."

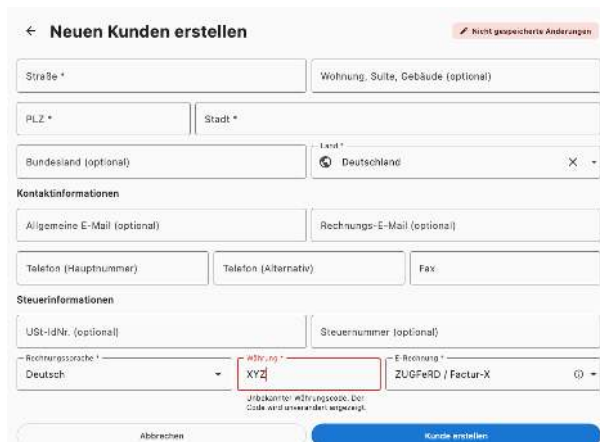
The screenshot shows the 'Neuen Kunden erstellen' form with the 'Währung' field set to 'XYZ'. A red box highlights the 'XYZ' code, and a warning message appears below it: 'Unbekannter Währungscode, der Code wird unverändert angezeigt.' (Unknown currency code, the code will be displayed unchanged). The 'Abbrechen' and 'Kunde erstellen' buttons are at the bottom.

Figure 218: Warning for unknown currency

[i] **Pro Tip:** The currency determines which symbol appears on the invoice (€, \$, £, etc.) – only change it for international customers.

[!] **Important:** The currency **cannot be changed** after the first save if invoices already exist – create a new customer if needed.

8.8 Invoice Settings

Invoice settings determine how invoices are generated for this customer.

Default Customer Rebate (optional)

The default customer rebate is a percentage that Invoicer pre-fills on new quotes and invoices for this customer. Leave it empty if the customer does not have a fixed rebate.

Examples:

- 5 for a 5% standing rebate
- 10 for a 10% partner or framework-contract rebate

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use the customer default for recurring rebates. One-off rebates are usually better set directly in the individual document.

Invoice Language (required field)

The language in which invoices to this customer are issued.

Options:

- **German:** All texts on the invoice (headings, footers) are in German
- **English:** All texts on the invoice are in English

Rechnungseinstellungen

Die Sprache bestimmt die Überschriften und Standardtexte auf der Rechnung.

The screenshot shows a web form titled 'Rechnungseinstellungen'. Below the title is a descriptive sentence: 'Die Sprache bestimmt die Überschriften und Standardtexte auf der Rechnung.' There is a dropdown menu labeled 'Rechnungssprache' with 'Deutsch' selected. Below the dropdown is a light purple button with the text 'Deutsch' and 'Englisch' listed vertically.

Figure 219: Select the invoice language

Default value: German

What changes?

- **Document type:** German "Rechnung"; English "Invoice"
- **Line item table:** German "Pos.", "Beschreibung", "Menge"; English "Pos.", "Description", "Quantity"
- **Totals:** German "Nettobetrag", "MwSt.", "Gesamtbetrag"; English "Subtotal", "VAT", "Total"
- **Payment terms:** German "Zahlbar bis"; English "Due date"
- **Footer:** German "Vielen Dank für Ihr Vertrauen"; English "Thank you for your business"

Rechnung Deutsch vs. Englisch

Deutsch	Englisch
Rechnung	Invoice
Beschreibung	Description
Gesamtbetrag	Total
Zahlbar bis	Due date

Figure 220: Comparison of invoice in German and English

[i] **Pro Tip:** For international customers, English is recommended – even if the billing address is in Germany.

E-Invoice (required field)

Determines whether and which electronic invoice format is used for this customer.

Options:

- **None:** PDF invoice only (classic paper invoice as PDF)
- **ZUGFeRD / Factur-X:** PDF with embedded XML metadata (hybrid format)
- **XRechnung / CII:** Separate XML file (pure XML format)

Rechnungseinstellungen

Wähle das bevorzugte E-Rechnungs-Format für diesen Kunden.

E-Rechnung

ZUGFeRD / Factur-X

Optionen

Keine
ZUGFeRD / Factur-X
XRechnung / CII

Figure 221: Select the e-invoice format

Default value: None

Option 1: No E-Invoice You receive a classic **PDF document** without electronic metadata.

Advantages:

- [+] Simple and universally readable
- [+] No technical requirements
- [+] Ideal for private customers and small companies

Disadvantages:

- × No automatic invoice processing at recipient
- × Not suitable for public clients

PDF ohne E-Rechnung

Klassisches PDF ohne elektronische Metadaten.

rechnung-2025-0007.pdf

Klassisches PDF
Keine XML-Metadaten
Viewer: Browser-Vorschau

Figure 222: Classic PDF without electronic metadata

Option 2: ZUGFeRD / Factur-X You receive a **hybrid PDF** with embedded XML metadata.

What is ZUGFeRD?

- ZUGFeRD = Central User Guide of the Forum for Electronic Invoicing Germany
- A PDF document with invisible XML data embedded in the PDF
- Can be both read by humans and processed by machines

Advantages:

- [+] Universally readable (any PDF viewer displays it)
- [+] Automatic processing possible (accounting software can read XML)
- [+] Only **one file** (no separate XML files needed)
- [+] Recognized throughout the EU (also known as Factur-X)

Disadvantages:

- X Not all public clients accept ZUGFeRD (some require XRechnung)

ZUGFeRD PDF

PDF mit eingebetteten XML-Metadaten für strukturierte Verarbeitung.

```
rechnung-2025-0007-zugferd.pdf
ZUGFeRD-PDF
factur-x.xml eingebettet
Profil: EN16931
```

Figure 223: ZUGFeRD PDF with embedded XML metadata

[i] **Pro Tip:** ZUGFeRD is the best choice for **business customers** who use modern accounting software – they can both read and automatically import the invoice.

Option 3: XRechnung / CII You receive a **separate XML file** in addition to the PDF.

What is XRechnung?

- XRechnung is the **standard for public clients** in Germany
- A pure XML file (CII = Cross Industry Invoice) without PDF
- Must be submitted via special portals (e.g., OZG-RE, XRechnung portal)

Advantages:

- [+] Mandatory for public clients (authorities, municipalities, state-owned companies)
- [+] Fully machine-readable
- [+] Automatic processing in administrative software

Disadvantages:

- X Not human-readable (XML file is pure source code)
- X You must **additionally create a PDF** for your records
- X Requires upload via special portals (cannot be sent via email)

XRechnung XML-Datei

Separate XML-Ausgabe für öffentliche Auftraggeber.

```
rechnung-2025-0007.xml
<rsm:CrossIndustryInvoice>
  <ram:BuyerReference>Leitweg-ID 991-01484-64</ram:BuyerReference>
  <ram:GrandTotalAmount currencyID="EUR">1190.00</ram:GrandTotalAmount>
</rsm:CrossIndustryInvoice>
```

Figure 224: XRechnung as separate XML file

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use XRechnung **only for public clients** who explicitly require it – for all other customers, ZUGFeRD is the better choice.

[!] **Important:** Since November 2020, all public clients in Germany are required to accept electronic invoices (XRechnung or ZUGFeRD). Check in advance which format your customer prefers.

When Which Format?

Decision guide:

- **Private customer:** Recommended format **None**; Reason: Classic PDF is sufficient
- **Small company (< 10 employees):** Recommended format **None** or **ZUGFeRD**; Reason: Depends on whether they use modern accounting software
- **Medium/Large company:** Recommended format **ZUGFeRD**; Reason: Automatic invoice processing saves time
- **Authority, public client:** Recommended format **XRechnung**; Reason: Legally required since Nov. 2020
- **International company (EU):** Recommended format **ZUGFeRD**; Reason: EU-wide standard (Factur-X)

Welches E-Rechnungs-Format für welchen Kunden?

Entscheidungshilfe
Privatkunde -> Keine
Kleine Firma -> Keine oder ZUGFeRD
Mittlere/Große Firma -> ZUGFeRD
Behörde -> XRechnung

Figure 225: Which e-invoice format for which customer?

[*] **Workflow Tip:** Ask new customers on first contact if they prefer e-invoices – this saves later inquiries.

8.9 Save Customer

Save

Click **Create customer** (or **Update customer** when editing) to save the customer.

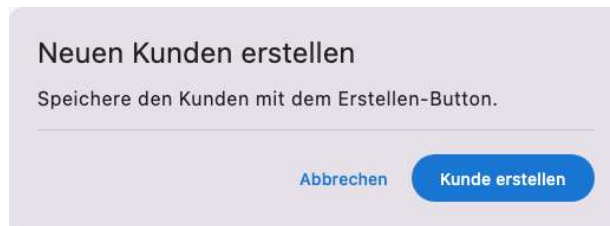


Figure 226: Save the customer with the create button

Validation:

The application checks before saving:

- [+] Company name filled in
- [+] Street filled in
- [+] Postal code filled in
- [+] City filled in
- [+] Country filled in

Validierungsfehler

Pflichtfelder werden vor dem Speichern rot markiert.

The image shows three input fields stacked vertically. Each field has a red border and the label 'Pflichtfeld' below it. The labels 'Firmenname', 'Straße', and 'PLZ' are inside the fields in red text.

Figure 227: Validation errors are marked in red

[i] **Pro Tip:** The email and phone fields are **not** mandatory, but highly recommended – without email you can't send payment reminders later.

Go Back Without Saving

Click the **back arrow** in the upper left corner to return to the previous screen. If you have unsaved changes, a dialog appears:

Unsaved Changes

"You have unsaved changes. Do you really want to continue?"

- **Discard:** Changes will not be saved
- **Cancel:** Stay in the form

The dialog box has a light gray background. The title 'Nicht gespeicherte Änderungen' is in bold. Below it, the text 'Du hast ungespeicherte Änderungen. Möchtest du wirklich fortfahren?' is displayed. At the bottom, there are two buttons: 'Abbrechen' (light blue) and 'Verwerfen' (dark blue).

Figure 228: Warning for unsaved changes

8.10 Edit Customer

Open Customer

Click on a customer in the list to open them. The edit form shows all saved data.

Bestehenden Kunden bearbeiten

Das Bearbeitungsformular zeigt alle gespeicherten Daten des Kunden an.

Firmenname	Thomas Bauer
Rechnungs-E-Mail	buchhaltung@acme.de

Kunde aktualisieren

Figure 229: Click on a customer to edit them

Edit Fields

You can edit all fields, **except**:

- Currency (cannot be changed after first save if documents already exist)

[!] **Important:** Changes to customer data **only affect new documents** – already published documents keep their saved data so they remain unchanged and traceable.

Correct Address

If a customer has moved or you discover an error:

1. Open the customer
2. Change the address fields (street, postal code, city)
3. Click **Update customer**

Effect:

- All **new** invoices show the new address
- **Old** invoices keep the old address (historical accuracy)

Adresse korrigieren

Geänderte Adressdaten werden erst nach dem Speichern für neue Dokumente verwendet.

Straße	Neue Anschrift 77
PLZ	10115
Stadt	Berlin

Kunde aktualisieren

Figure 230: Change the address and save

[i] **Pro Tip:** If you want to send an old invoice with the new address, use the **duplicate function** (duplicate invoice → new address is transferred).

8.11 Delete Customer

Prerequisites

You can delete a customer if:

- [+] No published documents exist (invoices, quotes)
- [+] No timesheets exist

[!] **Important:** Deletion is a **soft delete** (the customer is marked as deleted but not permanently removed from the database) – this preserves historical references.

Perform Deletion

1. Click the **three-dot menu** to the right of the customer in the list
2. Select **Delete**
3. A confirmation dialog appears:

Delete customer?

”Do you really want to delete 'Acme Corporation'? This action cannot be undone.”

- **Delete:** Confirm (red button)
- **Cancel:** Abort operation

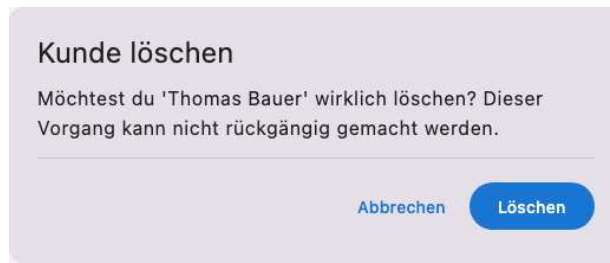


Figure 231: Confirmation dialog when deleting a customer

4. Confirm with **Delete**

What Happens When Deleting?

- The customer no longer appears **in the list**
- All associated **drafts** (non-published documents) remain but are no longer assigned to a customer
- **Published documents** remain fully intact with all customer data

[i] **Pro Tip:** If you want to "pause" a customer (e.g., because you're not currently working with them), you don't need to delete them – deleted customers are only invisible but not really gone.

8.12 Customer Count

In the footer of the list you see the **number of displayed customers** in relation to the total.

Example: "25 of 100"

- 25 customers are currently displayed (after search/filter)
- 100 customers exist in total

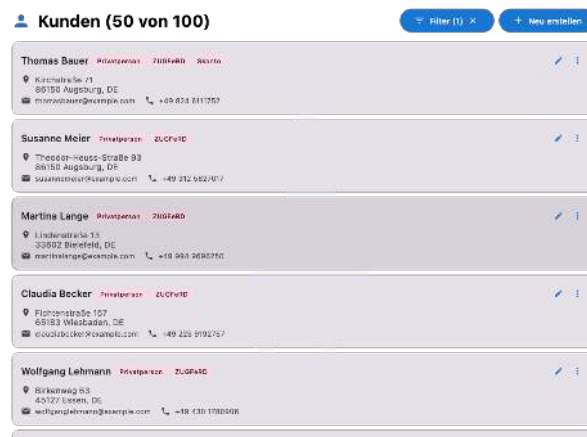


Figure 232: Number of displayed customers

[i] **Pro Tip:** If the display shows "0 of 100", your search term or filter is too restrictive – reset filters or change the search term.

8.13 Practical Workflows

Workflow 1: Create First Customer (5 minutes)

Goal: Create your first customer with all important data.

Steps:

1. **Create customer** (30 seconds)
 - Click **+ Create new customer**
 - Company name: "Acme Corporation GmbH"
 - Owner: "John Doe, Managing Director"
2. **Enter address** (1 minute)
 - Street: "Main Street 456"
 - Address supplement: Leave empty (if not needed)
 - Postal code: "20095"
 - City: "Hamburg"
 - State: Leave empty
 - Country: "Germany" (pre-filled)
3. **Enter contact details** (1 minute)
 - Email: "accounting@acme.com"
 - Phone: "+49 40 98765432"
4. **Enter tax data** (2 minutes)
 - VAT ID: "DE987654321" (if available, otherwise empty)
 - VAT rate: "19" (standard for Germany)
 - Currency: "EUR" (pre-filled)
5. **Invoice settings** (30 seconds)
 - Invoice language: **German** (default)
 - E-invoice: **None** (for standard business customers)
6. **Save** (10 seconds)
 - Click **Create customer**
 - Success message appears

- You land in the customer list

Result: Your first customer is created and ready for the first invoice.

[i] **Pro Tip:** Keep customer correspondence (emails, contracts) ready to copy data correctly – especially VAT ID and email are often hard to find.

Workflow 2: Create Customer with E-Invoice (5–7 minutes)

Goal: Create a public client with XRechnung requirement.

Steps:

1. **Create customer** (30 seconds)
 - Company name: "City of Berlin – Department of Digitalization"
 - Owner: Leave empty
2. **Enter address** (1 minute)
 - Street: "Sample Street 1"
 - Postal code: "10115"
 - City: "Berlin"
 - Country: "Germany"
3. **Enter contact details** (1 minute)
 - Email: "accounting@berlin.de"
 - Phone: "+49 30 90269000"
4. **Enter tax data** (2 minutes)
 - VAT ID: "DE123456789" (public clients usually have a VAT ID)
 - VAT rate: "19"
 - Currency: "EUR"
5. **Set e-invoice** (1 minute)
 - Invoice language: **German**
 - E-invoice: **XRechnung** / **CII** (mandatory for public clients)
6. **Save** (10 seconds)
 - Click **Create customer**

Result: Customer is created with XRechnung preference. All future invoices to this customer automatically include the XRechnung XML file.

[*] **Workflow Tip:** Note the **Leitweg-ID** (a special ID for electronic invoice transmission) when first contacting public clients – you'll need it later for upload in the invoice portal.

Workflow 3: International Customers with Reverse Charge (7–10 minutes)

Goal: Create an EU customer with reverse charge procedure (0% VAT).

Steps:

1. **Create customer** (30 seconds)
 - Company name: "Software Solutions Austria GmbH"
 - Owner: "Dr. Jane Smith"
2. **Enter address** (1 minute)

- Street: "Ring Street 45"
- Postal code: "1010"
- City: "Vienna"
- Country: **"Austria"** (important: change from "Germany")

3. Enter contact details (1 minute)

- Email: "accounting@software-solutions.at"
- Phone: "+43 1 12345678"

4. Tax data for reverse charge (3 minutes)

- VAT ID: **"ATU12345678"** (mandatory for reverse charge)
- VAT rate: **"0"** (reverse charge = no VAT on invoice)
- Currency: "EUR"

5. Invoice settings (1 minute)

- Invoice language: **English** (recommended for international customers)
- E-invoice: **ZUGFeRD** (for automatic processing)

6. Save (10 seconds)

- Click **Create customer**

Result: Customer is created with 0% VAT (reverse charge). All invoices to this customer are in English and contain the note "Reverse charge – tax liability of the recipient of services".

[!] **Important:** Verify the customer's VAT ID at the Federal Central Tax Office (BZSt) via the website ec.europa.eu/taxation_customs/vies – only valid VAT IDs qualify for reverse charge.

[i] **Pro Tip:** For reverse charge invoices, you must add the text "Reverse charge according to Art. 196 VAT System Directive" in the invoice line item – note this as a text snippet for faster creation.

Workflow 4: Update Customer Data (2–3 minutes)

Goal: Update outdated contact details of an existing customer.

Steps:

1. Search customer (30 seconds)

- Open the customer list
- Type in the search bar: "Acme"
- Click on "Acme Corporation GmbH"

2. Check contact details (30 seconds)

- Scroll to the "Contact Information" section
- Check email and phone

3. Update email (30 seconds)

- Change email from "accounting@acme.com" to "invoices@acme.com"

4. Update phone (30 seconds)

- Change phone from "+49 40 98765432" to "+49 40 11223344"

5. Save (10 seconds)

- Click **Update customer**

Result: Contact details are updated. All new documents use the new data.

[~] **Workflow Tip:** Keep customer data regularly updated – change email/phone immediately when you learn of changes (e.g., from email signatures).

8.14 Pro Tips for Customer Management

[>>] **Complete data on first creation:** Invest 5 minutes when first creating a customer to carefully fill in all fields – this saves time with every invoice and prevents errors.

[i] **Always verify VAT ID:** Use the free online verification at the Federal Central Tax Office (BZSt) to validate the VAT ID – invalid numbers can lead to tax problems.

[*] **Use default VAT rate cleverly:** Set the default rate to the rate you use most frequently for this customer (e.g., 7% for publishers, 0% for EU customers) – this saves clicks when creating invoices.

[!] **Clarify e-invoice in advance:** Ask new customers on first contact if they prefer e-invoices (ZUGFeRD/XRechnung) – changing later is time-consuming.

[~] **Recommend ZUGFeRD for business customers:** Actively recommend ZUGFeRD to business customers with modern accounting software – automatic invoice processing saves time for both sides.

[i] **Consistent country spelling:** Decide once whether to use German ("Deutschland") or English ("Germany") and stick with it – this looks more professional.

[*] **Use accounting email:** Always save the accounting department's email (e.g., accounting@..., invoices@...) instead of general contact emails – this way invoices reach the right department directly.

[>>] **Direct line to accounting:** If available, save the direct line to accounting instead of the main number – this saves time for payment inquiries.

[i] **Don't delete customers prematurely:** Only delete customers if you're sure you'll never work with them again – old customers can be reactivated anytime.

[*] **Leverage search function:** Use real-time search for quick access – just type the first letters of the company name.

8.15 Customer Import/Export (CSV)

For bulk operations (moving to a new installation, initial data entry, or syncing with other tools), you can export and import customers as CSV.

Export Customers (CSV)...

1. Click File → Export → Export Customers (CSV)...
2. Select a destination folder
3. The application creates a timestamped CSV file (e.g., customers-export-...csv)

[i] **Tip:** Export once and use the exported file as a template for your own CSV.

Import Customers (CSV)...

1. Click File → Import → Import Customers (CSV)...
2. Select a CSV file
3. Review the mapping and preview
4. Select the rows you want to import
5. Start the import

Mapping and preview

The import dialog supports:

- Enabling/disabling individual fields

- Mapping columns by header names (case-insensitive)
- Previewing rows before importing
- Highlighting issues (e.g., duplicates, invalid rows)

Required fields (for import)

To import a customer, the following information must be available:

- **Street, Postal code, City**
- At least one of: **Company name** or **Contact person**

If required values are missing, the row is marked as invalid and cannot be imported.

Duplicate detection

During preview the application highlights potential duplicates, for example:

- **Duplicate email**
- **Duplicate customer number**
- **Possible duplicate record** (same/similar customer data)

[*] **Best Practice:** If you already have customers in your database, import in smaller batches and resolve duplicates as you go.

Continue with **Chapter 9: Product Management**

9. Product Management

The **Products** section lets you maintain reusable product master data (e.g., standard services, hourly packages, fixed-price items). Products help you create sales documents faster and keep descriptions/prices consistent.

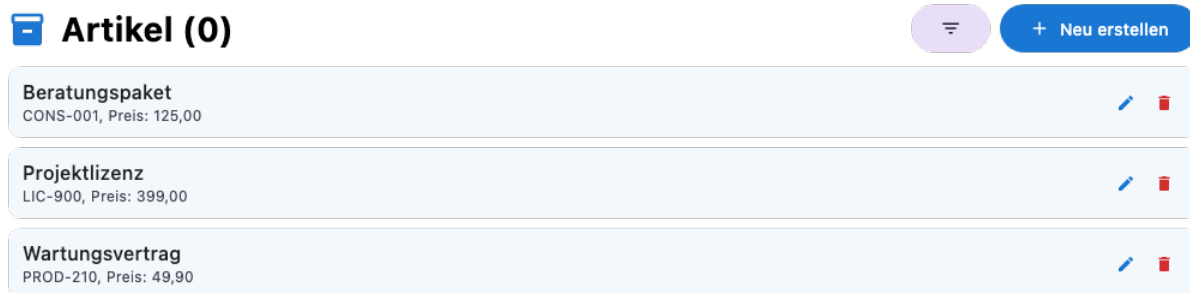


Figure XXX: Product list with search and create button

9.1 Product Concept

A **product** is a reusable template for a line item. A product can contain:

- **SKU** (required): Your internal identifier (unique)
- **Title** (required): Short name shown in lists and selection
- **Net unit price** (required): Price per unit in the document currency
- **Quantity unit** (optional): e.g., hour, piece
- **Tax rule** (optional): Default tax rule for the product
- **Description** (optional): Detailed text (Markdown supported)

[*] **Best Practice:** Use products for everything you bill repeatedly (standard consulting hour, maintenance package, hosting fee, etc.).

9.2 Product List

Navigate to the product list via the sidebar:

- **Products**

The list provides:

- **Search:** Filter products by typing part of the SKU or title
 - **Create:** Add a new product
 - **Edit/Delete:** Manage existing products
-

9.3 Create and Edit Products

1. Open **Products**
2. Click + **Create new product**
3. Fill the fields and click **Save**

Required fields

- **SKU:** Must be unique
- **Title**
- **Net unit price**

Optional fields

- **Quantity unit:** Used as default when adding the product to a document
- **Tax rule:** Used as default tax rule when adding the product to a document
- **Description:** Markdown formatting is supported

[i] **Tip:** Keep SKUs stable over time; they are useful for CSV import/export and for searching.

9.4 Using Products in Sales Documents

Products integrate into the **line items** section of sales documents.

Add line item from product

1. In a draft document, go to the **Line items** section
2. Click **Add line item from product**
3. Search and select a product

A new line item is created and pre-filled from the selected product (description/title, quantity unit, unit price, and tax rule).

Apply a product to an existing line item

In each line item row you can also pick a product via the product icon. This updates the line item fields based on the selected product.

View product details

If a line item is linked to a product, you can open the product details from the line item.

[!] **Important:** The product link is meant as a draft-time helper. The document always stores its own values; changing a product later does not retroactively change already created documents.

[?] **Continue reading:** More details about line items are in Chapter 3 (Documents).

9.5 Product Import/Export (CSV)

Products can be exported and imported as CSV.

Export Products (CSV)...

1. Click **File** → **Export** → **Export Products (CSV)...**
2. Select a destination folder
3. The application creates a timestamped CSV file (e.g., `products-export-...csv`)

Import Products (CSV)...

1. Click **File** → **Import** → **Import Products (CSV)...**
2. Select a CSV file
3. Review the mapping and the preview
4. Start the import

Mapping and preview

The import dialog allows you to:

- Enable/disable individual fields for import
- Map columns via header names (case-insensitive)
- Preview rows before importing
- Select which rows to import

Required fields

To import products, these fields must be present (and enabled in the mapping):

- **SKU**
- **Title**
- **Net unit price**

Rows with missing/invalid required values are marked as invalid and cannot be imported.

Duplicate detection

During preview the application highlights potential issues, for example:

- **Duplicate SKU** (within the file or already existing in the database)
- **Possible duplicate record** (same/similar product data)

[*] **Best Practice:** Start by exporting products once and use the exported file as a template for your import.

Continue with Chapter 10: Text Snippets

10. Text Snippets

Text snippets are reusable text blocks that you can insert into invoices and quotes. Once created, you can incorporate them into any number of documents with just a few clicks – ideal for recurring content like payment terms, terms and conditions, or standard descriptions. Text snippets support Markdown formatting for professional styling.

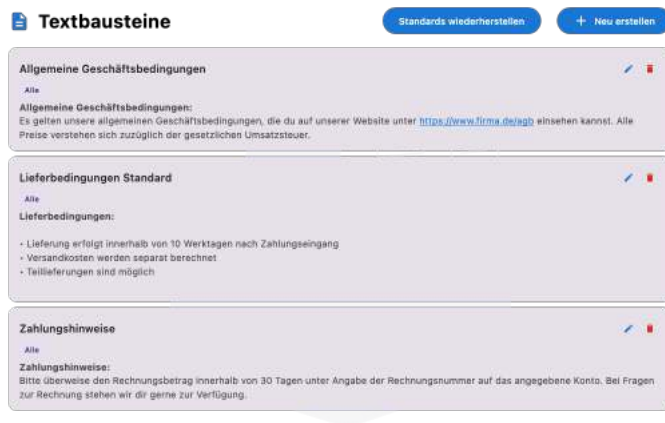


Figure 233: The text snippets list shows all your reusable content

10.1 Text Snippets Concept

A **text snippet** (text block) is reusable content that you can use across multiple documents. Each text snippet has:

- **Name:** Label for identification (e.g., "Payment Terms", "Terms & Conditions")
- **Content:** The actual text with Markdown formatting
- **Positioning:** Can be inserted before or after invoice line items

Why Use Text Snippets?

Benefits of reusable content:

1. **Time savings:** Create once, use as often as needed
2. **Consistency:** Same text on all documents (no typos)
3. **Professional formatting:** Markdown enables headings, lists, bold text
4. **Central maintenance:** Changes in one place – new documents automatically use the updated version
5. **Multilingual:** Different text snippets for German and English invoices



Figure 234: Text snippets are inserted into documents

[i] Pro Tip: Create at least two text snippets: One for payment terms (before line items) and one for legal notices (after line items).

10.2 Typical Use Cases

Payment Terms

Example:

****Payment Terms:****

Please transfer the invoice amount within 30 days, including the invoice number as reference. If you have any questions about the invoice, please don't hesitate to contact us.

Position: Before line items (visible directly below customer address)

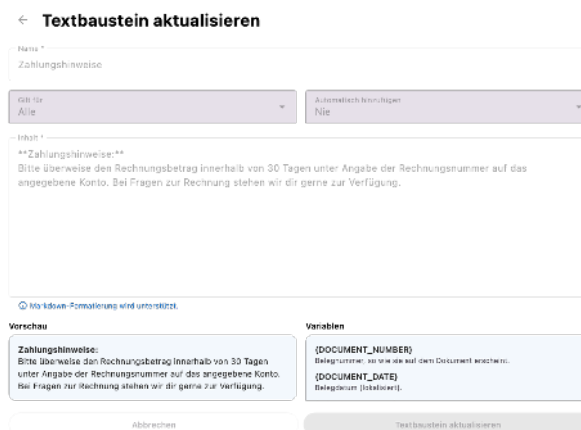


Figure 235: Payment terms as text snippet

Terms and Conditions

Example:

****Terms and Conditions:****

Our general terms and conditions apply, which you can view on our website at www.company.com/terms. All prices are exclusive of statutory VAT.

Position: After line items (visible at the end of the invoice)

https://www.firma.de/agb einsehen kannst. Alle Preise verstehen sich zuzüglich der gesetzlichen Umsatzsteuer.' Below the content area is a small blue link that says 'Keine Markdown-Formatierung wird unterstützt.' At the bottom of the form, there are two preview windows. The 'Vorschau' (Preview) window shows the rendered text: 'Allgemeine Geschäftsbedingungen: Es gelten unsere allgemeinen Geschäftsbedingungen, die du auf unserer Website unter <https://www.firma.de/agb> einsehen kannst. Alle Preise verstehen sich zuzüglich der gesetzlichen Umsatzsteuer.' The 'Variablen' (Variables) window shows two variables: '(DOCUMENT_NUMBER)' with the description 'Rechnungsnummer, so wie sie auf dem Dokument erscheint.' and '(DOCUMENT_DATE)' with the description 'Rechnungsdatum (Jahreswert)'. At the very bottom of the form are two buttons: 'Abbrechen' (Cancel) and 'Textbaustein aktualisieren' (Update Text Block)." data-bbox="317 687 672 890"/>

Figure 236: Terms and conditions as text snippet

Delivery Terms

Example:

****Delivery Terms:****

- Delivery within 10 business days after payment receipt
- Shipping costs are calculated separately
- Partial deliveries are possible

Position: After line items

Figure 237: Delivery terms with list

Warranty Information

Example:

****Warranty:****

We provide a 24-month warranty on all products from the date of purchase. The warranty covers material and workmanship defects. Damage due to improper use is excluded.

Position: After line items

Project Description

Example:

****Project Description:****

The following services were provided as part of the "Website Relaunch" project. The work includes design, development, and quality assurance according to the agreed specification dated October 15, 2025.

Position: Before line items

[i] Pro Tip: For international customers, you can create English versions of the same text snippets (e.g., "Payment Terms" instead of "Zahlungshinweise").

10.3 Text Snippets List

The text snippets list shows all your reusable content at a glance.

List Overview

Each entry shows:

- **Name:** Label of the text snippet
- **Content preview:** The first lines of the text (up to 6 lines)

- **Action buttons:** Edit and Delete

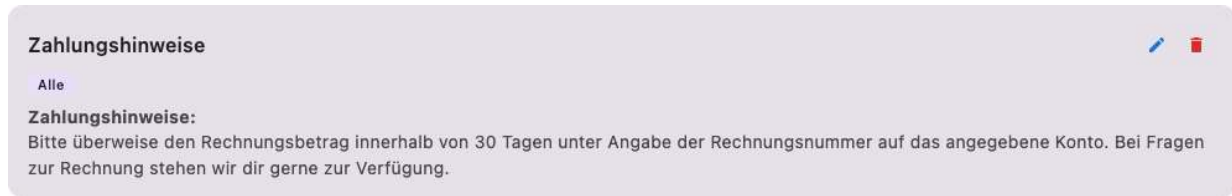


Figure 238: Each entry shows name and content preview

Empty Text Snippets List

If you haven't created any text snippets yet, you'll see a message:

No text snippets yet

"Create reusable text snippets for invoices and emails."

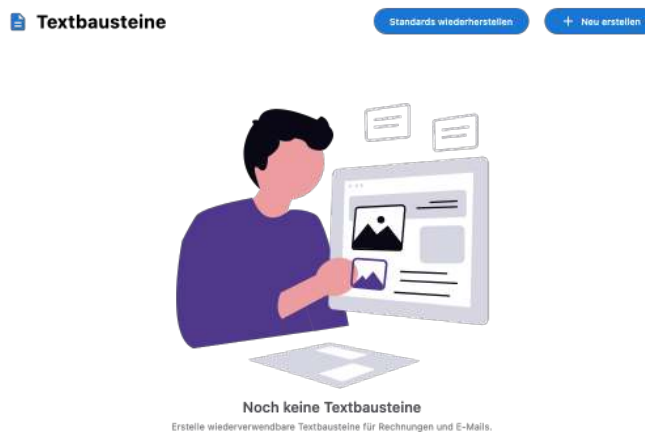


Figure 239: Message when text snippets list is empty

10.4 Create Text Snippet

Create New Text Snippet

1. Click + **Create new text snippet** in the header
2. The creation form opens

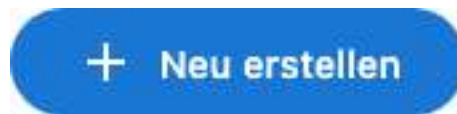


Figure 240: Button to create a new text snippet

The form has two fields:

- Name (required field)
- Content (required field, with Markdown support)

10.5 Name (required field)

The name is used to identify the text snippet in the list and when inserting into documents.

Recommendations:

- Short and concise (e.g., "Payment Terms", "Terms & Conditions", "Delivery Terms")
- Self-explanatory (you should immediately know what the text snippet contains)
- For multilingual text snippets: Mark the language (e.g., "Payment Terms EN", "Zahlungshinweise DE")

Examples:

- "Payment Terms"
- "Terms and Conditions"
- "Standard Delivery Terms"
- "24 Month Warranty Information"
- "Website Project Description"

Name

Zahlungsbedingungen

Figure 241: Enter a descriptive name

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use numbers or prefixes for similar text snippets (e.g., "01 – Standard Payment Terms", "02 – Express Payment Terms") – this keeps them sorted in the list.

10.6 Content (required field)

The content is the actual text that will be inserted into documents. You can use **Markdown formatting** to style the text professionally.

Plain Text

Example:

Please transfer the invoice amount within 30 days, including the invoice number as reference on the account provided.

Name

Hinweis zur Zahlung

Inhalt

Bitte begleiche den Rechnungsbetrag innerhalb von 14 Tagen ohne Abzug.

Figure 242: Enter the text

Markdown Formatting

Markdown is a simple markup language that lets you format text. The formatting is displayed on the invoice in the PDF.

Note text in form: "Markdown formatting is supported."

Figure 243: Note about Markdown support

10.7 Markdown Syntax

Bold Text

Enclose text with **double asterisks** for bold text.

Syntax:

****Payment Terms:****

Result: Payment Terms:

Figure 244: Bold text with double asterisks

Italic Text

Enclose text with *single asterisks* for italic text.

Syntax:

Important: Please include invoice number.

Result: *Important:* Please include invoice number.

Figure 245: Italic text with single asterisks

Headings

Use **hash symbols (#)** for headings. More hashes = smaller heading.

Syntax:

Large Heading
Medium Heading
Small Heading

Result:

Large Heading

Medium Heading

Small Heading

Figure 246: Headings with hash symbols

[i] **Pro Tip:** For text snippets in invoices, **### Small headings** (3 hashes) are recommended – larger headings often appear oversized.

Bullet Lists (unordered)

Use **hyphens (-)** or **asterisks (*)** for unordered lists.

Syntax:

****Delivery Terms:****

- Delivery within 10 business days
- Shipping costs calculated separately
- Partial deliveries possible

Result:

Delivery Terms:

- Delivery within 10 business days
- Shipping costs calculated separately
- Partial deliveries possible

The screenshot shows the 'Textbaustein aktualisieren' (Update Building Block) interface. At the top, there is a back arrow and the title 'Textbaustein aktualisieren'. Below this, the 'Name' field is set to 'Ungeordnete Liste'. There are two dropdown menus: 'Gilt für' (Applies to) set to 'Alle' (All) and 'Automatisch hinzufügen' (Add automatically) set to 'Nie' (Never). The 'Inhalt' (Content) field contains a bulleted list: '- Rechnung prüfen', '- Betrag überweisen', and '- Beleg archivieren'. Below the content field, there is a link that says 'Hyphens-Formatierung wird unterstützt.' (Hyphen formatting is supported). At the bottom, there are two sections: 'Vorschau' (Preview) showing the bulleted list, and 'Variablen' (Variables) showing two variables: '(DOCUMENT_NUMBER)' with the description 'Belegnummer, so wie sie auf dem Dokument erscheint.' and '(DOCUMENT_DATE)' with the description 'Belegdatum (Jahreswert)'. At the very bottom, there are two buttons: 'Abbrechen' (Cancel) and 'Textbaustein aktualisieren' (Update Building Block).

Figure 247: Unordered list with hyphens

Numbered Lists (ordered)

Use **numbers with period (1., 2., 3.)** for numbered lists.

Syntax:

****Payment Steps:****

1. Review invoice
2. Transfer amount
3. Await payment confirmation

Result:

Payment Steps:

1. Review invoice
2. Transfer amount
3. Await payment confirmation

The screenshot shows the 'Textbaustein aktualisieren' (Update Building Block) interface. At the top, there is a back arrow and the title 'Textbaustein aktualisieren'. Below this, the 'Name' field is set to 'Nummerierte Liste'. There are two dropdown menus: 'Gilt für' (Applies to) set to 'Alle' (All) and 'Automatisch hinzufügen' (Add automatically) set to 'Nie' (Never). The 'Inhalt' (Content) field contains a numbered list: '1. Erste Abschlagszahlung', '2. Zweite Abschlagszahlung', and '3. Schlussrechnung'. Below the content field, there is a link that says 'Hyphens-Formatierung wird unterstützt.' (Hyphen formatting is supported). At the bottom, there are two sections: 'Vorschau' (Preview) showing the numbered list, and 'Variablen' (Variables) showing two variables: '(DOCUMENT_NUMBER)' with the description 'Belegnummer, so wie sie auf dem Dokument erscheint.' and '(DOCUMENT_DATE)' with the description 'Belegdatum (Jahreswert)'. At the very bottom, there are two buttons: 'Abbrechen' (Cancel) and 'Textbaustein aktualisieren' (Update Building Block).

Figure 248: Numbered list with numbers

Nested Lists

You can also nest lists by adding **two spaces** before the hyphen/number.

Syntax:

```
**Warranty Conditions:**  
- Material and workmanship defects:  
  - 24 months warranty  
  - Free replacement  
- Excluded:  
  - Improper use  
  - Wear parts
```

Result:

Warranty Conditions:

- Material and workmanship defects:
 - 24 months warranty
 - Free replacement
- Excluded:
 - Improper use
 - Wear parts

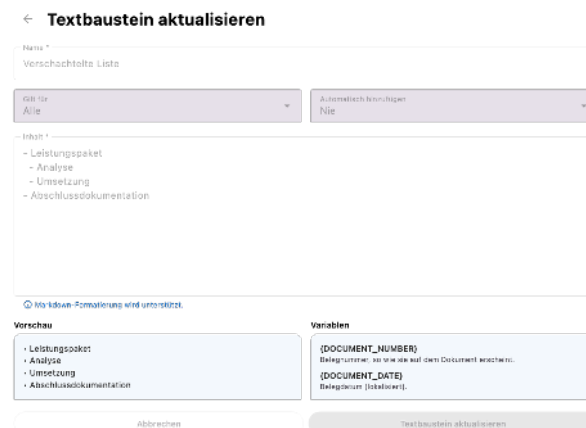


Figure 249: Nested list with indentation

Links

Use **square brackets + parentheses** for clickable links.

Syntax:

Find our terms and conditions at www.company.com/terms.

Result: Find our terms and conditions at www.company.com/terms.

Figure 250: Links with square and round brackets

[!] **Important:** Links are not clickable on printed PDFs – for invoices, it's recommended to provide the URL as plain text (e.g., "www.company.com/terms").

Line Breaks

For a **single line break**, add **two spaces** at the end of a line, followed by Enter.

Syntax:

First line
Second line

For a **paragraph** (more spacing), insert a **blank line**.

Syntax:

First paragraph.
Second paragraph.

Figure 251: Line breaks and paragraphs

Combinations

You can combine different formatting:

Syntax:

****Important Payment Terms:****

Please note the following points ***carefully***:

- Transfer the amount ****within 30 days****
- Include the invoice number as reference
- Contact us at accounting@company.com with questions

Find more information at www.company.com/payment.

Figure 252: Combination of bold, italic, and lists

10.8 Markdown Preview

Live Preview in Form

While entering content, you **cannot see the formatting directly** – the application only shows the raw text with Markdown syntax.

To check the formatting:

1. Save the text snippet
2. Create a test invoice
3. Insert the text snippet
4. Use the **preview/PDF function** of the invoice

Figure 253: Raw text with Markdown syntax in form

[i] Pro Tip: Use an external Markdown editor (e.g., dillinger.io) with live preview to compose longer texts and then paste them via copy & paste.

10.9 Save Text Snippet

Save

Click **Create text snippet** (or **Update text snippet** when editing) to save the text snippet.



Figure 254: Save the text snippet with the create button

Validation:

The application checks before saving:

- [+] Name filled in
- [+] Content filled in

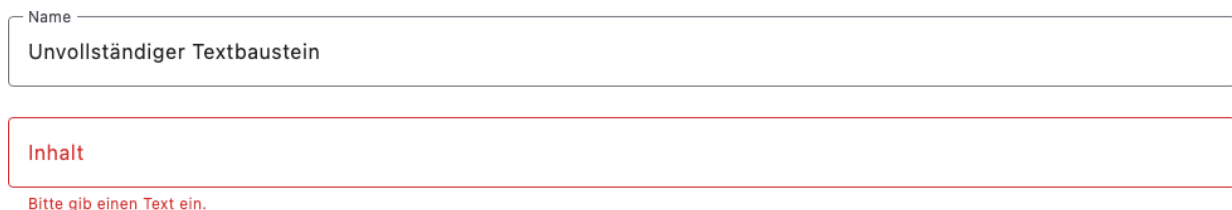


Figure 255: Validation errors are marked in red

Go Back Without Saving

Click the **back arrow** in the upper left corner to return to the previous screen. If you have unsaved changes, a dialog appears:

Unsaved Changes

"You have unsaved changes. Do you really want to continue?"

- **Discard:** Changes will not be saved
- **Cancel:** Stay in the form

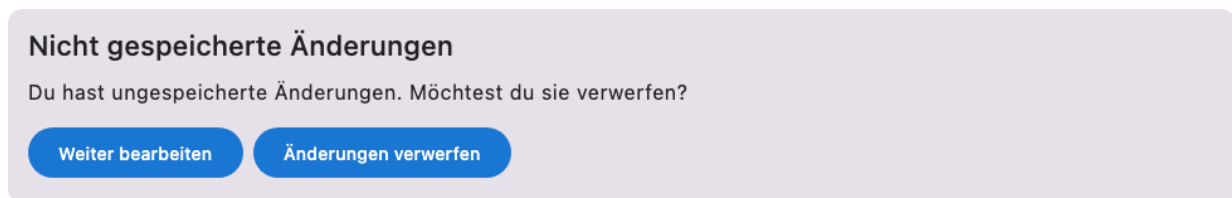


Figure 256: Warning for unsaved changes

10.10 Edit Text Snippet

Open Text Snippet

Click on a text snippet in the list to open it. The edit form shows all saved data.

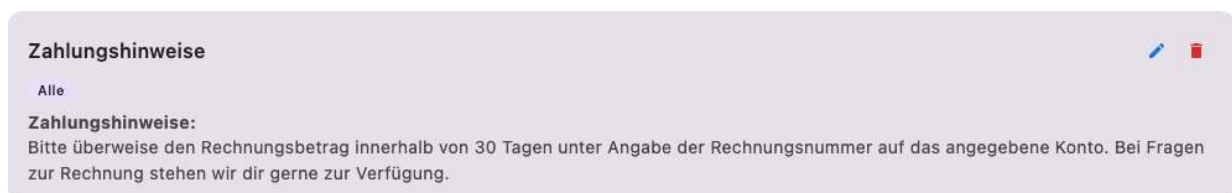


Figure 257: Click on a text snippet to edit it

Edit Fields

You can edit all fields:

- Name
- Content (with Markdown formatting)

[!] **Important:** Changes to text snippets **only affect new documents** – already published documents keep their original text so they remain unchanged and traceable.

Why? Text snippets are **copied into the document** (embedded) when the invoice is published. Later changes to the text snippet have no effect on already published documents.

Figure 258: Change name or content

[i] **Pro Tip:** If you discover an error in an already sent document, you must create a correction invoice – changing the text snippet afterwards doesn't help.

10.11 Delete Text Snippet

Prerequisites

You can delete a text snippet at any time, even if it was used in documents.

[!] **Important:** Deletion is **permanent** and cannot be undone. Already published documents keep their text (since it was copied during publishing).

Perform Deletion

1. Click the **three-dot menu** to the right of the text snippet in the list
2. Select **Delete**
3. A confirmation dialog appears:

Delete text snippet?

"Delete 'Payment Terms'? This action cannot be undone."

- **Delete:** Confirm (red button)
- **Cancel:** Abort operation

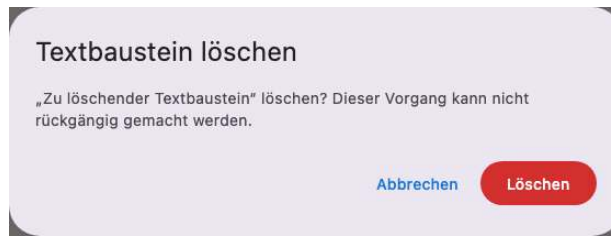


Figure 259: Confirmation dialog when deleting a text snippet

4. Confirm with **Delete**

What Happens When Deleting?

- The text snippet is removed from the list
- **New documents** can no longer use this text snippet
- **Drafts** (non-published documents) that use the text snippet keep it
- **Published documents** keep their text completely (since it was copied during publishing)

[i] **Pro Tip:** If you no longer want to use a text snippet but are unsure about deleting it, simply change the name to "[ARCHIVE] Payment Terms" – this way you immediately see it's no longer active.

10.12 Insert Text Snippets into Documents

You can insert text snippets into invoices and quotes. Details can be found in **Chapter 3 – Documents** (Section 3.8 – Add Text Blocks).

Quick Overview

1. Open an invoice or quote (draft)
2. Scroll to the **Text Blocks** section
3. Click + **Add text block**
4. Select a text snippet from the list
5. Choose the position: **Before line items** or **After line items**
6. Save the invoice

Dokument bearbeiten

Beschreibung

Projektbegleitung November 2025

Textbaustein einfügen

Zahlungshinweise Bitte überweise den Rechnungsbetrag innerhalb von 14 Tagen.	Lieferbedingungen Lieferung erfolgt innerhalb von 10 Werktagen.
---	--

In Dokument einfügen

Figure 260: Insert text snippet in invoice

Position "Before line items": The text snippet appears **above** the line items table (ideal for payment terms, project descriptions).

Position "After line items": The text snippet appears **below** the line items table and totals (ideal for terms & conditions, warranty information, delivery terms).



Figure 261: Text snippet before and after line items in PDF

[i] **Pro Tip:** You can insert **multiple text snippets** into a document – e.g., payment terms before line items and terms & conditions after line items.

10.13 Practical Workflows

Workflow 1: Create Standard Text Snippets (15–20 minutes, one-time)

Goal: Create the most important text snippets that you want to use in all invoices.

Steps:

1. Create payment terms (5 minutes)

- Click + **Create new text snippet**
- Name: "Payment Terms"
- Content:

****Payment Terms:****

Please transfer the invoice amount within 30 days, including the invoice number as reference on the account provided. If you have any questions about the invoice, please don't hesitate to contact us.

- Click **Create text snippet**

2. Create terms and conditions (5 minutes)

- Click + **Create new text snippet**
- Name: "Terms and Conditions"
- Content:

****Terms and Conditions:****

Our general terms and conditions apply, which you can view on our website at www.company.com/terms. All prices are exclusive of statutory VAT.

- Click **Create text snippet**

3. Create delivery terms (5 minutes)

- Click + **Create new text snippet**
- Name: "Standard Delivery Terms"
- Content:

****Delivery Terms:****

- Delivery within 10 business days after payment receipt
- Shipping costs calculated separately
- Partial deliveries possible

- Click **Create text snippet**

Result: You have three standard text snippets that you can insert into every invoice.

[*] **Workflow Tip:** Insert the text snippets directly into your next invoice to check how they look in the PDF – this way you can optimize formatting and wording.

Workflow 2: Create Multilingual Text Snippets (10–15 minutes)

Goal: Create German and English versions for international customers.

Steps:

1. German payment terms (3 minutes)

- Name: "Zahlungshinweise DE"
- Content:

****Zahlungshinweise:****

Bitte überweise den Rechnungsbetrag innerhalb von 30 Tagen unter Angabe der Rechnungsnummer.

2. English payment terms (3 minutes)

- Name: "Payment Terms EN"
- Content:

****Payment Terms:****

Please transfer the invoice amount within 30 days, including the invoice number as reference.

3. German terms & conditions (3 minutes)

- Name: "AGB DE"
- Content:

****Allgemeine Geschäftsbedingungen:****

Es gelten unsere AGB unter www.firma.de/agb.

4. English terms & conditions (3 minutes)

- Name: "Terms & Conditions EN"
- Content:

****Terms & Conditions:****

Our general terms and conditions apply, available at www.company.com/terms.

Result: You have bilingual text snippets for German and international customers.

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use the language abbreviation (DE/EN) at the end of the name to immediately see which language the text snippet has in the list.

Workflow 3: Update Text Snippet (2–3 minutes)

Goal: Update an existing text snippet (e.g., change payment deadline).

Steps:

1. Open text snippet (30 seconds)

- Open the text snippets list
- Click on "Payment Terms"

2. **Change content** (1 minute)

- Change "30 days" to "14 days"
- New content:

****Payment Terms:****

Please transfer the invoice amount within ****14 days****, including the invoice number as reference on the account provided.

3. **Save** (10 seconds)

- Click **Update text snippet**

4. **Check** (1 minute)

- Create a new test invoice
- Insert the updated text snippet
- Check the preview

Result: All new invoices use the updated payment deadline (14 days).

[!] **Important:** Already published invoices keep the old payment deadline (30 days) – this supports GoBD-oriented workflows and prevents retroactive changes.

Workflow 4: Test Markdown Formatting (5 minutes)

Goal: Test various Markdown formatting to see how they look in the PDF.

Steps:

1. **Create test text snippet** (2 minutes)

- Name: "Test Formatting"
- Content:

Heading

This is ****bold text**** and this is **italic text**.

****List:****

- First point
- Second point
 - Subpoint A
 - Subpoint B

****Numbered List:****

1. First step
2. Second step
3. Third step

2. **Insert into invoice** (1 minute)

- Create a test invoice
- Insert the test text snippet

3. **Check PDF preview** (2 minutes)

- Open the preview/PDF
- Check how the formatting looks
- Adjust text snippet if needed and check again

4. **Delete test text snippet** (30 seconds)

- Delete the test text snippet after testing

Result: You know how various Markdown formatting looks in the PDF.

[i] **Pro Tip:** Don't save the test text snippet – create it again when needed to try different formatting.

10.14 Pro Tips for Text Snippets

[>] **Standard text snippets for all invoices:** Create at least "Payment Terms" and "Terms & Conditions" as text snippets – this saves time with every invoice.

[i] **Use language abbreviations in name:** Add "DE" or "EN" at the end of the name (e.g., "Payment Terms EN", "Zahlungshinweise DE") to easily distinguish multilingual text snippets.

[*] **Markdown preview in external editor:** Use dillinger.io or another Markdown editor with live preview for longer text snippets – then paste via copy & paste.

[i] **Bold text for headings:** Use ****Heading:**** instead of **### Heading** for small headings in text snippets – this often looks better on invoices.

[~] **Lists for structure:** Use lists (- or 1.) for clear presentation of conditions or steps – this increases readability.

[i] **Short and concise:** Keep text snippets short (max. 3–5 sentences or 5–7 list items) – too much text appears cluttered.

[*] **Group text snippets by position:** Use prefixes like "01 –" for text snippets that come before line items and "02 –" for text snippets after line items – this keeps them sorted in the list.

[>] **Not too many text snippets:** Only create text snippets that you actually use multiple times – otherwise the list becomes confusing (5–10 text snippets are ideal).

[i] **Links as plain text:** Write URLs as plain text (www.company.com/terms) instead of as Markdown link ([Link] (<https://...>)) – links are not clickable on printed invoices.

[*] **Update regularly:** Review your text snippets every 6–12 months for currency (e.g., new payment deadlines, changed terms & conditions) – this keeps you legally compliant.

10.15 Auto-Assignment Rules

What Is Auto-Assignment?

Auto-assignment lets you define rules on a text snippet so that it is **automatically added** to new documents that match certain criteria, without you having to select it manually each time.

For example: "Always add the 'Reverse Charge Note' snippet to invoices for customers in the EU" – once the rule is set, this happens automatically whenever you create an invoice for a matching customer.

When Auto-Assignment Saves Time

- You have a standard payment-terms snippet that should go on every invoice you ever create
- You have a legal disclaimer that only applies to customers in a specific country
- You want a project description template pre-filled for a specific customer

Configuring Auto-Assignment on a Text Snippet

1. Open the text snippet you want to configure (create it first if needed)
2. Scroll to the **Auto-Assignment** section in the snippet edit form
3. Enable **Auto-assign to matching documents**
4. Configure the matching criteria:

Figure XX: Auto-assignment section in the text snippet editor

Matching Criteria

- **Customer:** Only add to documents for a specific customer
- **Document type:** Only add to invoices, or only to quotes, etc.
- **Tenant:** Only add to documents from a specific tenant (company)
- **Position:** Where in the document the snippet should be placed (before or after line items)

You can combine criteria. For example: "Add to invoices (type) for customer Acme (customer)" — the snippet will only be auto-added when both conditions are met.

Leave a criterion empty to match all values (e.g., leaving "Customer" empty means the snippet applies to documents for any customer).

How to Test That Auto-Assignment Works

1. Create a new document that should match the rule (correct type, correct customer, correct tenant)
2. Check the **Text blocks** section of the document – the snippet should already be present
3. If it is not there, revisit the rule criteria to verify they match the document you created

Disabling or Overriding Auto-Assignment on a Specific Document

Auto-assignment adds the snippet as a starting point, but you are always free to:

- **Remove** the auto-assigned snippet from a specific document by clicking the X icon
- **Add** additional snippets manually on top of the auto-assigned ones
- **Reorder** snippets in the document

Removing a snippet from one document does not affect the rule – the snippet will still be auto-added to the next new document that matches.

If you want to permanently disable auto-assignment for a snippet, go back to the snippet and uncheck **Auto-assign to matching documents**.

Continue with **Chapter 11: Settings**

11. Settings

Settings allow you to customize the application to your preferences. Here you configure appearance, automatic backups, document export, archive storage, AI integration, DATEV handover, and update notifications. All settings are saved immediately and restored on every start.

[>] **First time here? Start with the 5-minute setup.** If you're setting up AGYNAMIX Invoicer for the first time, jump directly to Section 11.13 Workflow 1: Initial Setup which guides you through the essential settings in order. Come back to this chapter for detailed reference on individual options.

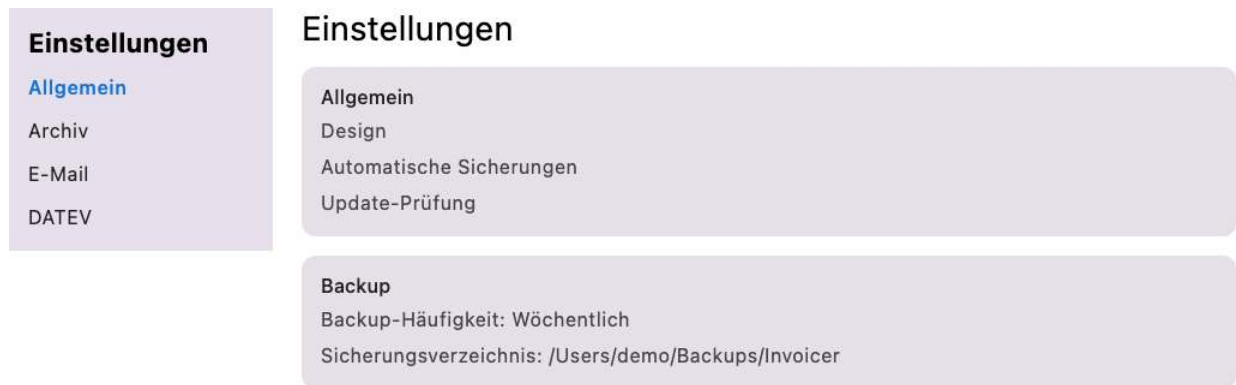


Figure 262: The settings overview shows all configuration options

11.1 Open Settings

You can open settings in two ways:

Way 1: Via Sidebar

1. Click **Settings** (gear icon) in the left sidebar



Figure 263: Settings link in the sidebar

Way 2: Via Menu Bar

1. Click **Edit** in the top menu bar
2. Select **Preferences** (or use the keyboard shortcut **Ctrl+,** / **Cmd+,**)



Figure 264: Open settings via menu bar

11.2 Settings Overview

Settings are divided into sections:

1. **Appearance:** Design (Light/Dark/System) and application UI scale
2. **Backup:** Automatic backups and retention
3. **Archive:** Local archive, WORM write protection, S3 Object Lock storage, or network path
4. **Documents:** Export folder and file name pattern for generated sales documents
5. **AI:** Local or OpenAI-compatible provider for incoming document analysis
6. **DATEV / Tax Advisor:** Advisor/client numbers and posting account defaults
7. **Updates:** Automatic update checking
8. **Email:** Configure sending (SMTP) and sent-copy (IMAP)
9. **Document Emails:** Templates for document emails
10. **User Management:** Manage users, roles, and permissions (if enabled)
11. **Server:** Operating mode (Standalone/Host/Client) and server configuration



Figure 265: The settings sections

11.3 Appearance

Design Mode

Choose how the application should look: Light, Dark, or automatically adapted to your system settings.

Available options:

- **System Default:** Follows your operating system setting (Light/Dark); recommended for automatic adaptation
- **Dark Design:** Application is always dark; suitable for working in low light
- **Light Design:** Application is always light; suitable for working in daylight

Design

System Aktiv	Ausgewählt
Hell Verfügbar	Wählen
Dunkel Verfügbar	Wählen

Figure 266: Choose between Light, Dark, and System Default

Select:

1. Click the radio button next to the desired option
2. The change is applied immediately (no save button needed)

Design

System Verfügbar	Wählen
Hell Verfügbar	Wählen
Dunkel Aktiv	Ausgewählt

Änderung übernommen

Figure 267: The change is immediately visible

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use **System Default** so the application automatically switches between light and dark when you activate dark mode on your computer in the evening.

Light Design (Light Mode)

- Light background colors (White, Light Gray)
- Dark text colors (Black, Dark Gray)
- High contrast for daylight work

Hell

Vorschau

Rechnung RE-2025-001

TechVision GmbH

Offener Betrag: 1.240,00 EUR

Figure 268: Light design (Light Mode)

Dark Design (Dark Mode)

- Dark background colors (Dark Gray, Black)
- Light text colors (White, Light Gray)
- Easy on the eyes in low light

Dunkel

Vorschau

Rechnung RE-2025-001

TechVision GmbH

Offener Betrag: 1.240,00 EUR

Figure 269: Dark design (Dark Mode)

[!] **Important:** The design setting only affects **the application itself**, not the exported PDF documents. PDFs always have a light design for optimal readability when printing.

Application UI Scale

Use **Application UI scale** to make the app interface smaller or larger on this computer. The setting applies immediately and is stored locally, so it does not affect other clients connected to the same host.

Available values range from **50%** to **300%**. On Linux Wayland/XWayland systems with blurry text under fractional desktop scaling, best results usually require running the app surface at 100% external scaling and increasing the size here instead.

11.4 Backup

Why Backups Are Important

Backups protect your data from:

- Accidental deletion
- Hard drive failure
- Software problems
- Unwanted changes

[i] **Pro Tip:** Enable **Daily** or **Weekly** to automatically create backups – this way you're always on the safe side.

Frequency

Determine how often automatic backups are created.

Available options:

- **None:** No automatic backups; Recommendation: [!] Not recommended, only for test environments
- **Always (on every exit):** Every time you exit the application; Recommendation: For very important data
- **Daily:** Once per day on exit; Recommendation: [*] Recommended for normal use
- **Weekly:** Once per week on exit; Recommendation: For occasional use
- **Monthly:** Once per month on exit; Recommendation: For rare use

Automatische Sicherungen

Backup-Häufigkeit

Wöchentlich

Automatische Sicherungen werden jeden Montag um 08:00 Uhr erstellt.

Figure 270: Choose backup frequency

Select:

1. Click the **Frequency** dropdown menu
2. Select an option from the list
3. The setting is saved immediately

Automatische Sicherungen

Backup-Häufigkeit

Wöchentlich

Täglich

Wöchentlich

Monatlich

Automatische Sicherungen werden jeden Montag um 08:00 Uhr erstellt.

Figure 271: Dropdown menu for backup frequency

[i] **Pro Tip:** For active use (several invoices daily), **Daily** is recommended – for occasional use (1–2 invoices per week), **Weekly** is sufficient.

Backup Directory

Choose the folder where backup files are stored.

Default: Empty (no backups)

Select:

1. Click **Choose directory**
2. A file selection dialog opens
3. Navigate to the desired folder (e.g., ~/Backups/Invoicer/)
4. Click **Select folder**
5. The path is displayed in the text field



Figure 272: Choose the folder for backups

Recommended storage locations:

- **Cloud folder:** ~/Dropbox/Backups/Invoicer/ OR ~/Google Drive/Backups/Invoicer/ (automatically backed up to cloud)
- **External drive:** /Volumes/Backup/Invoicer/ (additional security)
- **Local folder:** ~/Documents/Invoicer-Backups/ (fast, but local only)

Backup

Sicherungsverzeichnis

/Users/demo/Backups/Invoicer

/Users/demo/Backups/Invoicer

Figure 273: The selected path is displayed

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use a cloud folder (Dropbox, Google Drive, iCloud) for double security – if your computer fails, the backups are available in the cloud.

[!] **Important:** The backup directory must have sufficient storage space (at least 500 MB for ~100 backups with an average of 5 MB per backup).

Backup Retention

Determine how long old backups are kept before being automatically deleted.

Available options:

- **Keep:** Backups are never deleted; Recommendation: [!] Caution, storage space can run out
- **1 Day:** Backups older than 1 day are deleted; Recommendation: Only for daily backups with limited storage
- **1 Week:** Backups older than 1 week are deleted; Recommendation: For weekly backups
- **1 Month:** Backups older than 1 month are deleted; Recommendation: [*] Recommended for daily backups
- **1 Year:** Backups older than 1 year are deleted; Recommendation: For maximum security

Backup

Sicherungsaufbewahrung

90 Tage

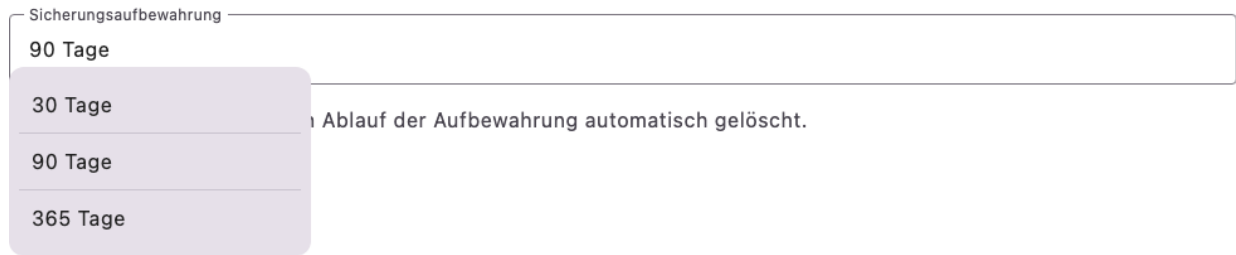
Alte Sicherungen werden nach Ablauf der Aufbewahrung automatisch gelöscht.

Figure 274: Choose retention period

Select:

1. Click the **Backup Retention** dropdown menu
2. Select an option from the list
3. The setting is saved immediately

Backup



Sicherungsaufbewahrung

90 Tage

30 Tage

90 Tage

365 Tage

Ablauf der Aufbewahrung automatisch gelöscht.

Figure 275: Dropdown menu for retention period

[i] **Pro Tip:** For daily backups, **1 Month** is recommended – this gives you up to 30 backups to choose from if you need to restore something, without taking up too much storage space.

Note Text

”Backups are automatically created when closing the application and saved in the specified folder”

When are backups created?

Backups are automatically created when you:

1. Close the application (via **File** → **Exit** or the close button)
2. The backup frequency is met (e.g., daily → 1 day has passed since last backup)

Backup file name:

Backups have the following format:

invoicer-{production|sandbox}-YYYY-MM-DD-HHMMSS.zip

Example: invoicer-production-2025-11-16-143522.zip

Backup-Dateien im Sicherungsverzeichnis

```
/Users/demo/Backups/Invoicer
Wöchentliches Backup
├─ invoicer-backup-2026-03-16.zip
├─ invoicer-backup-2026-03-09.zip
├─ manifest.json
└─ README.txt
```

Figure 276: Backup files in backup directory

[!] **Important:** If the application crashes (e.g., power failure), no backup is created. Use regular backups to minimize data loss.

Backup Reminder on Exit

If you have **not configured automatic backups** (Frequency = **None**), a reminder dialog appears when exiting the application:

Create backup?

”You have not configured automatic backups. Do you want to create a backup before closing?”

- **Continue:** Create backup

- **Skip:** Exit without backup
- **Don't ask again:** Don't show this dialog again (checkbox)

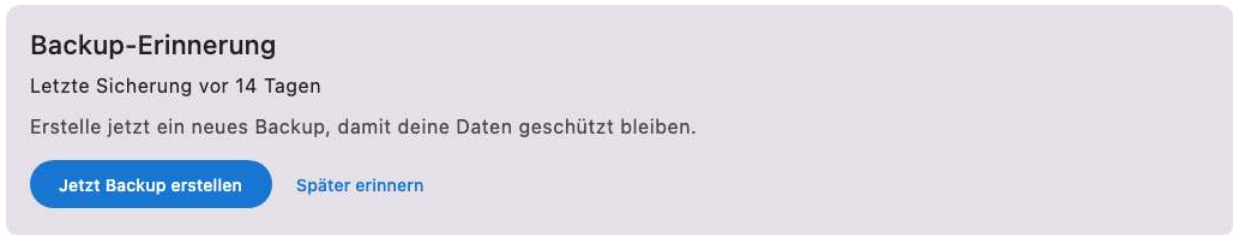


Figure 277: Reminder when exiting without automatic backups

[i] **Pro Tip:** If you activated the **Don't ask again** checkbox and want to re-enable the reminder, you can currently only do this by resetting all settings (see Section 11.12).

Encrypted Backups

For additional security – especially when backups are stored in cloud services or shared locations – you can create **encrypted backups**. An encrypted backup is a password-protected ZIP file that cannot be opened without the passphrase.

Create an Encrypted Backup

1. Go to **File → Create Backup...** (or wait for the automatic backup on exit)
2. In the backup dialog, enable the **Encrypt backup** option
3. Enter a **passphrase** in the field provided
4. Confirm the passphrase in the second field
5. Click **Create Backup**

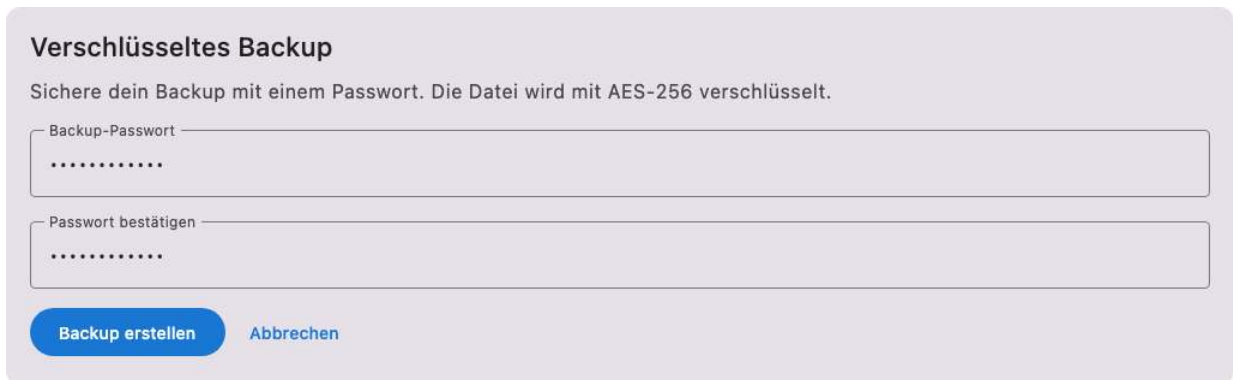


Figure XX: The backup dialog with the encryption option enabled

[!] **Important – store your passphrase safely:** If you lose the passphrase, the encrypted backup **cannot be restored**. Write it down and keep it in a secure place (e.g., a password manager or a printed note in a locked drawer).

Restore an Encrypted Backup

1. Go to **File → Restore from Backup...**
2. Select the encrypted backup file (.zip)
3. The application detects that the backup is encrypted and asks for the passphrase
4. Enter the passphrase
5. Click **Restore**

Figure XX: The restore dialog asking for the passphrase

When to Use Encrypted Backups

- Local hard drive (home computer, not shared): Encryption optional
- Cloud storage (Dropbox, Google Drive, iCloud): **Encryption recommended**
- NAS or shared network drive: **Encryption recommended**
- USB stick / external drive (portable, can be lost): **Encryption strongly recommended**

[i] **Security tip:** Encrypted backups offer peace of mind when backups are stored off-device. Even if someone gains access to the storage, they cannot read your business data without the passphrase.

11.5 Documents, Archive, AI, and DATEV

Document and accounting-related settings are split across several sections in the application. Use **Documents** for generated sales document filenames, **Archive** for traceable storage, **AI** for incoming document analysis, and **DATEV / Tax Advisor** for export parameters.

AI Integration

AI integration is optional and is used for incoming document analysis. It can extract invoice fields from PDFs, suggest payment data, and help choose an expense category.

Supported provider types:

- **Ollama native:** Typical use: Local models on your own computer or server; API key: Usually not required
- **OpenAI-compatible:** Typical use: LM Studio, local gateways, or commercial internet endpoints; API key: Optional or required, depending on provider

Configure AI:

1. Open **Settings** → **AI**.
2. Enter the endpoint URL.
3. Enter an API key if the endpoint requires one.
4. Click **Connect** to detect provider and available models.
5. Select a model.
6. Use **Test message** to verify text and, if available, vision capabilities.

KI-Einstellungen

Verbinde lokale oder OpenAI-kompatible Modelle für Text-, Bild- und Metadatenanalyse.

Anbieter: OpenAI-kompatibel

Basis-URL: http://127.0.0.1:11434/v1

Textmodell: qwen2.5:14b

Bildmodell: llava:13b

API-Schlüssel: ollama-local-no-key

Fähigkeiten
 Textanalyse: verfügbar
 Bildanalyse: verfügbar
 JSON-Modus: aktiviert

Verbindung testen

Figure XX: AI settings with endpoint, API key, detected provider, model selection, and capability test

Known working examples include local Ollama or LM Studio models and OpenAI-compatible hosted models; model availability may vary. Prefer local providers when sensitive supplier invoices should not leave your own environment.

Privacy note: Incoming document contents are transmitted to the selected AI provider during analysis. Check your privacy policy and provider terms before using internet-based endpoints.

Archive Storage

The archive stores documents and exports traceably. Incoming document attachments are moved into archive storage after approval. GoBD exports, Z3 exports, DATEV exports, and published document exports also rely on the archive configuration.

Open **Settings** → **Archive** to choose the archive storage strategy:

- **Local filesystem:** Stores files in a local folder with optional WORM write protection; recommended for most standalone installations
- **S3 Object Lock:** Stores files in an S3-compatible bucket using Object Lock COMPLIANCE; useful for hosted, off-site, or centrally managed archive setups
- **Network path:** Stores files on an SMB network share using a UNC path and optional credentials; useful for terminal-server or centrally managed Windows/NAS setups

The archive uses a fixed structure like `{tenant}/{year}/{month}/{document_type}/`. In client mode, archive paths, WORM, and backups are managed at the host so clients do not diverge in local paths.

Archivspeicher-Optionen

Wähle die passende Archivstrategie für lokale Ablage, WORM-Anforderungen und externe Speicherung.

Lokales Dateisystem
 Direkter Zugriff auf den Archivordner
 WORM optional
 Ideal für Einzelplatz oder NAS

S3 Object Lock
 Compliance-Aufbewahrung im Bucket
 Versionierung und Retention
 Geeignet für revisionssichere Offsite-Archive

Hybrid
 Lokale Arbeitskopie plus externes Langzeitarchiv
 Schnelle Vorschau bei gleichzeitiger WORM-Ablage

Figure XX: Archive settings with local filesystem, S3 Object Lock, and network path

Document Folder

Document Folder

Choose the main folder where all exported PDFs and HTMLs are stored.

Default: Empty (no export possible)

Select:

1. Click **Choose directory**
2. A file selection dialog opens
3. Navigate to the desired folder (e.g., ~/Documents/Invoicer/Invoices/)
4. Click **Select folder**
5. The path is displayed in the text field

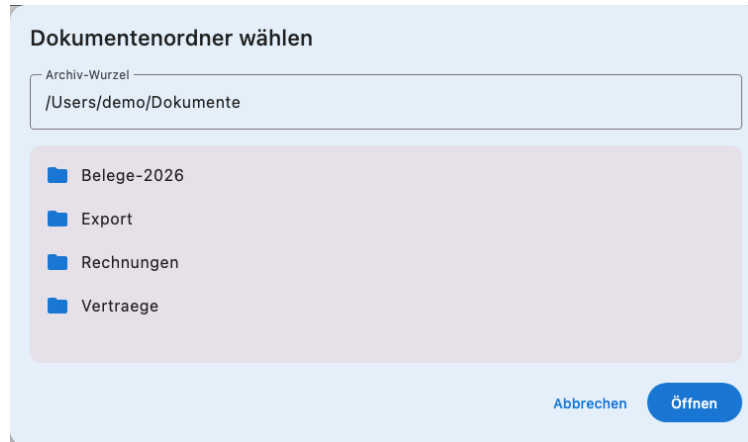


Figure 278: Choose the main folder for documents

Recommended storage locations:

- **Cloud folder:** ~/Dropbox/Invoices/ (automatically backed up to cloud)
- **Local folder:** ~/Documents/Invoices/ (fast, but local only)
- **External drive:** /Volumes/Data/Invoices/ (additional security)

Lokale Konfiguration

Hauptordner für das GoBD-konforme Dokumentenarchiv. Wähle ein leeres Verzeichnis aus oder erstelle ein neues.

Archiv-Wurzel

Archiv-Speicherort: /Users/demo/Dokumente/Invoicer-Archiv

WORM aktiv
Wenn WORM aktiv ist, werden Dateien nach dem Schreiben gesperrt (GoBD).



Figure 279: The selected path is displayed

Note text: "Main folder where all generated documents are saved"

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use a folder in your cloud (Dropbox, Google Drive) so your invoices are automatically backed up and accessible from anywhere.

[!] **Important:** You **must** choose a document folder before you can export PDFs. Without a document folder, an error message appears on export:

Document settings missing

"The document folder has not been configured. Please configure the settings before exporting."

- **Open Settings:** Opens the settings page

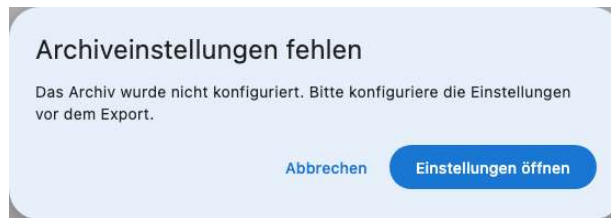


Figure 280: Error message on export without document folder

Document Name Pattern (optional)

Determine how exported PDF files are named and organized.

Default: Empty (standard naming: {document_type}_{document_number})

Available parameters:

You can use the following placeholders to dynamically generate file names:

- {tenant}: Company name of the tenant; Example TechVision_GmbH
- {customer}: Company name of the customer; Example Doe_GmbH
- {year}: Year (4 digits); Example 2025
- {month}: Month (2 digits); Example 11
- {day}: Day (2 digits); Example 16
- {date}: Full date (YYYYMMDD); Example 20251116
- {document_type}: Document type; Example Invoice, Quote, Reminder
- {document_number}: Document number; Example RE-2025-1, Q-2025-1

Namensmuster für Dokumente (optional)

Ermöglicht benutzerdefinierte Benennung für exportierte Dokumente.

Verfügbare Parameter: {tenant}, {customer}, {year}, {month}, {day}, {date}, {document_type}, {document_number}

Beispielmuster: {date}_{document_type}_{document_number}_{tenant}

Ergebnis: 20251116_Rechnung_RE-2025-1_MeineFirma.pdf

```
{customer}/Rechnungen/{date}_{document_type}_{document_number}_{tenant}
```

Figure 281: Enter a document name pattern

Note text:

”Pattern for organizing documents. If empty, files are named as {document_type}_{document_number} (Invoice_RE-2025-1.pdf)

Available parameters: {tenant}, {customer}, {year}, {month}, {day}, {date}, {document_type}, {document_number}

Example pattern: {customer}/Invoices/{date}_{document_type}_{document_number}_{tenant} Result: Doe_GmbH/Invoices/20251116_Invoice_RE-2025-1_MyCompany.pdf”

Placeholder: ”Leave empty for default: {document_type}_{document_number}”

Examples for Document Name Patterns

Example 1: Default (leave empty) Pattern: (empty)

Result:

```
Invoice_RE-2025-1.pdf
Quote_Q-2025-1.pdf
Reminder_M-2025-1-L1.pdf
```

Namensmuster für Dokumente (optional)

Ermöglicht benutzerdefinierte Benennung für exportierte Dokumente.

Verfügbare Parameter: {tenant}, {customer}, {year}, {month}, {day}, {date}, {document_type}, {document_number}

Beispielmuster: {date}_{document_type}_{document_number}_{tenant}

Ergebnis: 20251116_Rechnung_RE-2025-1_MeineFirma.pdf

Leer lassen für Standard: {document_type}_{document_number}

Ergebnis

Rechnung_RE-2025-1.pdf

Angebot_Q-2025-1.pdf

Mahnung_M-2025-1-L1.pdf

Figure 282: Default document names

Example 2: Organized by customer Pattern: {customer}/{document_type}_{document_number}

Result:

Doe_GmbH/Invoice_RE-2025-1.pdf

Doe_GmbH/Quote_Q-2025-1.pdf

Acme_Corporation/Invoice_RE-2025-2.pdf

Folder structure:

Document folder/

- Doe_GmbH/
 - Invoice_RE-2025-1.pdf
 - Quote_Q-2025-1.pdf
- Acme_Corporation/
 - Invoice_RE-2025-2.pdf

Namensmuster für Dokumente (optional)

Ermöglicht benutzerdefinierte Benennung für exportierte Dokumente.

Verfügbare Parameter: {tenant}, {customer}, {year}, {month}, {day}, {date}, {document_type}, {document_number}

Beispielmuster: {date}_{document_type}_{document_number}_{tenant}

Ergebnis: 20251116_Rechnung_RE-2025-1_MeineFirma.pdf

{customer}/{document_type}_{document_number}

Ergebnis

Mustermann_GmbH/Rechnung_RE-2025-1.pdf

Mustermann_GmbH/Angebot_Q-2025-1.pdf

Acme_Corporation/Rechnung_RE-2025-2.pdf

Ordnerstruktur

```
Dokumentenordner/  
├── Mustermann_GmbH/  
│   ├── Rechnung_RE-2025-1.pdf  
│   └── Angebot_Q-2025-1.pdf  
└── Acme_Corporation/  
    └── Rechnung_RE-2025-2.pdf
```

Figure 283: Documents sorted by customer

[i] **Pro Tip:** Ideal if you want all documents (invoices, quotes, reminders) for each customer in one place.

Example 3: Organized by year and document type Pattern: {year}/{document_type}/{document_number}_{customer}

Result:

2025/Invoice/RE-2025-1_Doe_GmbH.pdf

2025/Invoice/RE-2025-2_Acme_Corporation.pdf

2025/Quote/Q-2025-1_Doe_GmbH.pdf

Folder structure:

```

Document folder/
- 2025/
  - Invoice/
    - RE-2025-1_Doe_GmbH.pdf
    - RE-2025-2_Acme_Corporation.pdf
  - Quote/
    - Q-2025-1_Doe_GmbH.pdf

```

Namensmuster für Dokumente (optional)

Ermöglicht benutzerdefinierte Benennung für exportierte Dokumente.

Verfügbare Parameter: {tenant}, {customer}, {year}, {month}, {day}, {date}, {document_type}, {document_number}

Beispielmuster: {date}_{document_type}_{document_number}_{tenant}
 Ergebnis: 20251116_Rechnung_RE-2025-1_MeineFirma.pdf

{year}/{document_type}/{document_number}_{customer}

Ergebnis

```

2025/Rechnung/RE-2025-1_Mustermann_GmbH.pdf
2025/Rechnung/RE-2025-2_Acme_Corporation.pdf
2025/Angebot/Q-2025-1_Mustermann_GmbH.pdf

```

Ordnerstruktur

```

Dokumentenordner/
├── 2025/
│   ├── Rechnung/
│   │   ├── RE-2025-1_Mustermann_GmbH.pdf
│   │   ├── RE-2025-2_Acme_Corporation.pdf
│   └── Angebot/
│       └── Q-2025-1_Mustermann_GmbH.pdf

```

Figure 284: Documents sorted by year and type

[i] **Pro Tip:** Ideal for year-end closing and archiving – all invoices for a year are in one folder.

Example 4: With full date **Pattern:** {customer}/Invoices/{date}_{document_type}_{document_number}_{tenant}

Result:

```

Doe_GmbH/Invoices/20251116_Invoice_RE-2025-1_TechVision_GmbH.pdf
Doe_GmbH/Invoices/20251117_Invoice_RE-2025-2_TechVision_GmbH.pdf
Acme_Corporation/Invoices/20251116_Invoice_RE-2025-3_TechVision_GmbH.pdf

```

Namensmuster für Dokumente (optional)

Ermöglicht benutzerdefinierte Benennung für exportierte Dokumente.

Verfügbare Parameter: {tenant}, {customer}, {year}, {month}, {day}, {date}, {document_type}, {document_number}

Beispielmuster: {date}_{document_type}_{document_number}_{tenant}
 Ergebnis: 20251116_Rechnung_RE-2025-1_MeineFirma.pdf

{customer}/Rechnungen/{date}_{document_type}_{document_number}_{tenant}

Ergebnis

```

Mustermann_GmbH/Rechnungen/20251116_Rechnung_RE-2025-1_TechVision_GmbH.pdf
Mustermann_GmbH/Rechnungen/20251117_Rechnung_RE-2025-2_TechVision_GmbH.pdf
Acme_Corporation/Rechnungen/20251116_Rechnung_RE-2025-3_TechVision_GmbH.pdf

```

Figure 285: Documents with full date

[i] **Pro Tip:** Ideal if you create multiple invoices per day – the date helps with chronological sorting.

Pattern Validation

The document name pattern **must contain both placeholders** {document_type} and {document_number}, otherwise an error message appears:

”Pattern must contain both placeholders {document_type} and {document_number}”

Namensmuster für Dokumente (optional)

Ermöglicht benutzerdefinierte Benennung für exportierte Dokumente.

Verfügbare Parameter: {tenant}, {customer}, {year}, {month}, {day}, {date}, {document_type}, {document_number}

Beispielmuster: {date}_{document_type}_{document_number}_{tenant}

Ergebnis: 20251116_Rechnung_RE-2025-1_MeineFirma.pdf

{customer}/{date}

Validierungsfehler

Muster muss beide Platzhalter {document_type} und {document_number} enthalten

Ergebnis

Ungültige Beispiele:

{customer}/{date}

{year}/{month}/{customer}

Figure 286: Error message for invalid pattern

Why?

These two placeholders are **mandatory** to guarantee unique file names. Without them, files could be overwritten.

Invalid examples:

- {customer}/{date} (missing {document_type} and {document_number})
- {year}/{month}/{customer} (missing {document_type} and {document_number})

Valid examples:

- {document_type}_{document_number} (Minimal)
- {customer}/{document_type}_{document_number} (With customer)
- {year}/{document_type}/{document_number}_{customer} (With year and customer)

[i] Pro Tip: Test your pattern by exporting a test invoice – this way you immediately see if the folder structure fits.

Special Characters in Parameters

If company or customer names contain special characters (e.g., &, /, \), they are automatically replaced with underscores (_) to avoid file name errors.

Examples:

- Miller & Co. GmbH → Miller__Co__GmbH
- A/B Testing GmbH → A_B_Testing_GmbH
- Tech\Vision → Tech_Vision

Sonderzeichen in Parametern

Sonderzeichen werden automatisch durch Unterstriche ersetzt, damit Dateinamen gültig bleiben.

Originalname	Im Dateinamen
Müller & Co. GmbH	Mueller__Co__GmbH
A/B Testing GmbH	A_B_Testing_GmbH
Tech\Vision	Tech_Vision

Figure 287: Special characters are replaced with underscores

Archive Root

For GoBD functions such as **Audit log export**, **Z3 export**, **DATEV export**, published sales documents, and approved incoming documents, the application uses a separate document archive.

Setting:

- **Archive Root:** Main folder for the document archive with a GoBD-oriented structure

Usage:

1. Open **Settings**
2. Find **Archive Root**
3. Click **Choose directory**
4. Select an empty directory (or create a new one)

Notes:

- The archive folder uses a fixed structure for GoBD-oriented workflows (tenant/year/month/...)
- If you change the archive location, the application can migrate existing files or you can start fresh

Changing the archive location (Archive migration) If you change an **Archive Root** that has already been used, the application can offer a migration.

Dialog title: Archive Location Changed

Options in the dialog:

- **Move Files:** Copies the existing archive files to the new location (progress is shown in the dialog *Migrating Archive*).
- **Start Fresh:** Keeps existing files at the old location and uses the new location for future exports.

Note:

- If there is not enough disk space, the application disables **Move Files** and shows a corresponding warning.
- [i] **Tip:** Place the archive root on storage that is backed up regularly (e.g., NAS/backup drive).
-

Write Protection (WORM)

Write protection (WORM = *Write Once Read Many*) protects archived files from accidental modifications.

Setting:

- **Write protection (WORM):** If enabled, archived documents are set to read-only after export

Important notes:

- Enabling/disabling can lock/unlock existing archive files and is recorded in the audit log
 - If write protection is disabled, you are responsible for storing archived documents in an immutable way
- [!] **Important:** Before enabling, verify that your archive storage supports meaningful write protection.
-

DATEV / Tax Advisor (Booking Batch Export)

For the DATEV export (File → Export DATEV (Buchungsstapel) ...), DATEV parameters must be configured in settings.

Settings (DATEV):

- **Advisor number:** DATEV number of your tax advisor (a default value may be possible)
- **Client number:** Provided by your tax advisor (required for export)

- **Revenue account:** Default account for postings (e.g., 8400/8300)
- **Expense account:** Default fallback account for incoming documents without a mapped expense category account
- **Require mapped expense accounts:** Blocks incoming documents from DATEV export when they would need the fallback expense account
- **Export encoding:** Character encoding for the export file (ISO-8859-1 for older DATEV versions)
- **Fiscal year start:** Start of your fiscal year (often January 1st)

Why fiscal year start matters:

- The export period must not span across two fiscal years. The application uses this setting to validate your selection.

DATEV- und Steuerberater-Einstellungen

Steuerberater-Stammdaten und Standardkonten für Export und Vorkontierung.

Beraternummer 81234	Mandantennummer 471100
Debitorenkonto 10000	Kreditorenkonto 70000

Standardkonten

8400 Erlöse 19 %

1576 Vorsteuer 19 %

1200 Bank

1360 Geldtransit

Steuerberater-Export aktiv
DATEV-Exporte werden mit Berater- und Mandantenstammdaten vorausgefüllt.



Figure XX: DATEV settings with advisor number, client number, and default accounts

S3-Compatible Archive Storage

As an alternative to the local filesystem, you can configure an **S3-compatible storage backend** for the GoBD archive. This is useful if you have a NAS with S3 support or want to use a cloud object storage service for compliance purposes.

[i] Recommendation: Test your configuration with a non-production document first, then verify the archive files are visible in your S3 bucket before relying on this setup in production.

When to Consider S3 Storage

- You have a **NAS device** (e.g., Synology, QNAP) that exposes an S3-compatible API
- Your organization requires **off-site archiving** in cloud object storage
- You want the archive to be accessible from multiple computers

Configuration Fields To enable the S3 backend, open **Settings → Archive**, choose **S3**, and configure the bucket:

- **Endpoint URL:** URL of the S3-compatible service (e.g., <https://s3.eu-central-1.amazonaws.com> or your NAS address)
- **Bucket name:** The name of the S3 bucket to use for the archive
- **Access key:** S3 access key ID
- **Secret key:** S3 secret access key
- **Region:** Region of the bucket (e.g., eu-central-1; may be optional for self-hosted services)

S3-kompatibler Archivspeicher

Konfiguration des S3-kompatiblen Archiv-Backends für externe oder NAS-basierte Archivierung.

Endpoint-URL
https://s3.eu-central-1.amazonaws.com

Bucket-Name
invoicer-archiv

Region
eu-central-1

Access Key
AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE

Secret Key
.....

Objekt-Lock aktiv
Aufbewahrung: 10 Jahre, Compliance-Modus

Verbindung testen

Figure XX: S3-compatible archive backend configuration

[i] Recommendation: Test your configuration with a non-production document first, then verify the archive files are visible in your S3 bucket before relying on this setup.

SMB Network Path Archive Storage

With **Network path**, you can store the GoBD archive on an SMB/CIFS share. Enter the location as a Windows UNC path, for example:

```
\\server\share\agynamix-archive
```

The share does not need to be mapped as a Windows drive. AGYNAMIX Invoicer connects directly to the SMB server and uses the credentials entered in the wizard.

When to Consider Network Path Storage

- You run AGYNAMIX Invoicer on a terminal server and want the archive on a centrally managed share
- Your organization uses a NAS or file server for central archive storage
- The archive should be separate from the application data directory and protected by server ACLs

Configuration Fields To enable the SMB backend, open **Settings → Archive**, choose **Network path**, and configure the connection:

- **UNC path:** Network path to the archive root, e.g. `\\server\share\agynamix-archive`
- **Domain/workgroup:** Optional, if your SMB server requires a domain or workgroup
- **Username:** Optional; DOMAIN\user is split into domain and username
- **Password:** Optional; stored encrypted in the password store and not written to ordinary settings

If domain, username, and password are all blank, the application may try guest or anonymous access. As soon as you enter explicit credentials, those credentials are used; a failed login is not silently retried as guest access.

Before saving, you must run **Test connection**. The test creates the archive root and `.metadata`, writes a small test file, reads it back, and deletes it best-effort. You can continue only after the test succeeds.

[!] Important: Network path and S3 Object Lock are advanced archive storage features and require the matching license tier. Local WORM write protection is not available, or is only degraded, for SMB in this first implementation. Use server, NTFS, or share permissions to protect archived files organizationally.

When switching from local storage or S3 to SMB, the application can migrate existing archive files. The archive structure and relative document paths are preserved.

11.6 Updates

Automatically Check for Updates

Enable or disable automatic update checking on application start.

Default: Enabled (recommended)

Enable/Disable:

1. Click the **switch** next to "Automatically check for updates"
2. The setting is saved immediately

Updates

Beim Start automatisch nach neuen Anwendungsversionen suchen

Automatisch nach Updates suchen

Empfohlen, damit wichtige Bugfixes und neue Funktionen nicht verpasst werden.



Figure 288: Enable or disable automatic update checking

Note text: "Automatically check for new application versions on startup"

What Happens with Update Checking Enabled?

1. **On startup**, the application checks in the background if a new version is available
2. **If a new version is available**, a notification appears:

Update available

"A new version (v1.7.1) is available. Do you want to download it now?"

- **Download:** Opens the download page
- **Later:** Close dialog



Figure 289: Notification when update is available

3. **If no new version is available**, no notification appears (silent check)

[i] **Pro Tip:** Keep automatic update checking enabled to not miss important bug fixes or new features.

Manual Update Check

You can manually check for updates at any time:

1. Click **Help** in the top menu bar
2. Select **Check for updates**
3. A dialog shows the result:
 - **Update available:** Shows version number and download link
 - **No updates:** "You are using the latest version"

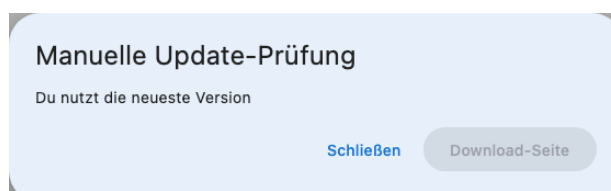


Figure 290: Manual update check via Help menu

11.7 Email

This section covers the application-wide configuration for sending emails.

[!] **Important:** To send documents via email from Invoicer, you must configure an email sending method first.

Note: Sending emails requires a **Pro** (or higher) license tier. If your license tier is below Pro, the email configuration UI remains visible so you can set up your SMTP/IMAP settings in advance, but the actual send action will be disabled until you upgrade.

SMTP (Outgoing Mail)

Use SMTP settings to define how Invoicer sends outgoing emails.

Typical settings include:

- SMTP server/host and port
- Security (e.g., TLS/STARTTLS)
- Authentication (username/password)
- Sender name and sender email address

SMTP

Einstellungen für ausgehende E-Mails.

Absendername TechVision GmbH		Absenderadresse billing@techvision.example	
Host smtp.mailbox.org	Port 587	Sicherheit STARTTLS	
Benutzername billing@techvision.example			
Passwort			

SMTP testen

Figure 291a: SMTP settings for outgoing mail

IMAP (Copy to Sent Folder)

If enabled, Invoicer can copy the sent email to your mail account's **Sent** folder via IMAP.

Typical settings include:

- IMAP server/host and port
- Security (TLS)
- Authentication
- Sent folder name/path (provider-specific)

IMAP

Kopie in den Gesendet-Ordner nach erfolgreichem Versand.

Kopie nach Gesendet

Gesendete Nachrichten werden zusätzlich im Mailkonto gespeichert.



Host imap.mailbox.org	Port 993	Sicherheit TLS
Benutzername billing@techvision.example		
Gesendet-Ordner Gesendet		
Erkannte Ordner Gesendet Sent Sent Items		

Figure 291b: IMAP settings for copying to the Sent folder

[i] Pro Tip: If your provider uses a non-standard Sent folder name, you may need to enter it exactly as shown by your mail client (e.g., "Sent", "Gesendet", "Sent Items").

Test Configuration

Use the test actions in this settings section to validate your configuration before you start sending real documents.

[i] Hint: If your license tier does not include email sending, the SMTP/IMAP test buttons verify the connection only – no test email is actually sent. A "connection only" label is shown next to each test button to make this clear.

11.8 Document Emails

Document emails are based on templates so you don't have to rewrite the subject and message body for every document.

Templates (Subject & Body)

You can define:

- A **subject template**
- A **body template** (Markdown)

Templates can contain **tokens/placeholders** that are replaced with real values (e.g., customer name, document number).

Dokument-E-Mail-Vorlagen

Vorlagen für Betreff und Nachrichtentext mit Token-Unterstützung.

Betreff Deine Rechnung {document_number}
Nachrichtentext (Markdown) Hallo {customer_name}, anbei findest du {document_type_label} {document_number}. Viele Grüße {tenant}
Verfügbare Token {customer_name} {document_number} {document_type_label} {tenant}

Vorschau

Figure 291c: Edit subject and body templates

Token List and Insertion

Invoicer provides a token list. You can insert tokens into the last active input field (subject or body).

[!] **Important:** Unknown tokens are shown as warnings. Fix them before sending to avoid placeholders leaking to the customer.

Preview

Use **Preview** to render the final email (including token replacement) before sending.

Language Variants

You can maintain language-specific templates (e.g., German/English) so customers receive emails matching their document language.

11.9 User Management

If enabled for your installation and your account has the required permissions, you can manage users and roles.

Typical actions:

- Create users
- Assign roles/permissions
- Set or change passwords
- Clear a password entirely (Standalone mode only)
- Delete users (with confirmation)

Password actions depend on the operating mode:

- In **Standalone** mode, you can set, change, or completely clear a password.
- In **Host/Client** setups, administrators can set or change another user's password from any connected machine.
- In **Host/Client** setups, completely clearing a password is not available.
- Password reset by recovery key is a **restricted administrator action**. Each client machine still has its own local recovery key for machine-local secrets, but resetting a shared user password requires the recovery key from the **server instance**.
- The server recovery key should be stored offline and known only to administrators.

Benutzerverwaltung

Benutzer, Rollen und Berechtigungen verwalten.

		Benutzer anlegen
Anna Berger	anna@techvision.example	Administrator
Lukas Winter	lukas@techvision.example	Buchhaltung
Mina Roth	mina@techvision.example	Vertrieb

Figure 291d: User management screen

11.10 Error Handling

If an error occurs while saving settings, an error message appears above the settings card.

Example:

Error saving settings

"Settings could not be saved. Please try again."

- **Try again:** Retry
- **×**: Close error message

Einstellungen

Fehlerbehandlung bei Speicherproblemen.

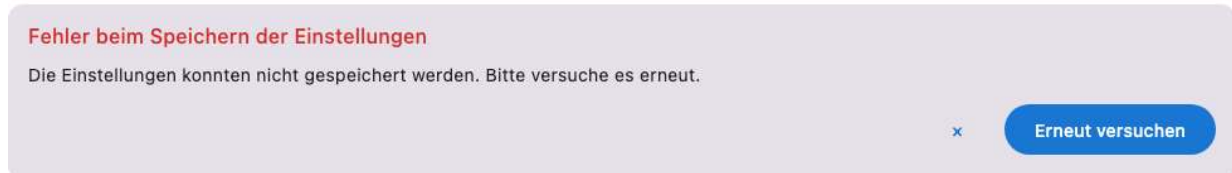


Figure 291: Error message for save problems

[i] **Pro Tip:** If save errors occur, check whether the application has write permissions for the database file:

- **Linux:** `chmod +w ~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db`
- **macOS:** `chmod +w ~/Library/Application\ Support/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db`

11.11 Discard Invalid Settings

If you enter invalid settings (e.g., a document name pattern without {document_type} and {document_number}), a dialog appears when leaving the settings page:

Invalid settings

"The document name pattern contains validation errors. Do you want to discard the invalid settings?"

- **Discard invalid settings:** Undo changes
- **Continue editing:** Stay in form



Figure 292: Dialog for invalid settings

[i] **Pro Tip:** Choose **Discard invalid settings** to automatically return to the last valid configuration.

11.12 Reset Settings

There is currently no one-click "reset all settings" button in the user interface.

If you need to reset your settings, please contact support:

Email: support@agynamix.de

Subject: "Settings Reset Request"

Please include your operating system and application version (see **Help** → **About**) so support can assist you quickly.

[!] **Note:** Resetting settings requires access to the internal database and is not something we recommend users attempt manually, as an incorrect change could affect your invoice data. Our support team can guide you safely.

11.13 Practical Workflows

Workflow 1: Initial Setup (5–10 minutes, one-time)

Goal: Configure all important settings for optimal use.

Steps:

1. **Choose design** (30 seconds)
 - Open Settings
 - Choose **System Default** (recommended)
2. **Configure backup** (3 minutes)
 - Frequency: **Daily** (recommended)
 - Backup directory: Choose a cloud folder (e.g., ~/Dropbox/Backups/Invoicer/)
 - Backup retention: **1 Month** (recommended)
3. **Choose document folder** (2 minutes)
 - Document folder: Choose a cloud folder (e.g., ~/Dropbox/Invoices/)
4. **Document name pattern (optional)** (2 minutes)
 - If desired: {customer}/Invoices/{document_type}_{document_number}
 - Otherwise: Leave empty (default)
5. **Enable updates** (10 seconds)
 - Automatically check for updates: **Enabled** (recommended)

Result: All settings are configured, automatic backups are enabled, documents are saved in the cloud.

[i] **Pro Tip:** Test the backup immediately by closing the application and checking in the backup directory if a backup file was created.

Workflow 2: Backup Strategy for Important Data (10 minutes)

Goal: Maximum data security through cloud backups and local copies.

Steps:

1. **Configure cloud backup** (3 minutes)
 - Open Settings
 - Frequency: **Daily**
 - Backup directory: ~/Dropbox/Backups/Invoicer/ (or Google Drive)
 - Backup retention: **1 Month**
2. **Local backup to external drive** (5 minutes)
 - Close the application
 - Open **File** → **Create Backup...**
 - Choose a folder on an external drive (e.g., /Volumes/Backup/Invoicer/)
 - Save the backup

3. Document backup plan (2 minutes)

- Note:
 - Cloud backup: Daily automatic
 - External drive: Monthly manual (e.g., on the 1st of each month)

Result: You have double security – automatic cloud backups (daily) and manual backups on external drive (monthly).

[*] **Workflow Tip:** Create a calendar entry "Invoicer Backup" on the 1st of each month as a reminder for the manual backup to external drive.

Workflow 3: Document Organization by Customer (5 minutes)

Goal: All documents for a customer in one folder.

Steps:

1. **Choose document folder** (1 minute)
 - Open Settings
 - Document folder: ~/Documents/Invoices/
2. **Set document name pattern** (2 minutes)
 - Pattern: {customer}/{document_type}_{document_number}
3. **Export test invoice** (2 minutes)
 - Create a test invoice for customer "Doe GmbH"
 - Export as PDF
 - Check if folder ~/Documents/Invoices/Doe_GmbH/ was created

Result: All documents are organized by customer – each customer has their own folder.

Example folder structure:

```
~/Documents/Invoices/  
- Doe_GmbH/  
  - Invoice_RE-2025-1.pdf  
  - Quote_Q-2025-1.pdf  
- Acme_Corporation/  
  - Invoice_RE-2025-2.pdf
```

[i] **Pro Tip:** If you send documents to customers, you can simply send the entire customer folder as a ZIP archive (contains all invoices, quotes, etc.).

Workflow 4: Automatically Switch Design by Time of Day (1 minute)

Goal: Use light design during the day, automatically switch to dark design in the evening.

Steps:

1. **Enable system default** (30 seconds)
 - Open Settings
 - Design: Choose **System Default**
2. **Check operating system setting** (30 seconds)
 - macOS: **System Preferences** → **Appearance** → **Automatic**
 - Windows 10/11: **Settings** → **Personalization** → **Colors** → **Choose mode: Automatic**
 - Linux (GNOME): **Settings** → **Appearance** → **Automatic**

Result: The application automatically switches between light and dark depending on time of day (e.g., dark from 8 PM).

[i] **Pro Tip:** If your operating system doesn't support automatic switching, you can manually switch between light and dark in the application at any time.

11.14 Pro Tips for Settings

[>] **Use system default for design:** Enable **System Default** instead of manually choosing Light/Dark – this way the application automatically switches with your operating system.

[i] **Daily backups in cloud:** Use **Daily** + cloud folder (Dropbox/Google Drive) for double security – this way your data is protected even if the hard drive fails.

[*] **Backup retention 1 month:** Use **1 Month** instead of "Keep" – this gives you enough backups to restore without taking up too much storage space.

[i] **Document folder before first export:** Configure the document folder **before** the first PDF export – otherwise an error message appears.

[~] **Document name pattern with customer:** Use `{customer}/{document_type}_{document_number}` for better organization – all documents for a customer are in one folder.

[i] **Date in file name for chronology:** If you create multiple invoices per day, use `{date}_{document_type}_{document_number}` for chronological sorting.

[*] **Keep update checking enabled:** Keep automatic update checking enabled to not miss bug fixes or new features.

[>] **Don't disable backup reminder:** If you use "None" backups, don't disable the reminder – it protects against accidental data loss.

[i] **External drive for extra security:** Additionally create a manual backup to external drive monthly – this protects you in case of cloud outage or account problems.

[*] **Test document name pattern:** Test your pattern with a test invoice before exporting many documents – this avoids confusing folder structures.

11.15 Server (Operating Mode)

The **Server** section lets you configure how this installation operates in a multi-computer setup. You can switch between three operating modes:

- **Standalone** – single-machine setup (default). No network sharing.
- **Host (Server)** – this computer acts as the central server for other clients.
- **Client** – this computer connects to a host and synchronizes data from it.

To change the mode, click **Change Mode** and follow the wizard. The wizard guides you through each step, including entering the host URL and authentication token when switching to Client mode, or configuring the server bind address and port when switching to Host mode.

Note: Switching to Host mode requires an **Ultimate** license. Client mode does not require a license – the client inherits the host's license tier.

For a full explanation of each mode, setup instructions, headless server operation, and troubleshooting, see Chapter 14: Operating Modes.

11.16 Admin Area

The **Admin** area is a dedicated section of the sidebar that gives you access to system-wide configurations affecting how documents are numbered and how taxes are calculated. Think of it as the "back office" of your Invoicer – settings you usually configure once at the start and only revisit when your business situation changes.

To open the Admin area, click **Admin** in the left sidebar.



Figure XX: Admin area in the sidebar

The Admin area has two sub-sections:

- **Tax Rules** – define which tax rates apply to which types of transactions and customers
- **Number Ranges** – control how document numbers are generated for each document type

11.17 Tax Rules

What Is a Tax Rule?

A **tax rule** is a named configuration that combines a tax rate with a description of when it applies. Unlike a bare tax rate (e.g., "19 %"), a tax rule explains the *purpose*: "Standard VAT (Germany, 19 %)", "Reduced VAT (Germany, 7 %)", or "Reverse Charge (EU B2B)".

Using tax rules – rather than entering a percentage by hand each time – keeps your documents consistent and makes the logic transparent to you and any auditor reviewing your records.

Built-In Tax Presets

AGYNAMEX Invoicer ships with presets for the most common scenarios in the DACH region:

- Germany: Standard VAT with 19 %
- Germany: Reduced VAT with 7 %
- Austria: Standard VAT with 20 %
- Austria: Reduced VAT with 10 %
- Switzerland: Standard VAT with 7.7 %
- All: Tax-free / Exempt with 0 %

These presets are shown in the **Tax Rules** list in the Admin area.

Name	Steuersatz	Verwendung
Standard 19 %	19,00 %	Buchungen, Kartakassen
Ermäßigter 7 %	7,00 %	Bücher, Kultur
Steuerfrei EU	0,00 %	Innergemeinschaftliche Leistungen

Figure XX: The tax rules list with built-in presets

Automatic Tax Selection Based on Customer Location

When you create a new line item in a document, AGYNAMIX Invoicer can automatically suggest the correct tax rule based on the customer's country. For example:

- Customer is in **Germany** → "Standard VAT (19 %)" is suggested
- Customer is in the **EU (business, VAT ID present)** → "Reverse Charge" is suggested
- Customer is **outside the EU** → "Tax-free / Export" is suggested

This automatic suggestion reduces errors and saves time, especially if you work with international customers.

Create a Custom Tax Rule

If none of the presets fit your situation (e.g., you sell digital services to EU consumers and need the customer's local VAT rate), you can create your own rule:

1. In the Admin area, click **Tax Rules**
2. Click **+ New**
3. Fill in the fields:
 - **Name:** A clear description (e.g., "Reverse Charge EU")
 - **Tax rate:** The percentage (e.g., 0 for Reverse Charge)
 - **Note / label:** Optional text that appears on the invoice (e.g., "VAT liability transfers to the recipient")
 - **Country / scope:** Which country or situation this rule applies to
4. Click **Save**

Steuerregel erstellen

Name
Standard 19 %

Steuersatz
19,00 %

Beschreibung
Regulärer Umsatzsteuersatz für Dienstleistungen

Abbrechen **Speichern**

Figure XX: Dialog for creating a custom tax rule

How Tax Rules Interact with Customers and Documents

- **On the Customer card:** You can set a *default tax rule* for a specific customer. This overrides the automatic suggestion when you create a document for that customer.
- **In a Document:** Each line item has its own tax rule, pre-filled from the customer default or the general suggestion. You can manually change it per line item.
- **On the PDF:** The tax breakdown on the printed invoice reflects exactly the rules used.

Common Scenarios in Plain Language

- German customer, standard goods/services: Standard VAT (Germany, 19 %)
- German customer, food/books/cultural: Reduced VAT (Germany, 7 %)
- Business customer in another EU country (has VAT ID): Reverse Charge
- Customer in a non-EU country: Tax-free / Export
- Internal note line or deposit: Tax-free / Exempt

[i] **Pro Tip:** Set the default tax rule on each customer card once – you won't have to think about it when creating documents for that customer again.

[!] **Important:** Tax rules affect the amounts shown on legal documents. If you are unsure which rule applies to your situation, consult your tax advisor.

11.18 Number Ranges

What Are Number Ranges?

Every document in AGYNAMIX Invoicer receives a unique, sequential number (e.g., RE-2024-001). **Number Ranges** let you control the exact format and counter for each document type separately.

A number range defines:

- The **prefix** (e.g., RE for invoices, ANG for quotes)
- Whether and how the **year** is embedded in the number
- The **current counter** (starting point)
- Whether the counter **resets automatically at the start of each year**

Opening Number Ranges

1. Click **Admin** in the left sidebar
2. Click **Number Ranges**



Figure XX: The Number Ranges screen with one range per document type

Document Types and Their Ranges

Each of the following document types has its own number range:

- Invoice → RE- $\{year\}$ - $\{counter\}$
- Quote → ANG- $\{year\}$ - $\{counter\}$
- Payment Reminder → MAH- $\{year\}$ - $\{counter\}$
- Correction Invoice → KOR- $\{year\}$ - $\{counter\}$

Fields of a Number Range

- **Prefix:** Characters at the start of the number (e.g., RE)
- **Year pattern:** How the year appears (e.g., $\{year\}$ for 4 digits, $\{year2\}$ for 2 digits, empty for no year)
- **Counter:** The current number (increments with each new document)
- **Year rollover:** If enabled, the counter resets to 1 at the start of each calendar year

Live Preview

As you change any field, a **live preview** shows exactly how the next document number will look (e.g., RE-2025-001). This helps you confirm the format before saving.



Figure XX: Live preview shows the resulting document number immediately

Year-End Rollover

Rollover enabled: At the start of each year, the counter automatically resets to 1. The first invoice of 2026 would be RE-2026-001 regardless of how many invoices you created in 2025.

Rollover disabled: The counter never resets. This gives you a single ascending sequence across all years (e.g., invoice 4,500 in year 3 of using the application).

Which to choose? Most users in the DACH region prefer rollover enabled, as it makes the year clearly visible in every invoice number and matches common bookkeeping conventions.

Best Practices for Naming Schemes

- **Keep prefixes short** (2–3 characters): RE not RECHNUNG
- **Include the year:** The year in the number makes it immediately clear which fiscal year a document belongs to
- **Start counters at 1** (or a round number like 1000 if you want to obscure volume)
- **Be consistent:** Once you publish documents under a scheme, avoid changing it mid-year

[!] Important: Consequences of Changing a Number Range

Once invoices have been published under a number scheme:

- Changing the prefix or year pattern will create a gap or inconsistency in the numbering sequence
- Under GoBD guidelines, invoice numbers must be sequential and gap-free
- **Recommendation:** Only change number ranges at the start of a new fiscal year, or before publishing the first document in a series

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use the live preview to double-check the format before saving – you cannot undo the counter value once it has been incremented by a published document.

Continue with **Chapter 12:** GoBD Support

12. GoBD Support

GoBD support (Principles for the proper management and storage of books, records, and documents in electronic form as well as for data access) is a central component of the application. It helps you document business transactions traceably, protect them against unnoticed retroactive changes, and prepare them for tax audits.

In this chapter you will learn:

- **What GoBD means** and why it's important
- **Which requirements** the application fulfills
- **How the audit log** works
- **How to create exports** for tax audits
- **How to verify the integrity** of your data
- **How incoming documents** are reviewed, approved, archived, and exported



Figure 293: GoBD-oriented features help protect your data

12.1 What Is GoBD?

Definition

GoBD are binding guidelines from the Federal Ministry of Finance for electronic bookkeeping. They regulate how companies and self-employed individuals must digitally store their business data so they are recognized under tax law.

Goal: Ensure that digital records are complete, correct, timely, traceable, and immutable.

Why Is GoBD Important?

During a tax audit (operational audit), you must be able to prove:

- That all invoices were recorded correctly
- That no invoices were changed retroactively
- That all business transactions are completely documented
- That data was archived traceably and protected against unnoticed changes

[!] **Important:** Violations of GoBD can lead to:

- **Estimates** by the tax office (often to your disadvantage)
- **Tax back payments** with interest
- **Fines** for gross negligence

[i] **Pro Tip:** The application automatically supports key GoBD requirements. Whether your concrete use meets GoBD expectations also depends on correct configuration, regular backups, and use of the workflows described in this chapter.

12.2 The Seven GoBD Principles

GoBD defines seven principles that your accounting system must fulfill:

1. Orderliness

Requirement: The system must be documented (process documentation).

How the application fulfills this:

- This user manual serves as process documentation
- All business processes are clearly defined
- Changes are documented in the audit log

2. Completeness

Requirement: All business transactions must be recorded, no gaps in the audit log.

How the application fulfills this:

- All sales documents, incoming documents, payments, and relevant state changes are logged
- Gap-free numbering (RE-2025-1, RE-2025-2, RE-2025-3, ...)
- Deleted drafts are logged to avoid gaps

3. Accuracy

Requirement: Data must be correct and complete.

How the application fulfills this:

- Validation of all required fields (customer, amount, date, tax number)
- Automatic calculation of VAT
- Source documents (PDFs) are stored unchanged
- Incoming document metadata must be reviewed before approval; AI and e-invoice extraction are input aids, not a substitute for checking the source document

4. Timely Bookings and Records

Requirement: Business transactions must be recorded promptly.

How the application fulfills this:

- Publication timestamp is set automatically
- Audit log entries contain precise timestamps (millisecond accuracy)
- No manual date changes possible

5. Immutability

Requirement: Original data may not be changed after publication.

How the application fulfills this:

- **Published invoices are immutable** (Status: Published → no more editing)
- Changes only via **correction invoices** (new invoice with negated line items)
- **Approved incoming documents are archived** and normal attachment changes are locked
- Incoming documents exported to DATEV keep category and account snapshots for traceability
- Cryptographic hash chain prevents undetected manipulation

Figure 294: Published invoices cannot be edited

[i] Pro Tip: If you discover an error in a published invoice, use **Create correction invoice** – this way the original invoice is preserved and the change is traceable.

6. Traceability

Requirement: Business transactions must be traceable from start to finish.

How the application fulfills this:

- **Audit log** documents all status changes
- Transaction IDs link related events (e.g., invoice published + PDF exported)
- Assignment to customers, tenants, periods

Datei	Bearbeiten	Ansicht	Hilfe
Prüfprotokoll-Einträge			
Alle wesentlichen Geschäftsvorfälle werden unveränderbar gespeichert.			
Sequenz 1234 · Rechnung veröffentlicht · max.mustermann · 16.11.2025 14:35:22			
Sequenz 1235 · PDF exportiert · RE-2025-42.pdf · Hash d4e5f6...			
Sequenz 1236 · Teilzahlung erfasst · 595,00 € · txn-001			

Figure 295: The audit log shows all changes

7. Auditability

Requirement: Tax auditors must be able to review the data.

How the application fulfills this:

- **Export function** for tax audits (CSV + PDFs)
- **Verification function** checks data integrity
- Access to SQLite database (if required by auditor)

Incoming Documents in the GoBD Workflow

Incoming documents follow the same traceability idea as outgoing invoices, but the key action is **approval** instead of publication. Until approval, you can review the uploaded source file, correct metadata, assign a supplier, choose an expense category, and add supporting attachments.

After approval:

- The primary source file and attachments are moved into archive storage
- Normal attachment changes are locked
- The approval and later state changes are recorded in the audit log
- Payment records remain traceable as separate business events
- DATEV-relevant category and account data is retained as a snapshot when exported

If you reject an imported file because it is a duplicate, accidental upload, or not a business document, the rejection remains traceable. Rejected documents are removed from the normal booking workflow and can later be deleted according to the application's retention rules.

Best practice: Approve incoming documents only after checking source file, supplier, amounts, VAT, payment data, and expense category. AI and e-invoice extraction should be treated like a prefilled form that still needs review.

12.3 The Audit Log

What Is the Audit Log?

The **audit log** is an immutable list of all business transactions in the application. It documents:

- **Who did what when**
- Which invoices were published, paid, canceled
- Which PDFs were exported (with file hash)
- Which payments were recorded

Storage location: Audit log database (SQLite). The database file is stored at:

- **Linux:** `~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db`
- **macOS:** `~/Library/Application Support/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db`
- **Windows:** `%LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\invoicer_db.db`

How Does the Audit Log Work?

Each business transaction is stored as an **audit log entry**:

- **Sequence number:** Sequential number (0, 1, 2, 3, ...); Example 42
- **Timestamp:** Time of event (milliseconds); Example 2025-11-16 14:35:22.123
- **User:** Who performed the action; Example john.doe
- **Tenant ID:** Which tenant the transaction belongs to; Example tenant-123
- **Event type:** Type of business transaction; Example Invoice published
- **Entity type:** What was changed; Example Sales document
- **Entity ID:** Unique ID of the object; Example doc-001

- **Document type:** Invoice, Quote, Reminder, ...; Example Invoice
- **Document number:** Invoice number; Example RE-2025-1
- **State before:** Previous status; Example Draft
- **State after:** New status; Example Published
- **Description:** Readable description; Example Invoice published
- **Event data:** Additional information (JSON); Example {"total_amount_cents": 119000}
- **Previous hash:** Hash of previous entry; Example a1b2c3d4e5f6...
- **Current hash:** Hash of this entry; Example b2c3d4e5f6a7...

Datei Bearbeiten Ansicht Hilfe

Prüfprotokoll-Einträge-Tabelle

Beispielhafte Felder eines Audit-Log-Eintrags.

Sequenznummer	Zeitstempel	Event	Dokument
1234	2025-11-16 14:35:22.123	Rechnung veröffentlicht	RE-2025-42
1235	2025-11-16 14:35:24.010	PDF exportiert	RE-2025-42
1236	2025-11-18 09:12:11.004	Teilzahlung erfasst	RE-2025-42

Figure 296: Example entries in audit log

Cryptographic Hash Chain

Each audit log entry contains a **cryptographic hash** (SHA-256) that is calculated from:

1. All important fields of the entry (sequence number, timestamp, event type, document number, ...)
2. The hash of the previous entry

Advantage: Manipulations are detected immediately because the hash chain breaks.

Example:

Entry 1 (Genesis):

- Hash: a1b2c3... (first entry, no predecessor)

Entry 2:

- Previous hash: a1b2c3... (hash of Entry 1)
- Hash: b2c3d4... (calculated from Entry 2 + a1b2c3...)

Entry 3:

- Previous hash: b2c3d4... (hash of Entry 2)
- Hash: c3d4e5... (calculated from Entry 3 + b2c3d4...)

If someone **changes Entry 2** retroactively:

- The hash of Entry 2 changes (e.g., from b2c3d4... to x9y8z7...)
- Entry 3 expects b2c3d4... as previous hash
- Verification fails: **Manipulation detected!**

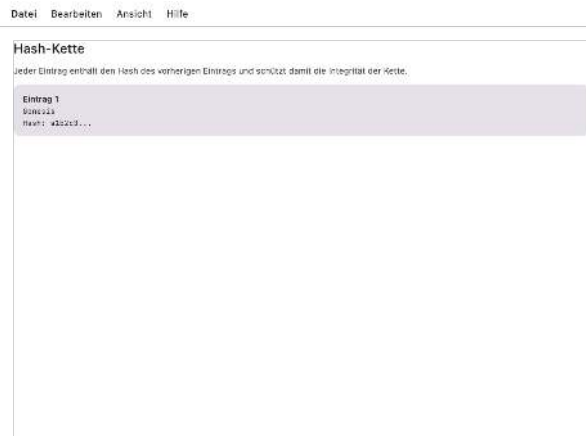


Figure 297: The hash chain protects against manipulation

[i] **Pro Tip:** The hash chain works like a blockchain – any change to an earlier entry breaks the entire chain.

What Is Logged?

[+] Always logged (business transactions):

- Invoice published (Draft → Published)
- Invoice sent (Published → Sent)
- Payment recorded (partial or complete)
- Invoice canceled
- PDF/XML exported (with file hash)
- Correction invoice created and published
- Quote accepted/rejected
- Reminder sent
- Timesheet invoiced
- Draft deleted (for gap-free chain)

× Never logged (internal operations):

- Draft created
- Draft saved (while status = Draft)
- User interface interactions
- Read operations (queries)

Why are drafts not logged?

GoBD principle: Only log **business transactions**.

- **Draft = preparation:** Drafts are internal work, not business transactions
- **No tax obligation:** Drafts create no tax-relevant obligations
- **Frequent changes:** Drafts are often saved – logging every save would be noise
- **Publication = transaction starts:** Only with publication does the business transaction begin

Exception: Draft deletion **is logged** to avoid gaps in the chain.

XRechnung Export: Two Separate Entries

If you export an invoice as **XRechnung** (e-invoice), **two separate audit log entries** are created:

1. **DOCUMENT_EXPORTED_PDF:** For the PDF file with its own hash
2. **DOCUMENT_EXPORTED_XML:** For the XML file with its own hash

Why two entries?

- Each file is an independent artifact

- Each file needs its own hash for integrity check
- Completeness: Both files are explicitly tracked

Example: Export of invoice RE-2025-42 with XRechnung:

Sequence 1234: DOCUMENT_EXPORTED_PDF - RE-2025-42.pdf (Hash: a1b2c3...)
 Sequence 1235: DOCUMENT_EXPORTED_XML - RE-2025-42.xml (Hash: d4e5f6...)

12.4 View Audit Log

Display Audit Log for a Document

Each published invoice, quote, or reminder has its own **audit log**.

Access:

1. Open the document list (**Documents** in sidebar)
2. Select a published document
3. Click **Audit log** (or the corresponding icon)

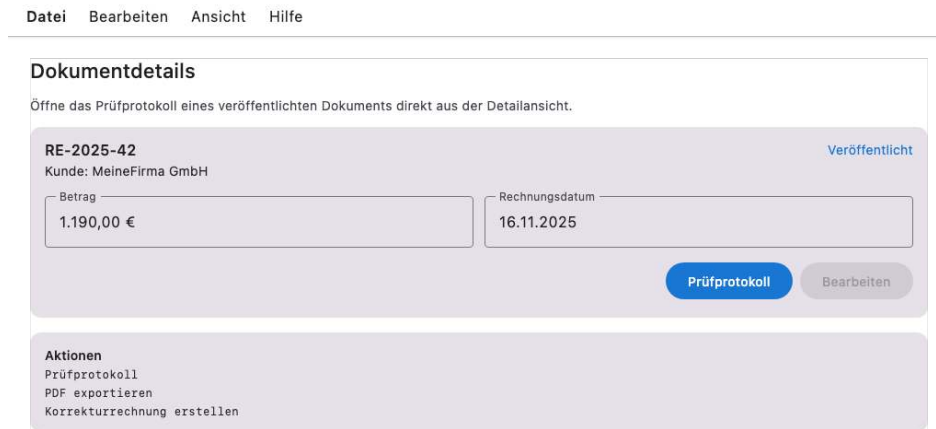


Figure 298: Open the audit log of a document

Display:

The audit log shows all events for this document in chronological order:

- **Sequence number:** Sequential number in the entire chain
- **Timestamp:** When the event occurred
- **User:** Who performed the action
- **Event type:** Type of business transaction
- **Description:** Readable description
- **State before/after:** Status transitions

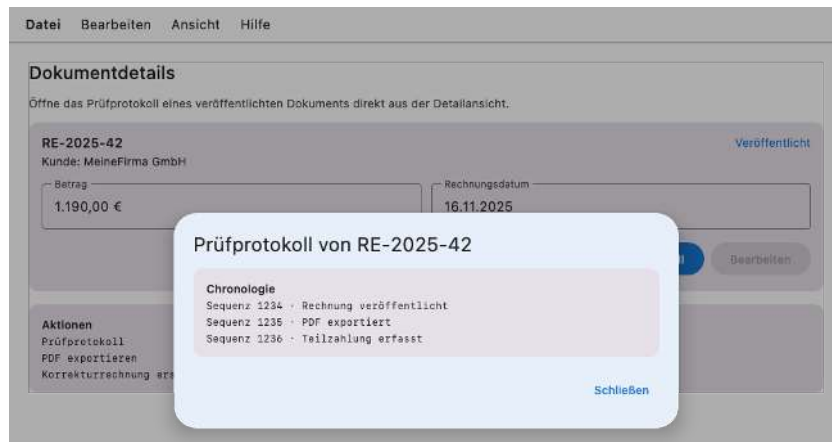


Figure 299: Audit log of a document

[i] **Pro Tip:** If you see multiple events for a document (e.g., publication, payment, export), they are linked via the **transaction ID**.

Export Complete Audit Log

For tax audits, you can export the complete audit log of all tenants.

See **Section 9.5**: Export for tax audits

12.5 Export for Tax Audits

Why an Export?

During an operational audit, you must grant the tax auditor access to your business data. With the export function, you create a **GoBD-oriented export archive** that contains:

- All audit log entries (CSV format)
- All exported PDFs and XMLs
- Verification data (JSON) for integrity check
- Instructions for the auditor (README.txt)

Create Export

Steps:

1. Click **File** in the top menu bar
2. Select **Export audit log...**



Figure 300: Export audit log via File menu

3. A dialog opens: **Export audit log**

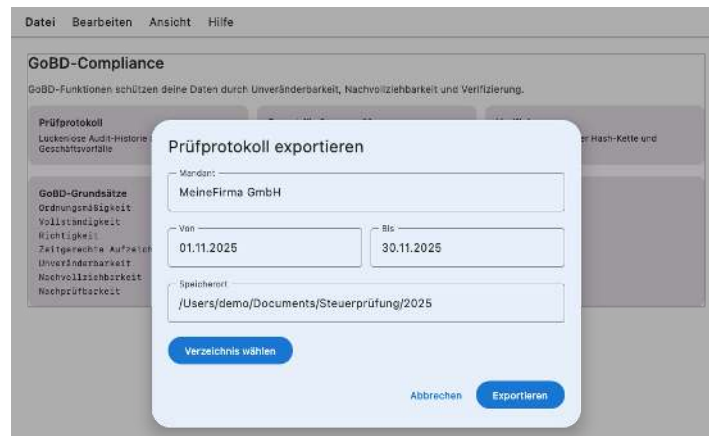


Figure 301: Export dialog for audit log

4. **Select tenant** (if you use multiple tenants)

- Dropdown menu shows all tenants
- Select the tenant you want to export

5. **Select period**

- **From:** Start date (e.g., 01/01/2025)
- **To:** End date (e.g., 12/31/2025)
- Only audit log entries in this period are exported

6. **Choose storage location**

- Click **Choose directory**
- Select a folder (e.g., ~/Documents/Tax-Audit/2025/)
- The export is saved as a ZIP file

7. **Start export**

- Click **Export**
- A progress bar shows export status

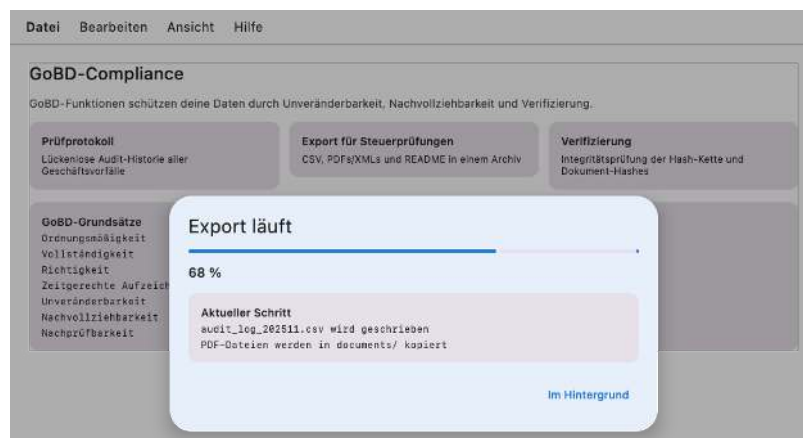


Figure 302: Export progress indicator

8. **Export completed**

- A success message appears
- The ZIP file was saved in the selected folder

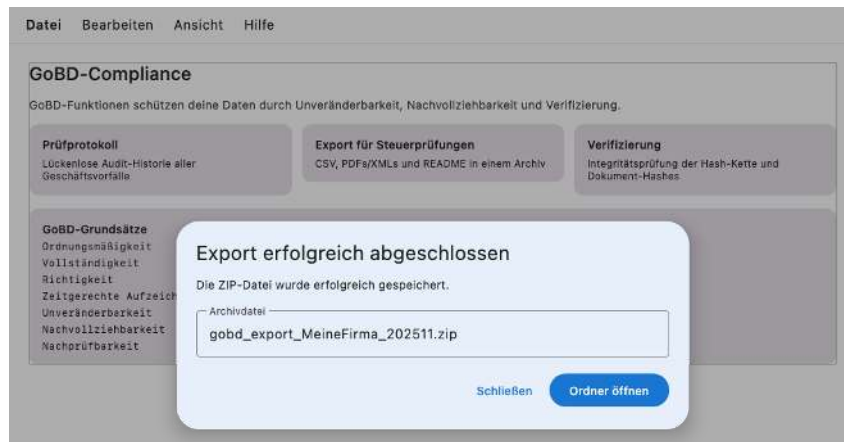


Figure 303: Export completed successfully

[i] **Pro Tip:** Create **monthly exports** for your accounting – this way you always have an archive ready.

Export Package Structure

The exported ZIP file has the following structure:

```
gobd_export_MyCompany_202511.zip |—
  README.txt                      # Instructions for auditor (German) |—
  audit_log_202511.csv             # All audit log entries (CSV) |—
  audit_log_202511_verification.json # Verification data (JSON) |—
  documents/                      # All exported documents
    |— invoices/
    |   |— RE-2025-1.pdf
    |   |— RE-2025-1.xml          # If XRechnung
    |   |— RE-2025-2.pdf
    |— quotes/
    |   |— Q-2025-1.pdf
    |— corrections/
    |   |— CORR-2025-1.pdf
    |— reminders/
    |   |— M-2025-1-L1.pdf
```

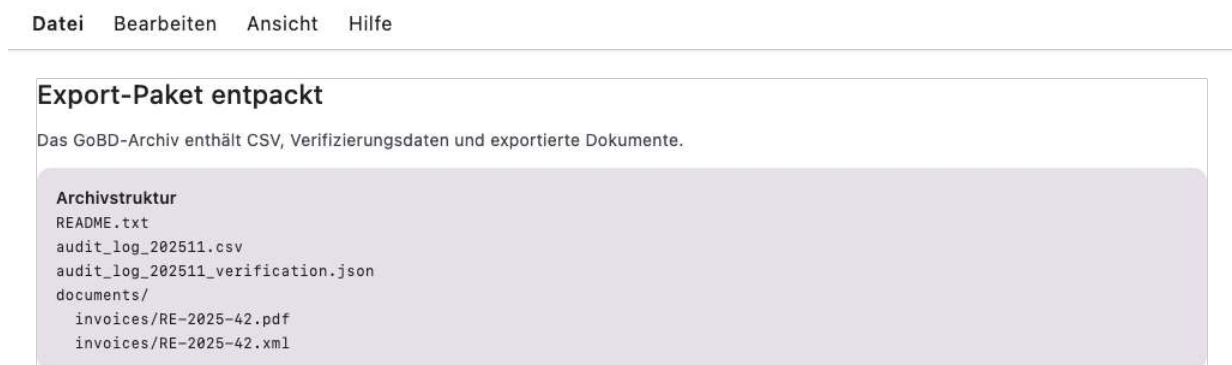


Figure 304: Contents of export package

CSV Format

The file `audit_log_202511.csv` contains all audit log entries in CSV format (UTF-8 with BOM, separator: semi-colon):

Columns:

- **sequence_number:** Sequence number
- **timestamp:** Timestamp (epoch milliseconds)
- **created_by:** User
- **tenant_id:** Tenant ID
- **event_type:** Event type
- **entity_type:** Entity type
- **entity_id:** Entity ID
- **transaction_id:** Transaction ID (groups related events)
- **document_type:** Document type
- **document_number:** Document number
- **state_before:** Status before
- **state_after:** Status after
- **description:** Description
- **event_data_json:** Event data (JSON)
- **previous_hash:** Hash of previous entry
- **current_hash:** Hash of this entry

Example row:

```
1,1698753600000, john.doe,tenant-123,DOCUMENT_PUBLISHED,SALES_DOCUMENT,doc-001,txn-001,INVOICE,RE-2025-1,
DRAFT,PUBLISHED,"Invoice published","{"total_amount_cents":119000}",null,a1b2c3d4e5f6...
```

[i] **Pro Tip:** The CSV file can be opened with Excel, LibreOffice Calc, or specialized audit software.

Verification JSON

The file `audit_log_202511_verification.json` contains metadata for integrity check:

Contents:

- **Export metadata:** Date, tenant, user
- **Hash chain info:** First hash, last hash
- **Document hashes:** SHA-256 hashes of all PDFs/XMLs
- **Statistics:** Number of invoices, payments, corrections

Example:

```
{
  "export_metadata": {
    "export_date": "2025-11-16T14:35:22Z",
    "tenant_name": "MyCompany GmbH",
    "exported_by": "john.doe",
    "date_range": {
      "from": "2025-11-01",
      "to": "2025-11-30"
    }
  },
  "chain_integrity": {
    "first_entry_hash": "a1b2c3d4e5f6...",
    "last_entry_hash": "x9y8z7w6v5u4...",
    "total_entries": 1234
  },
  "document_hashes": {
    "RE-2025-1.pdf": "d4e5f6a7b8c9...",
    "RE-2025-1.xml": "e5f6a7b8c9d0...",
    "Q-2025-1.pdf": "f6a7b8c9d0e1..."
  },
  "statistics": {
    "invoices": 42,
    "quotes": 12,
    "payments": 38,
    "corrections": 2
  }
}
```

README for Auditors

The file `README.txt` contains German instructions for tax auditors:

Contents:

- What is contained in this archive
- How to read the CSV file
- How to verify the hash chain
- Contact information for inquiries

[i] **Pro Tip:** If the auditor has questions, refer them to this user manual (Chapter 11).

12.6 Verify Audit Log

Why Verify?

Verification checks the integrity of the hash chain and ensures that:

- No audit log entries were changed retroactively
- No entries were deleted
- Sequence numbers are gap-free
- All hashes are calculated correctly

When to verify?

- Before an export for tax audits
- Regularly (e.g., monthly) for quality assurance
- If you suspect manipulation

Verify Complete Chain

Steps:

1. Click **File** in the top menu bar
2. Select **Verify audit log**



Figure 305: Verify audit log via File menu

3. A dialog opens: **Verify audit log**

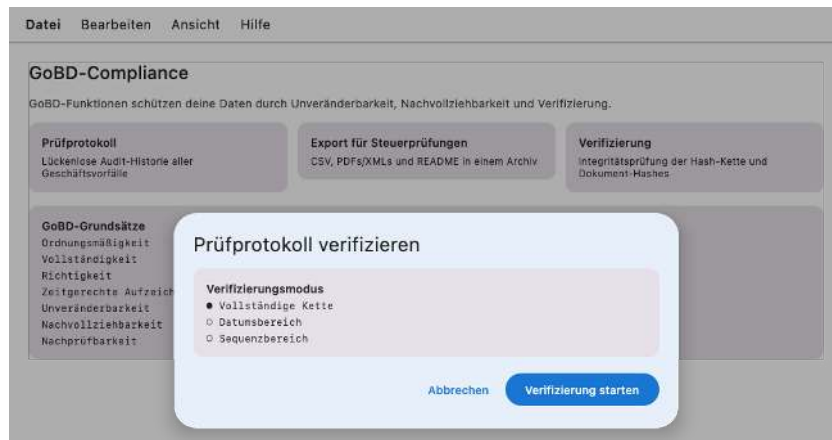


Figure 306: Verification dialog

4. Select verification mode

- **Complete chain:** All entries (recommended)
- **Date range:** Only entries in a specific period
- **Sequence range:** Only entries with specific sequence numbers

5. Start verification

- Click **Start verification**
- A progress bar shows verification status

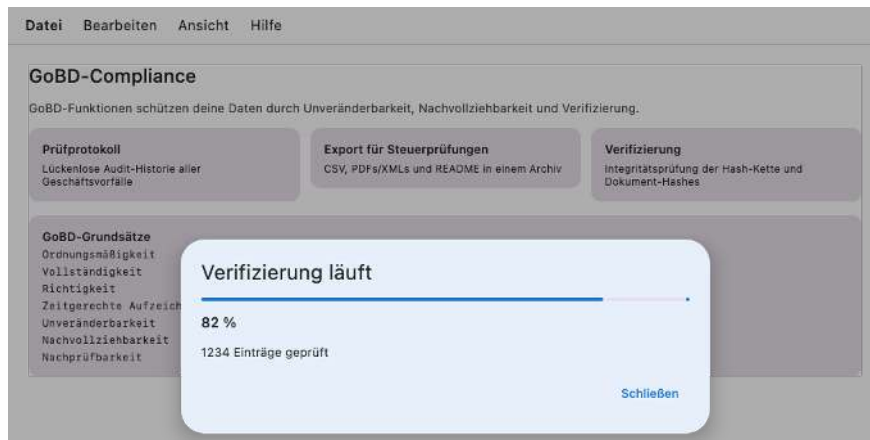


Figure 307: Verification running

6. Check result

- **Success:** All hashes match, no manipulation detected
- **Failed:** Hash chain is broken, manipulation detected

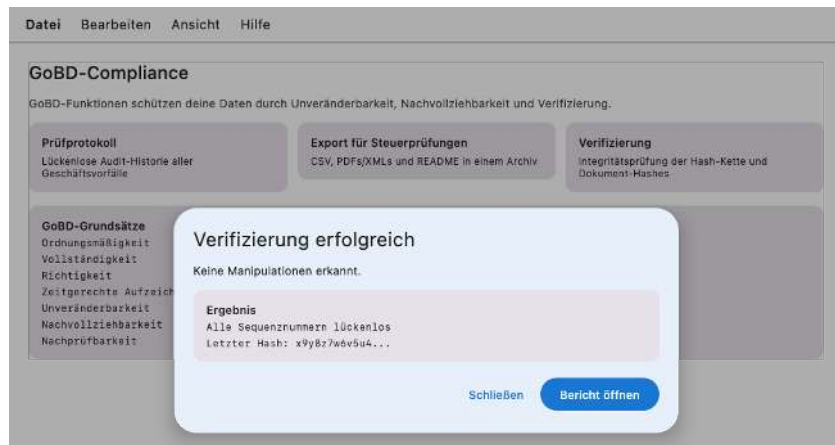


Figure 308: Verification successful – no manipulation

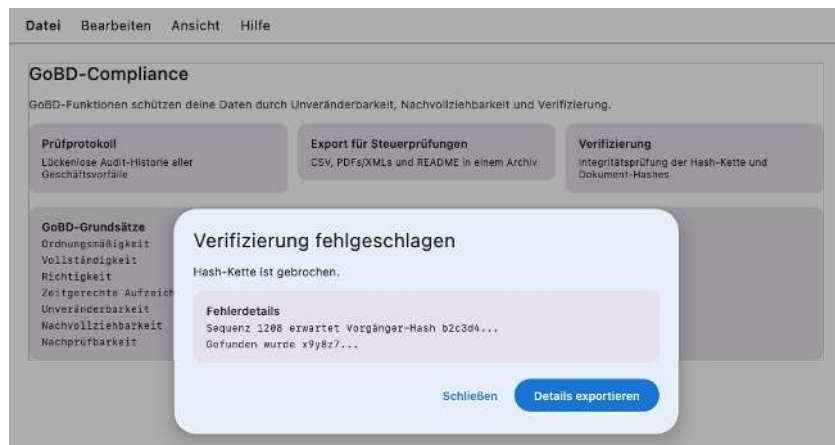


Figure 309: Verification failed – manipulation detected

[i] **Pro Tip:** If verification fails, contact support immediately – a broken hash chain indicates database corruption or manipulation.

Verify Export Archive

You can also verify an already exported archive (ZIP file).

Steps:

1. Click **File** in the top menu bar
2. Select **Verify export archive...**



Figure 310: Verify export archive via File menu

3. A dialog opens: **Verify export archive**

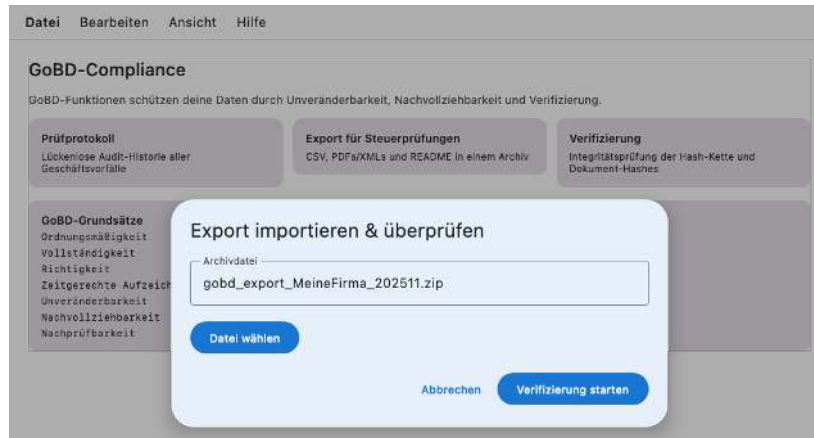


Figure 311: Select an export archive

4. **Select ZIP file**

- Click **Choose file**
- Select an exported ZIP file (e.g., gobd_export_MyCompany_202511.zip)

5. **Start verification**

- Click **Start verification**
- The application:
 - Unpacks the archive temporarily
 - Reads audit_log_202511.csv
 - Reads audit_log_202511_verification.json
 - Checks all hashes
 - Checks document hashes (PDFs/XMLs)

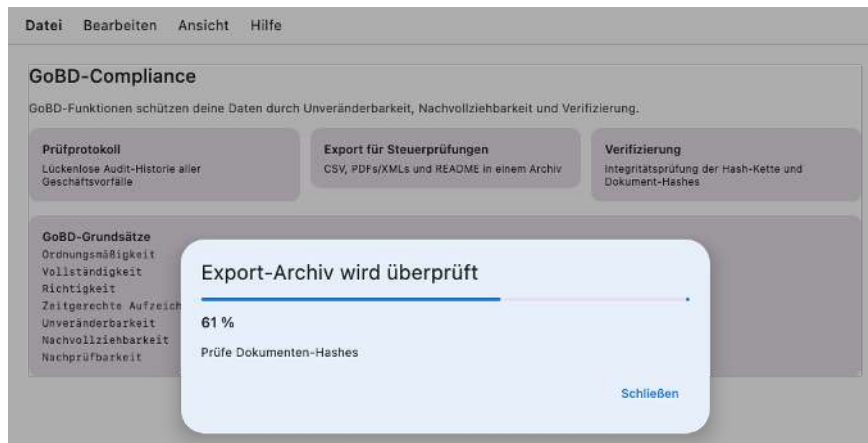


Figure 312: Verification of export archive

6. **Check result**

- **Success:** Archive is intact, no manipulation
- **Failed:** Archive was modified or is damaged

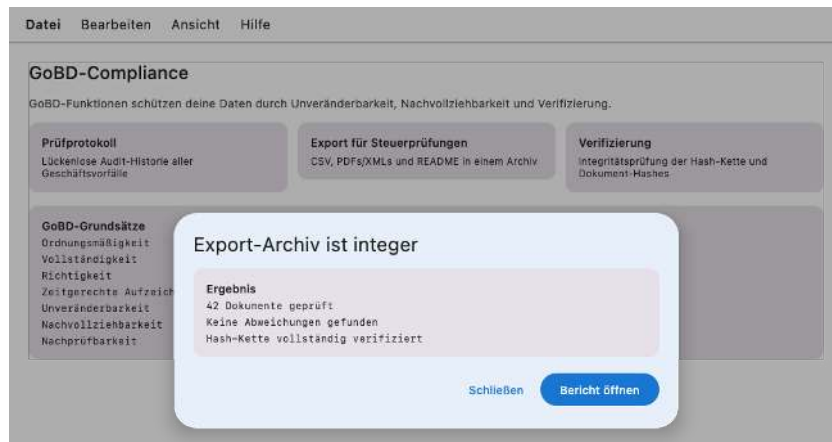


Figure 313: Export archive is intact

[i] **Pro Tip:** Verify export archives **before handing over to tax auditors** to ensure they are complete and unchanged.

12.7 Immutability: Why Invoices Cannot Be Edited

The Problem: Retroactive Changes

Imagine:

- You publish an invoice: RE-2025-1 for €1,190.00 (incl. VAT)
- Your customer pays the invoice
- Later you change the amount to €990.00 (to save taxes)
- The tax office doesn't detect the manipulation

Result: Tax evasion, fines, possibly imprisonment.

The Solution: Immutability

The application prevents retroactive changes through:

1. **Status-based lock:** Published invoices (status ≠ Draft) cannot be edited
2. **Audit log:** All changes are logged
3. **Hash chain:** Manipulations break the cryptographic chain
4. **Correction invoices:** Changes only via new correction invoices



Figure 314: Published invoice cannot be edited

Create Correction Invoice

If you need to correct a published invoice:

Steps:

1. Open the invoice
2. Click **Actions** → **Create correction invoice**
3. A new invoice is created with:
 - Negated line items (cancels original invoice)
 - New document number (e.g., CORR-2025-1)
 - Reference to original invoice
4. Publish the correction invoice
5. **Result:** Original invoice remains preserved, change is traceable

Datei	Bearbeiten	Ansicht	Hilfe
Korrekturrechnung			
Die Korrektur referenziert das Originaldokument und negiert dessen Positionen nachvollziehbar.			
CORR-2025-1			
Bezug auf Originalrechnung RE-2025-42			
Beratungsleistung November			-1.190,00 €
Korrekturhinweis			0,00 €

Figure 315: Correction invoice with negated line items

[i] **Pro Tip:** Correction invoices support GoBD-oriented workflows because they don't change the original invoice but create a new invoice with reference.

See Section 3.11: Create correction invoice (complete instructions)

12.8 Sequential Numbering

Why Gap-Free Numbering?

GoBD requires **gap-free, sequential numbers** for invoices so the tax office can detect if invoices were hidden.

Example (GoBD-oriented numbering sequence):

RE-2025-1
RE-2025-2
RE-2025-3
RE-2025-4

Example (problematic numbering sequence):

RE-2025-1
RE-2025-2
RE-2025-4 ← Gap! Where is RE-2025-3?
RE-2025-5

How the Application Ensures This

1. **Automatic numbering:** Invoice numbers are automatically assigned on publication (based on tenant's number pattern)

2. **No manual numbers:** You cannot manually change invoice numbers
3. **Tenant-specific sequences:** Each tenant has its own number ranges (MyCompany: RE-2025-1, YourCompany: RE-2025-1)
4. **Audit log:** Deleted drafts are logged to document gaps

Avoid Gaps

Scenario: You create a draft RE-2025-3, delete it, and create a new draft.

What happens?

- Drafts have **no invoice numbers**, only temporary IDs (e.g., Draft-UUID-123)
- Only on **publication** is an invoice number assigned
- If you delete a draft, no gap is created

Result: The application assigns numbers so gaps do not occur during regular use.

[i] **Pro Tip:** If you accidentally publish an invoice you don't need, use **Cancel** – this way the number remains (as canceled) but no gap is created.

12.9 Retention Obligation

10-Year Rule

GoBD requires **10 years retention period** for tax-relevant documents (§ 147 Abs. 3 AO):

- Start: End of the calendar year in which the invoice was created
- Example: Invoice from 11/16/2025 → Retention period until 12/31/2035

Affected:

- Invoices (issued and received)
- Receipts (receipts, delivery notes)
- Booking documents
- Audit logs

How the Application Supports This

1. **Automatic calculation:** Retention period is calculated on publication
2. **Delete prevented:** Documents cannot be deleted while retention period is active
3. **Soft delete:** If you want to delete a document, it's only marked as "deleted" but not physically removed
4. **Export archive:** Monthly exports secure data long-term



Figure 316: Retention period of an invoice

Archiving Strategy

Recommended approach:

1. **Monthly exports:** Create a GoBD export archive every month (see Section 9.5)
2. **WORM storage:** Store archives on **Write Once Read Many** media:
 - External hard drive (mount read-only)
 - Cloud storage with Object Lock (AWS S3 Glacier, Google Cloud Archival Storage)
 - DVD-R/Blu-ray (only for small archives)
3. **Verify:** Check annually if archives are still readable and intact
4. **Backup-backup:** Keep second copy at different location (fire protection)

[i] **Pro Tip:** Use cloud storage with 10-year retention guarantee (e.g., AWS S3 Glacier Deep Archive) – this way you're protected even with hard drive failure.

12.10 Data Access for Tax Auditors (Z1, Z2, Z3)

The Three Access Levels

The tax office can require different access options during an operational audit:

- **Z1 Direct access:** Auditor works directly in your system. You must provide: Read access to database or application.
- **Z2 Mediated access:** You export filtered data for auditor. You must provide: GoBD export for specific period (see Section 9.5).
- **Z3 Data media transfer (Z3/GDPdU):** Export as ZIP archive. You must provide: Z3/GDPdU export archives for the requested period(s).

In practice:

- **Z2 is most common:** You export data for the year being audited
- **Z1 is rarer:** Only for complex audits or suspicion of manipulation
- **Z3 is very rare:** Only for very large companies or forensic audits

Z1: Direct Access

What you must do:

1. **Create database copy:**
 - Close the application
 - Copy the database file:
 - **Linux:** `~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db`
 - **macOS:** `~/Library/Application Support/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db`
 - **Windows:** `%LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\invoicer_db.db`
 - Hand over the copy to the auditor (e.g., on USB stick)
2. **Auditor opens database:**
 - With SQLite browser (e.g., DB Browser for SQLite)
 - Or with specialized audit software (IDEA, ACL Analytics)

[i] **Pro Tip:** Create a backup before handover – this way you have a copy in case the database is damaged.

Z2: Export Filtered Data

What you must do:

1. Create a GoBD export for the period being audited (see Section 9.5)
2. Hand over the ZIP file to the auditor (e.g., on USB stick or via cloud link)

3. The auditor opens the CSV file with Excel/LibreOffice or specialized software

Advantages:

- You retain control over your data (auditor has no access to entire database)
- Auditor can analyze data but not change it
- Export is portable and universally readable

Z3: Z3/GDPdU Export**What you must do:**

1. Open File → Export Data (Z3)...
2. Select **tenant** and the requested **time period**
3. Start export and hand over the created ZIP file(s) to the auditor

[i] **Hint:** If the auditor requests multiple years/periods, create multiple exports accordingly.

12.11 Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ)

Question 1: Can I change a published invoice?

Answer: No, that would violate the GoBD-oriented workflow. Use a **correction invoice** instead (see Section 9.7).

Question 2: What happens if I delete the audit log?

Answer: The audit log is stored in the database and cannot be deleted via the user interface. If you manually change the database (e.g., with SQLite browser), you break the GoBD-oriented audit trail and risk tax back payments.

Question 3: Do I have to create an archive every month?

Answer: It's **recommended** but not mandatory. For GoBD-oriented audit preparation, it is important that you can create the requested archive during a tax audit. Monthly archives are also a good backup strategy.

Question 4: What if verification fails?

Answer: If the hash chain is broken, this indicates:

- **Database corruption** (e.g., from hard drive error)
- **Manual changes** to the database (not via the application)

Solution: Restore the database from a backup and contact support.

Question 5: Can I delete drafts without harming the GoBD-oriented workflow?

Answer: Yes, deleting drafts is compatible with the GoBD-oriented workflow because:

- Drafts are not business transactions
- Drafts don't have invoice numbers
- The deletion is logged (for traceability)

Question 6: What if I discover an error in an invoice after 10 years?

Answer: After the retention period expires (10 years), you can delete documents. If you discover an error, you cannot change the invoice anymore – but the tax period has expired, so no problem.

Question 7: Do I have to print the audit log for the tax auditor?

Answer: No, the **digital form** (CSV + ZIP archive) is sufficient. The auditor analyzes the data digitally with specialized software.

Question 8: What if my computer crashes and the database is damaged?

Answer: That's why regular backups are important:

- **Automatic backups:** Configure daily backups in settings (see Chapter 11)
- **Monthly exports:** Create GoBD exports and store them externally
- **Cloud backup:** Use cloud storage for double security

If the database is damaged, restore it from the most recent backup.

12.12 Practical Workflows

Workflow 1: Create Monthly Export for Accounting (10 minutes)

Goal: Create a GoBD export archive every month for your accounting.

Steps:

1. **Choose timing** (5 minutes at beginning of month)
 - E.g., on the 1st of each month for previous month
2. **Create export** (3 minutes)
 - Open **File → Export audit log...**
 - Select tenant
 - Period: 1st to last day of previous month (e.g., 11/01/2025 to 11/30/2025)
 - Storage location: ~/Documents/GoBD-Exports/2025/
 - Click **Export**
3. **Secure archive** (2 minutes)
 - Copy ZIP file to your cloud folder (Dropbox, Google Drive)
 - Optional: Copy to external hard drive

Result: You have a complete archive for the month that you can use anytime for tax audits.

[*] **Workflow Tip:** Create a calendar entry "Create GoBD export" on the 1st of each month as a reminder.

Workflow 2: Before Tax Audit: Prepare Data (30 minutes)

Goal: Prepare all data for an upcoming operational audit.

Steps:

1. **Clarify audit period** (2 minutes)
 - The auditor specifies the period (e.g., 01/01/2023 to 12/31/2025)
2. **Verify audit log** (5 minutes)
 - Open **File → Verify audit log**
 - Select **Complete chain**
 - Click **Start verification**
 - Check result: **Success** (if failed, contact support)
3. **Create export for audit period** (10 minutes)

- If period spans multiple years, create one export per year:
 - 01/01/2023 to 12/31/2023 → gobd_export_MyCompany_2023.zip
 - 01/01/2024 to 12/31/2024 → gobd_export_MyCompany_2024.zip
 - 01/01/2025 to 12/31/2025 → gobd_export_MyCompany_2025.zip
- Storage location: ~/Documents/Tax-Audit-2025/

4. **Verify exports** (10 minutes)

- Open **File → Verify export archive...**
- Select all ZIP files one by one
- Click **Start verification**
- Check result: **Success**

5. **Hand over data** (3 minutes)

- Copy all ZIP files to USB stick for auditor
- Or: Provide cloud link (e.g., Dropbox share)

Result: You have prepared and verified all data for tax audit – ready for handover.

[i] **Pro Tip:** If auditor requires Z1 access (direct database), first create a complete backup of the database.

Workflow 3: Regular Verification (Quarterly, 15 minutes)

Goal: Check the integrity of your audit log quarterly (preventive).

Steps:

1. **Choose timing** (e.g., end of each quarter)
 - March 31, June 30, September 30, December 31
2. **Complete verification** (10 minutes)
 - Open **File → Verify audit log**
 - Select **Complete chain**
 - Click **Start verification**
 - Wait for result (can take several minutes with many entries)
3. **Document result** (5 minutes)
 - If **Success:** Note date and result (e.g., in notes app)
 - If **Failed:** Contact support immediately and create backup

Result: You ensure that your data is always intact and no manipulations exist.

[*] **Workflow Tip:** Create a calendar entry "Verify audit log" on the last day of each quarter.

12.13 Pro Tips for GoBD-Oriented Workflows

[>>] **Monthly exports:** Create a GoBD export archive every month and store it in the cloud – this way you always have an archive ready and are prepared for tax audits.

[i] **Correction invoices instead of changes:** If you discover an error in a published invoice, use **Create correction invoice** – this way original invoice and change remain traceable.

[*] **Verification before export:** Verify the audit log **before** each export for tax audits – this ensures no manipulations exist.

[!] **No manual database changes:** Never change the database manually (e.g., with SQLite browser) – this breaks the hash chain and undermines the GoBD-oriented audit trail.

[~] **Enable automatic backups:** Configure daily backups in settings (see Chapter 11) – this protects you from data loss.

[i] **Don't publish drafts before they're ready:** Only publish invoices when all data is correct – retroactive changes are not possible.

[*] **WORM storage for archives:** Store GoBD export archives on **Write Once Read Many** media (external hard drive, cloud with Object Lock) – this protects them from accidental deletion.

[>] **Quarterly verification:** Verify the audit log quarterly (every 3 months) – this helps you detect problems early.

[i] **Include README for auditors:** ZIP exports automatically contain a README.txt for tax auditors – you don't need to explain anything extra.

[*] **Backup-backup:** Keep second copy of your GoBD exports at different location (e.g., external hard drive at friends/family) – fire protection!

Continue with Chapter 13: Appendix

13. Appendix

This appendix contains additional information to help you with daily work in the application.

13.1 Glossary

A

Audit Log

Immutable list of all business transactions. Documents Who, What, When. Uses cryptographic hash chain. See Chapter 10.3 (The Audit Log).

Auditability

GoBD principle: Tax auditors must be able to review the data. See Chapter 10.2 (The Seven GoBD Principles).

B

Backup

Backup copy of the database. Can be created automatically (daily, weekly, monthly) or manually. See Chapter 10.4 (Backup).

BIC (Bank Identifier Code)

International bank identifier code (ISO 9362). Also called SWIFT code. Required for international payments.

C

Client

An AGYNAMIX Invoicer installation that connects to a Host over the network and shares its data. The client works with a local synchronized replica of the host database. See Chapter 14.5 (Connecting as Client).

Correction Invoice

Invoice with negated line items that corrects an erroneous invoice. Fulfills GoBD requirement of immutability.

CSV (Comma-Separated Values)

Text format for tabular data. Used for GoBD exports (separator: semicolon, encoding: UTF-8 with BOM).

Customer

Business partner to whom you issue invoices or quotes. Can have multiple addresses (billing address, delivery address).

D

Database

SQLite database that stores all business data. Storage location:

- **Linux:** `~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db`
- **macOS:** `~/Library/Application Support/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db`
- **Windows:** `%LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\invoicer_db.db`

DATEV

The accounting software system most commonly used by German tax advisors. When you export data in DATEV format, your tax advisor can import it directly into their accounting system without manual re-entry. See Chapter 10 for export options.

Delivery Note

Document that confirms delivery of goods. No payment request.

Demo Database

Prefabricated database with sample data for tests and screenshots. In the application this is stored as a **sandbox** and can be removed via **Edit → Delete Demo Data**.

Document Status

Current status of a document (Draft, Published, Sent, Partially paid, Fully paid, Canceled, Deletable). See Chapter 3.5 (Understanding document status).

Draft

Preliminary version of a document that can still be edited. Not recorded in audit log (except deletion). Only receives document number upon publication.

E

E-Invoice (Electronic Invoice)

Invoice in structured format (XRechnung or ZUGFeRD) that can be processed by machine. Mandatory from 2025 for B2G invoices, from 2027/2028 for B2B invoices.

G

GoBD (Principles for the proper management and storage of books, records, and documents in electronic form as well as for data access)

Guidelines from the Federal Ministry of Finance for electronic bookkeeping. See Chapter 10 (GoBD Support).

H

Hash (Cryptographic Hash)

Unique checksum (SHA-256) of an audit log entry. Used for hash chain to detect manipulation.

Hash Chain

Linking of audit log entries through cryptographic hashes. Each entry contains the hash of the previous entry. Manipulation breaks the chain.

Headless Mode

Starting AGYNAMIX Invoicer with the `--headless` flag so no desktop window is shown. The server runs silently in the background and accepts client connections. Only available when the installation is configured as Host. See Chapter 14.4 (Headless Mode).

Host (Server)

The central AGYNAMIX Invoicer installation that stores the authoritative database and shares it with Clients.

The host can run interactively (with a window) or headlessly (as a background server). See Chapter 14.3 (Setting Up as Host).

I

IBAN (International Bank Account Number)

International bank account number (ISO 13616). Required for SEPA payments in Europe.

Immutability

GoBD principle: Published invoices may no longer be changed. Changes only via correction invoices.

Invoice

Payment request to a customer. Must contain certain mandatory information according to § 14 UStG (invoice number, tax number, VAT amount, etc.).

M

Leitweg-ID

A routing identifier required on XRechnung invoices sent to German public-sector clients. It tells the government's receiving system exactly which department or cost center should receive the invoice. Ask your public-sector customer for their Leitweg-ID before creating the invoice.

Markdown

Simple markup language for formatted texts (bold, italic, lists, etc.). Used in text blocks. See Chapter 10.6 (Markdown syntax).

N

Number Pattern

Template for document numbers (e.g., RE-`{year}`-`{doc_no}`). Uses placeholders like `{year}`, `{month}`, `{doc_no}`. See Chapter 7.7 (Understanding number patterns).

O

Operational Audit

Tax audit by the tax office. Can require Z1, Z2, or Z3 access to your data. See Chapter 10.10 (Data access for tax auditors).

Order Confirmation

Confirmation of an order placed by the customer. Sent before service delivery.

P

Payment Reminder

Payment reminder for overdue invoices. Can be multi-level (level 1, 2, 3 with increasing reminder fees).

Payment Term

Period within which an invoice must be paid (e.g., 14 days, 30 days). After expiration, the invoice is overdue.

PDF (Portable Document Format)

Standard format for exported invoices. Can be combined with XRechnung (XML) for e-invoices.

Publish

Transfer document from Draft status to Published status. From this point on, the document is immutable and receives a document number.

Q

Quote

Non-binding offer to a customer that can later be converted into an invoice. Quotes have no tax relevance until they are accepted.

R

Retention Obligation

Legal obligation to keep business documents for at least 10 years (§ 147 Abs. 3 AO). Start: End of the calendar year in which the document was created.

Replica

Local copy of the host database stored on a client machine. The replica is synchronized automatically when the client is connected to the host. It is read/write locally but the host is always the source of truth. See Chapter 14.6 (Client Mode: What to Expect).

Reverse Charge

When you invoice a business customer in another EU country, you typically do not charge VAT — instead, the customer self-reports the VAT in their own country. This is called the reverse charge procedure. Both parties must have valid VAT IDs. In AGYNAMIX Invoicer, reverse charge is handled automatically when the customer has a foreign VAT ID and the correct tax rule is applied. (Legal basis: § 13b UStG.)

S

Sequence Number

Sequential number in audit log (0, 1, 2, 3, ...). Guarantees gap-free chain.

SQLite

Embedded database engine. Stores all data in a single file (`invoicer_db.db`).

Standalone

The traditional single-computer operating mode. All data is stored locally and nothing is shared over the network. Standalone is the default and the mode all existing users are already in. See Chapter 14.1 (Overview: Standalone, Host, and Client).

Synchronization

The automatic process of keeping a client's local replica up to date with the host database. Synchronization runs in the background whenever the client is connected. See Chapter 14.6.1 (Data and Synchronization).

T

Tenant

Legally independent company or business unit. Enables multi-company management in one application. Each tenant has its own invoice number ranges.

Text Block

Reusable text section for invoices (e.g., introduction, closing phrase, payment terms). Supports Markdown.

Timesheet

Recording of worked hours for billing. Can be converted into invoice.

Transaction

Tax-relevant event (e.g., publish invoice, record payment). Documented in audit log.

V

VAT ID (Value Added Tax Identification Number)

Europe-wide unique number for companies (e.g., DE123456789). Required for reverse charge procedure (§ 13b UStG).

Verification

Check of hash chain in audit log to detect manipulation. See Chapter 10.6 (Verify audit log).

X

XRechnung

A structured e-invoice format required for invoices to German public-sector clients (Bund, Länder, large municipalities). Unlike ZUGFeRD, XRechnung is XML only — it has no human-readable PDF component, but it can be processed entirely by machine. Mandatory from 2025 for invoices to public clients, with B2B mandates following from 2027/2028. See Chapter 8.8 (E-Invoices (ZUGFeRD & XRechnung)).

Z

Z1, Z2, Z3 (Data Access)

Three access levels for tax audits. Z1 = direct access to database, Z2 = filtered export, Z3 = complete export. See Chapter 10.10 (Data access for tax auditors).

ZUGFeRD (Central User Guide of the Forum for Electronic Invoicing Germany)

A practical e-invoice format that combines a normal PDF invoice with machine-readable XML data embedded inside the same file. Your customer can open it as a regular PDF and read it, while their accounting software can also import the data automatically without manual entry. Think of it as a PDF that is also a data file. See Chapter 8.8 (E-Invoices (ZUGFeRD & XRechnung)).

13.2 Keyboard Shortcuts

Global Keyboard Shortcuts

Ctrl+, (Windows/Linux) / **Cmd**+, (macOS)

- Action: Open settings
- Available in: Everywhere

Ctrl+N (Windows/Linux) / **Cmd**+N (macOS)

- Action: Create new document
- Available in: Document list

Ctrl+S (Windows/Linux) / **Cmd**+S (macOS)

- Action: Save document
- Available in: Document editor

Ctrl+W (Windows/Linux) / **Cmd**+W (macOS)

- Action: Close current window
- Available in: Dialog/window

Ctrl+Q (Windows/Linux) / **Cmd**+Q (macOS)

- Action: Exit application
- Available in: Everywhere

Esc

- Action: Close dialog
- Available in: Dialogs

Menu Keyboard Shortcuts

Ctrl+B (Windows/Linux) / **Cmd**+B (macOS)

- Action: Create backup
- Menu: File

Ctrl+R (Windows/Linux) / **Cmd+R** (macOS)

- Action: Restore from backup
- Menu: File

F1

- Action: Open documentation
- Menu: Help

Ctrl+U (Windows/Linux) / **Cmd+U** (macOS)

- Action: Check for updates
- Menu: Help

Document Editor

Tab

- Action: Jump to next field
- Context: Form

Shift+Tab

- Action: Jump to previous field
- Context: Form

Ctrl+Enter (Windows/Linux) / **Cmd+Enter** (macOS)

- Action: Save document
- Context: Form

Ctrl+P (Windows/Linux) / **Cmd+P** (macOS)

- Action: Open PDF preview
- Context: Document

Markdown Editor (Text Blocks)

Ctrl+B (Windows/Linux) / **Cmd+B** (macOS)

- Action: Format bold
- Result: **Text**

Ctrl+I (Windows/Linux) / **Cmd+I** (macOS)

- Action: Format italic
- Result: *Text*

Ctrl+K (Windows/Linux) / **Cmd+K** (macOS)

- Action: Insert link
- Result: [Text] (URL)

[i] **Pro Tip:** Hover over buttons to see tooltips with keyboard shortcuts.

13.3 Troubleshooting

Problem 1: Application Won't Start

Symptoms:

- Application doesn't open on double-click
- Error message: "Java not found"

Possible Causes:

1. Corrupted or incomplete installation (bundled runtime missing)
2. Running a JAR build without Java 21 or higher installed
3. Wrong Java version (e.g., Java 17)

Solution:

1. **If you installed the native app** (Windows installer / macOS DMG / Linux package):
 - Reinstall the application (a Java runtime is included)
 2. **Check Java version** (only relevant when running from source/JAR):


```
java -version
```

Expected output: `openjdk version "21.x.x"`
 3. **Install Java 21** (only if you run from source/JAR):
 - Download a Java 21 JDK (e.g., from <https://adoptium.net/>)
 - Make sure your java points to that installation
 4. **Restart application**
-

Problem 2: Database Locked

Symptoms:

- Error message: "Database is locked"
- Application freezes when saving

Possible Causes:

1. Application is already running in background
2. Crash without clean exit (lock file remains)

Solution:

1. **Check if application is running:**

```
# Linux/macOS
ps aux | grep -i invoicer | grep -v grep

# Windows (PowerShell)
Get-Process | Where-Object {$_.ProcessName -like "*invoicer*"}

```

2. **Terminate process:**

```
# Linux/macOS
pkill -f "com.agynamix.invoicer.LauncherKt"

# Windows (PowerShell)
Stop-Process -Name "AGYNAMIX Invoicer" -Force

```

3. **Manually delete lock file** (if process is not running):

```
# Linux/macOS
rm ~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db-journal
rm ~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db-wal
rm ~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db-shm

# Windows
del %LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\invoicer_db.db-journal
del %LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\invoicer_db.db-wal
del %LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\invoicer_db.db-shm

```

4. Restart application

[!] **Important:** Only delete lock files if the application is really not running – otherwise you risk data loss.

Problem 3: PDF Export Fails

Symptoms:

- Error message: "Document folder not configured"
- PDF is not created

Possible Causes:

1. Document folder is not configured in settings
2. Document folder doesn't exist (was deleted)
3. No write permissions on document folder

Solution:

1. Configure document folder:

- Open **Settings** (Ctrl+, / Cmd+,)
- Scroll to **Documents**
- Click **Choose directory** next to **Document folder**
- Select a folder (e.g., ~/Documents/Invoices/)
- Click **Select folder**

2. Check write permissions:

```
# Linux/macOS
ls -ld ~/Documents/Invoices/
# Expected output: drwxr-xr-x (first 10 characters)

# If no write permissions:
chmod +w ~/Documents/Invoices/
```

3. Export again

Problem 4: XRechnung Validation Fails

Symptoms:

- Error message: "XRechnung validation failed"
- Customer cannot process XML

Possible Causes:

1. Required fields missing (e.g., customer VAT ID)
2. IBAN/BIC invalid
3. Tax rate not specified

Solution:

1. Check customer data:

- Open **Customers** → Select customer
- Check **Billing data**:
 - **VAT ID**: Must be filled (e.g., DE123456789)
 - **Currency**: Must be valid (EUR, USD, CHF)
 - **Default tax rate**: Must be set (19% or 7%)

2. Check tenant bank details:

- Open **Tenants** → Select tenant
- Check **Bank connection**:
 - **IBAN**: Must be valid (e.g., DE89370400440532013000)
 - **BIC**: Must be valid (e.g., COBADEFFXXX)

3. **Export invoice again** with XRechnung option

[i] **Pro Tip**: Use the KoSIT XRechnung Validator online to check XML files.

Problem 5: Verification Fails (Hash Chain Broken)

Symptoms:

- Error message: "Hash chain is broken"
- Verification failed at sequence number X

Possible Causes:

1. Database corruption (e.g., from hard drive error)
2. Manual changes to database (e.g., with SQLite browser)
3. Crash during audit log write operation

Solution:

1. **Restore backup:**

- Open **File** → **Restore from backup...**
- Select newest intact backup (before the problem)
- Click **Restore**

2. **If no backup available:**

- Contact support (see Section 10.5)
- Send the following information:
 - Error message (screenshot)
 - Sequence number where error occurred
 - Database file (if possible)

[!] **Important**: A broken hash chain is a serious problem – it indicates database corruption or manipulation.

Problem 6: Payment Reminder Cannot Be Created

Symptoms:

- Button **Create reminder** is grayed out
- Error message: "Invoice must be published and overdue"

Possible Causes:

1. Invoice is still draft (not published)
2. Invoice is not yet due (payment term not expired)
3. Invoice is already fully paid

Solution:

1. **Check invoice status:**

- Open the invoice
- Check status: Must be **Published** or **Sent**

2. **Check due date:**

- Check **Payment term**: E.g., 14 days after invoice date

- Check current date: Must be after payment term

3. Check payment status:

- Check **Payment status**: Must be **Unpaid** or **Partially paid**
- If fully paid: Reminder not possible

Example:

- Invoice from 11/01/2025, payment term 14 days
 - Due date: 11/15/2025
 - Reminder possible from 11/16/2025
-

Problem 7: Demo Data Cannot Be Deleted

Symptoms:

- Error message: "Demo data could not be deleted"
- Menu item **Edit** → **Delete Demo Data** is grayed out

Possible Causes:

1. No demo data available (database was created manually)
2. Database contains production data

Solution:

1. Check if demo database is loaded:

- Open **Help** → **About**
- If demo database: Notice appears

2. Manual deletion (if necessary):

- Close the application
- Delete the sandbox database file:

```
# Linux
rm ~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/sandbox.db

# macOS
rm ~/Library/Application\ Support/agynamix-invoicer/sandbox.db

# Windows
del %LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\sandbox.db
```

- Restart the application

[!] **Important:** Manual deletion removes **all data** – only use it if you're sure.

Problem 8: Application Is Very Slow

Symptoms:

- Document list loads slowly
- Search takes several seconds
- UI freezes

Possible Causes:

1. Database is very large (>100,000 documents)
2. Database is on slow hard drive (network drive, USB)
3. Too little RAM (< 4 GB)

Solution:

1. Check database size:

```
# Linux/macOS
ls -lh ~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db

# Windows (PowerShell)
Get-Item $env:LOCALAPPDATA\agynamix-invoicer\invoicer_db.db |
Select-Object Length
```

2. Move database to local SSD (if on network drive):

- Close the application
- Copy `invoicer_db.db` to local SSD
- Restart the application

3. Archive old documents:

- Create GoBD export for old years (see Chapter 10.5)
- Delete old documents (if retention period expired)

4. Allocate more RAM (if possible):

- Close other applications
 - Upgrade to at least 8 GB RAM
-

13.4 Technical Information

System Requirements

Minimum:

- **Operating System:** Windows 10, macOS 11 Big Sur on Apple Silicon or 64-bit Intel, Linux (Ubuntu 20.04 or newer)
- **Java:** OpenJDK 21 or higher
- **RAM:** 4 GB
- **Hard Drive:** 500 MB free space
- **Screen Resolution:** 1280x720 pixels

Recommended:

- **Operating System:** Windows 11, macOS 13 Ventura, Linux (Ubuntu 22.04 or newer)
- **Java:** OpenJDK 21
- **RAM:** 8 GB or more
- **Hard Drive:** 2 GB free space (incl. backups and exports)
- **Screen Resolution:** 1920x1080 pixels or higher

For macOS downloads, choose `macos-arm64` for Apple Silicon or `macos-x64` for Intel. Both architectures are available as a DMG for installation and as a ZIP for manual portable installation.

Database Storage Location

The SQLite database is automatically created in the user directory:

Linux:

```
$HOME/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db
```

macOS:

```
~/Library/Application Support/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db
```

Windows:

%LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\invoicer_db.db

Additional files (temporary):

- invoicer_db.db-journal: Transaction journal (only during write operations)
- invoicer_db.db-wal: Write-Ahead Log (performance optimization)
- invoicer_db.db-shm: Shared Memory (performance optimization)

[i] **Pro Tip:** To back up the database, only copy invoicer_db.db – temporary files are automatically recreated.

Open Database Folder

Via the application:

1. Click **Help** in the menu bar
2. Select **Open database folder**
3. The folder opens in file manager

Manually:

Linux/macOS:

```
cd ~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/  
# or for macOS:  
cd ~/Library/Application\ Support/agynamix-invoicer/
```

Windows (PowerShell):

```
cd $env:LOCALAPPDATA\agynamix-invoicer\
```

Log File (Debug Information)

The log file can be helpful in case of problems:

Display log file:

1. Click **Help** in the menu bar
2. Select **Show log**
3. The log file opens in a text editor

Log storage location:

Linux:

```
$HOME/.config/agynamix-invoicer/logs/app.log
```

macOS:

```
~/Library/Application\ Support/agynamix-invoicer/logs/app.log
```

Windows:

```
%LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\logs\app.log
```

Example log entry:

```
2026-06-28 10:15:22 INFO [main] c.a.i.MainKt - Starting Agynamix Invoicer v1.7.0  
2026-01-12 10:15:23 INFO [main] c.a.i.db.DatabaseManager - Database initialized successfully  
2026-01-12 10:15:25 ERROR [main] c.a.i.ui.MainScreen - Failed to load tenants: Database locked
```

[i] **Pro Tip:** Include the log file with support requests – it helps with error diagnosis.

Technologies Used

The application uses the following open-source libraries:

- **Apache PDFBox:** Version 3.0.6; License Apache License 2.0; Purpose: PDF creation and manipulation
- **Flexmark:** Version 0.64.8; License BSD 2-Clause; Purpose: Markdown processing
- **Flying Saucer:** Version 10.0.0; License LGPL 2.1+; Purpose: HTML-to-PDF rendering
- **Jetpack Compose:** Version 1.9.0; License Apache License 2.0; Purpose: UI framework
- **Koin:** Version 4.1.1; License Apache License 2.0; Purpose: Dependency injection
- **Kotlin:** Version 2.1.0; License Apache License 2.0; Purpose: Programming language
- **Kotlinx Serialization:** Version 1.8.0; License Apache License 2.0; Purpose: JSON serialization
- **Logback:** Version 1.5.16; License EPL 1.0 / LGPL 2.1; Purpose: Logging framework
- **Mustangproject:** Version 2.25.0; License Apache License 2.0; Purpose: ZUGFeRD/XRechnung creation
- **Pebble Templates:** Version 3.2.4; License BSD 3-Clause; Purpose: Template engine
- **SQLDelight:** Version 2.1.0; License Apache License 2.0; Purpose: Type-safe Kotlin SQL
- **SQLite JDBC:** Version 3.50.3.0; License Apache License 2.0; Purpose: SQLite driver
- **Tabler Icons:** Version 3.46.0; License MIT License; Purpose: Built-in PDF footer icons
- **unDraw:** Version 2025; License unDraw License; Purpose: Open-source illustrations

Complete licenses:

- Open **Help** → **About** in the application
- Click **Show licenses**

Version Information

Version: 1.7.0 **Build Date:** June 2026 **Git Commit:** [Commit hash]

Display version information:

1. Click **Help** in the menu bar
 2. Select **About**
 3. Version information appears in dialog
-

13.5 License and Copyright

License

AGYNAMIX Invoicer is proprietary software.

Copyright © 2025 AGYNAMIX Torsten Uhlmann

Buchenweg 5
09380 Thalheim
Germany

All rights reserved.

License Grant

AGYNAMIX Torsten Uhlmann ("Licensor") grants you a limited, non-exclusive, non-transferable, revocable license to use this software ("Software") exclusively for your personal or internal business purposes.

Evaluation Period (Trial)

When you first launch a stable (non-prerelease) version of the Software without an active license, a **30-day evaluation period** ("Trial") begins automatically. During the Trial, all features of the **Ultimate** tier are available at no cost. After the Trial expires, the Software reverts to the **Base** tier unless a valid license has been activated.

The Trial is a one-time evaluation opportunity per installation. It does not constitute a license grant and may not be extended, restarted, or transferred. Use of the Software during the Trial is subject to all other terms of this license.

Restrictions

You may not:

- Copy, modify, adapt, translate, or create derivative works of the Software
- Reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, or attempt to derive the source code of the Software
- Rent, lease, lend, sell, sublicense, distribute, or otherwise transfer the Software to third parties
- Remove, alter, or obscure any proprietary notices on the Software
- Use the Software for illegal purposes or in violation of applicable laws

Full License

The complete license agreement can be found at:

- **German:** <https://invoicer.agynamix.de/manual/de/v1.7/license.pdf>
- **English:** <https://invoicer.agynamix.de/manual/en/v1.7/license.pdf>

Or in the application:

1. Click **Help** in the menu bar
 2. Select **About**
 3. Click **Show license**
-

13.6 Support and Contact

Online Documentation

Website: <https://invoicer.agynamix.de>

On the website you will find:

- Complete user manual (PDF download)
- Video tutorials (planned)
- FAQ (frequently asked questions)
- Release notes (version notes)

Support Contact

Email: support@agynamix.de

Response Time: Weekdays within 24 hours

When contacting support, please provide:

- **Version number** (see **Help** → **About**)
- **Operating system** (Windows, macOS, Linux with version)
- **Error description** (step-by-step, what you did)
- **Error message** (screenshot or exact wording)
- **Log file** (if relevant, see Section 10.4)

Updates

Automatic update check:

- Open **Settings** (Ctrl+, / Cmd+,)
- Enable **Automatically check for updates** under **Updates**

Manual update check:

1. Click **Help** in the menu bar
2. Select **Check for updates**
3. If update available: Dialog with download link appears

Update interval: New versions are released approximately every 2–4 weeks (beta phase), later quarterly.

Community

Planned (in the future):

- **Forum:** Community forum for questions and exchange
 - **Blog:** Tips, tricks, and best practices
 - **Newsletter:** Monthly newsletter with new features
-

13.7 About This Documentation

Version

Documentation version: 1.7.0 **Date:** June 2026 **Application version:** 1.7.0

Authors

This documentation was created by:

- **AGYNAMIX Torsten Uhlmann** (Main author)

Feedback

If you find errors in this documentation or have suggestions for improvement, please contact us:

Email: documentation@agynamix.de

Subject: "User Manual Feedback v1.7.0"

Please specify:

- **Chapter:** Which chapter does your feedback concern? (e.g., "Chapter 3.7")
- **Page/Section:** Where exactly is the problem? (e.g., "Workflow 2: Create invoice")
- **Error type:** Spelling error, unclear wording, missing information, wrong screenshot?
- **Improvement suggestion:** How should it be better worded?

[i] **Pro Tip:** Screenshots with markings help us understand your feedback faster.

Change History

Version 1.7.0 (June 2026):

- Added customer financial profile, open credit, and default customer rebates
- Added grouped sales documents, quote revisions, and improved document email with To/CC/BCC
- Added timesheet period finalization without invoice, PDF preview, archiving, download, work locations, and completion status
- Updated operating-mode guidance for the app data directory and Client/Host dependencies
- Updated manual and quick-reference metadata for Invoicer v1.7.0

Version 1.6.0 (June 2026):

- Added document presets for recurring quotes and invoices
- Added preset-backed timesheet invoicing using the current preset content
- Added email mailbox intake for incoming documents, including source-email provenance

- Added sales artefacts for supporting files on published sales documents
- Added in-app review and validation guidance for exported e-invoices
- Added the in-app file chooser and documented Linux-focused UI scaling improvements
- Added a more unified incoming-documents workspace, including better .eml and primary-source handling
- Added stronger invoice and payment workflow guidance around corrections and payment reversals
- Added client-server and synchronization improvements for login, reconnect, settings sync, and file flows

Version 1.5.0 (May 2026):

- Updated the manual and quick reference for Invoicer v1.5.0
- Added the complete incoming-documents workflow with review, approval, payment tracking, and archiving
- Added AI-assisted incoming-document analysis and in-app e-invoice viewing
- Added suppliers and expense categories for purchase workflows
- Updated client-server guidance for incoming-document uploads and synchronization

Version 1.4.x (March-April 2026):

- Documented client-server rollout, setup, and hardening across the 1.4 release series
- Added licensing, 30-day trial, and update-pass guidance
- Added platform-specific startup, installer, and menu-bar updates
- Added line-item insertion, improved date input, and partial-correction workflow notes

Version 1.2.0 (January 12, 2026):

- Updated the Settings chapter with Email, Document Emails, and User Management
- Added a dedicated “Send document via email” section in Documents
- Expanded customer/tenant documentation with new contact and business fields

Version 1.0 (November 16, 2025):

- First complete release
 - All 11 chapters completed
 - 316 figures (placeholders for screenshots)
 - Glossary with 40+ terms
 - 8 common problems with solutions
-

13.8 Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ)

General

I published an invoice by mistake — what do I do?

You cannot unpublish an invoice (this is a GoBD requirement — all published business documents must remain in the audit log). However, you can issue a **correction invoice** that negates the incorrect invoice. Go to the invoice, click **Correction Invoice**, and confirm. This creates a new invoice with all items negated (effectively cancelling the original), and you can then create a correct invoice from scratch.

My invoice number skipped a number — is that a problem?

A gap may be suspicious to tax auditors but is not automatically a legal violation (German courts have confirmed this). However, you should document the reason (e.g., “test invoice deleted” or “numbering scheme changed”). AGYNAMIX Invoicer’s audit log records all actions, which helps explain gaps.

How do I change my company logo or address on published invoices?

Published invoices cannot be changed (immutability principle). To change your company details for future invoices, go to **Tenants** and update the tenant’s data. Previously published invoices will retain the data that was current at the time they were published.

Can I delete an invoice?

You can only delete **drafts**. Published invoices must first be transitioned to “Deletable” status via the normal workflow (correction → cancel). Even then, the audit log entry remains. This is required by GoBD.

How do I send an invoice by email?

Open the invoice, click **Send by Email**. The email dialog opens pre-filled with the customer's email address and a subject based on the document number. You can edit the message before sending. SMTP must be configured in Settings → Email.

What is the difference between a backup and an audit log export?

A **backup** is a copy of your entire database — it lets you restore all your data if something goes wrong (hardware failure, accidental deletion). An **audit log export** is an export specifically for tax audit purposes — it is a structured, hash-chain-verifiable record of all business transactions that tax auditors can examine. You need both: backups for disaster recovery, audit log exports for GoBD-oriented audit workflows.

I forgot my password — what do I do?

It depends on the operating mode:

- In **Standalone** mode, click **Forgot Password** in the password prompt and enter the recovery key stored for this installation.
- In **Client/Host** setups, contact an administrator. Password reset is a restricted action and uses the recovery key from the **server instance**, not the local recovery key on your client machine.
- Administrators can change a user's password from any connected machine. Completely clearing a password is supported only in Standalone mode.

Is my data safe? Where is it stored?

All your data is stored **locally on your computer** — nothing is sent to the cloud unless you explicitly configure a cloud folder for backups or archive. The database file is located at:

- **Windows:** %LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\invoicer_db.db
- **macOS:** ~/Library/Application Support/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db
- **Linux:** ~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db

Client-Server Mode

My client can't connect to the host — what do I check?

Work through this checklist:

1. Is the host computer running and the application open (or running in headless mode)?
2. Are the host address, port, username, and API token correct on the client?
3. Is there a firewall on the host computer blocking the port? (Check Windows Defender Firewall / macOS Firewall / ufw on Linux)
4. Can you ping the host from the client computer? (ping <host-ip>)
5. Can you reach the host directly via a browser? (http://<host-ip>:<port>/health should return a 200 response)
6. If the host is behind a router, is port forwarding configured?

If all else fails, contact support at support@agynamix.de with details of your network configuration.

13.9 Migrating to a New Computer

If you're moving AGYNAMIX Invoicer to a new computer (e.g., buying a new laptop or upgrading your workstation), follow this guide to transfer your data without losing anything.

Step 1: Create a Backup on the Old Computer

1. On the **old computer**, open AGYNAMIX Invoicer
2. Go to **File → Create Backup** (or **Settings → Backup → Create Backup Now**)
3. Choose a location you can easily access from the new computer (e.g., a USB drive, a cloud folder, or a shared network drive)
4. Click **Create** — a .zip backup file is created
5. Note the location of this backup file — you'll need it in Step 3

[i] Tip: You can also simply copy the database file directly if you prefer. The database is at `~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db` (Linux), `~/Library/Application Support/agynamix-invoicer/invoicer_db.db` (macOS), or `%LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer\invoicer_db.db` (Windows). However, using the built-in backup is safer as it ensures a consistent state.

Step 2: Install AGYNAMIX Invoicer on the New Computer

1. Download the installer for your new operating system from <https://invoicer.agynamix.de>
2. Install and start the application once to ensure it runs correctly
3. Close the application before restoring your data

Step 3: Restore Your Backup on the New Computer

1. On the **new computer**, open AGYNAMIX Invoicer
2. Go to **File → Restore Backup**
3. Navigate to your backup file and select it
4. If the backup is encrypted, enter the passphrase when prompted
5. Confirm the restore — the application will restart with your data

Step 4: Reconfigure Local Settings

Some settings are local to each computer and not included in the backup. After restoring, check and reconfigure:

- **Document folder:** Settings → Documents; re-select or create a folder on the new machine
- **Backup directory:** Settings → Backup; point to a location on the new machine
- **Archive location:** Settings → Documents → Archive; re-select the archive folder
- **SMTP settings:** Settings → Email; re-enter email server credentials
- **Theme:** Settings → Appearance; re-select your preferred theme

Step 5: Verify Your Data

After restoring, quickly verify that your data transferred correctly:

- ☐ Tenant(s) listed correctly
- ☐ Customer list intact
- ☐ Recent invoices visible
- ☐ Documents folder accessible and PDFs present (if you copied that too)
- ☐ Draft a test invoice to confirm everything works

Notes on License Transfer

If your license is tied to a specific computer, you may need to deactivate it on the old machine before activating it on the new one. Check **Help → License** in the application, or contact support at support@agynamix.de.

End of Documentation

Thank you for using **AGYNAMIX Invoicer**! We hope this documentation helps you with your daily work. If you have questions, don't hesitate to contact us.

Good luck with your invoicing! [>]

14. Operating Modes

AGYNAMIX Invoicer supports three distinct operating modes. This chapter explains what each mode does, helps you choose the right mode for your situation, and walks you through setting up multi-computer configurations.

14.1 Overview: Standalone, Host, and Client

The Three Modes at a Glance

Standalone

- Who it's for: One person, one computer
- Where data lives: Your computer only

Host

- Who it's for: Small team — the central computer
- Where data lives: This computer (shared with clients)

Client

- Who it's for: Small team — each team member
- Where data lives: On the Host (synced copy locally)

Plain-Language Explanation

Standalone mode is the traditional single-computer way of working. Your data is stored locally. Nothing is shared over the network. If you have been using AGYNAMIX Invoicer before this chapter was written, you are already in standalone mode — and nothing has changed.

Host mode turns one installation into a shared server. The host computer stores the authoritative database. Team members on other computers connect to it as clients. The host can run as an always-on server (even without a screen — see Headless Mode).

Client mode lets you connect your installation to a host computer hosted on the same local network (or over the internet). Your local copy is a synchronized replica of the host's data. You can work on it even when temporarily offline — but the host is the source of truth.

Which Mode Should I Use?

Follow this decision guide:

1. **Is it just you, on one computer?** → Use **Standalone** (nothing to configure, already the default)
2. **Is it just you, but you work on multiple computers?** → Either: set up one machine as **Host** and connect the others as **Clients**, or simply use the Backup/Restore workflow to move between computers
3. **Do you have a team sharing one set of invoices?** → Set up one computer as **Host** and each team member's computer as a **Client**
4. **Do you want a dedicated always-on server?** → Set up the server machine as **Host in Headless Mode**

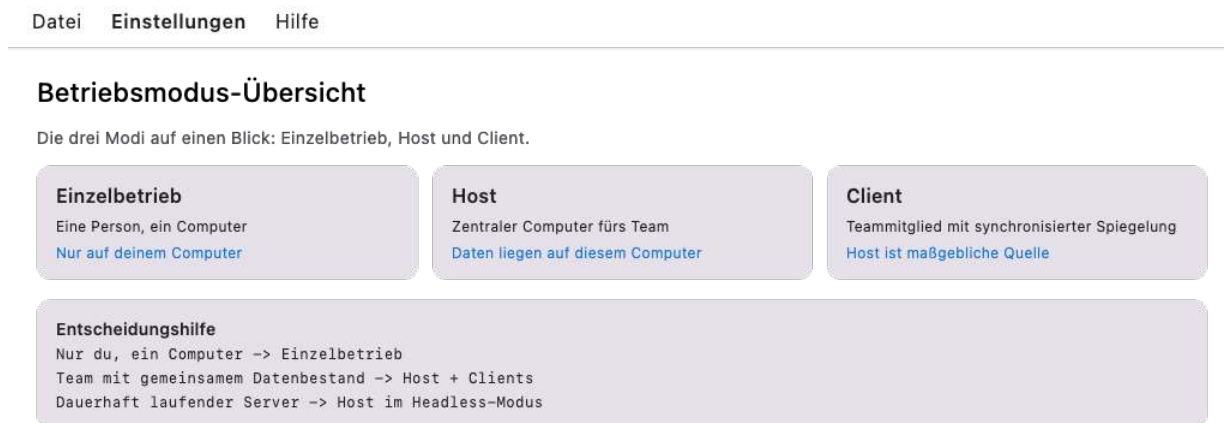


Figure XX: Operating mode overview diagram

Comparison Table

Works without network

- Standalone: [+] Yes
- Host: [+] Yes
- Client: [!] Offline (limited)

Shared team access

- Standalone: × No
- Host: [+] Yes
- Client: [+] Yes

Multiple simultaneous users

- Standalone: × No
- Host: [+] Yes
- Client: [+] Yes

Data stays on your computer

- Standalone: [+] Yes
- Host: [+] Yes
- Client: Replica only

Requires network setup

- Standalone: × No
- Host: [+] Yes
- Client: [+] Yes

Can run headless (no screen)

- Standalone: × No
 - Host: [+] Yes
 - Client: × No
-

14.2 Switching Modes

Switching from Standalone to Host or Client is done through the application's settings. The switch is guided by a setup wizard.

[!] **Important:** Switching from Standalone to Client replaces your local data with a synchronized replica from the host. Make sure you have a backup of your local data before proceeding (see Chapter 11.4).

How to Switch

1. Open **Settings** (Ctrl+, / Cmd+,)
 2. Navigate to **Instance Mode**
 3. Select the desired mode (Standalone / Host / Client)
 4. Follow the setup wizard for the chosen mode
-

14.3 Setting Up as Host (TASK-MAN-14)

This section is for the person who will be running the **central/shared computer** that the rest of the team connects to.

14.3.1 Prerequisites

Before switching to Host mode, make sure you have:

- An **Ultimate license** — Host (Server) mode requires the Ultimate product tier. If your license tier is below Ultimate, the setup wizard will show an error and the server will not start.
- A computer that is **always on** (or at least always on when team members are working)
- A **stable network connection** (wired is recommended for a host)
- A **firewall rule** allowing inbound connections on the port AGYNA MIX Invoicer will use (default: 8080 — confirm in your Host settings)
- At least one **user account** configured with a password (team members will log in with this)
- The **server recovery key** stored offline and accessible only to administrators (it is required for restricted password resets in client-server mode)

14.3.2 Running the Host Setup Wizard

1. Open **Settings** → **Instance Mode**
2. Select **Host**
3. The Host Setup Wizard opens — follow the steps:

Step 1 — Listen address and port

Set the network address and port this computer will accept connections on. For most home/office networks, 0.0.0.0 (all interfaces) and port 8080 works. For internet-facing setups, consult your network administrator.

Step 2 — API token

Generate the authentication token that clients will use to connect. Copy this token — you'll need to distribute it to team members.

Step 3 — User accounts

Ensure at least one user account exists with a password. Clients log in with these credentials. (User management is in Settings → User Management.)

Download and store the recovery key of the **server instance** offline. This key is different from the local recovery keys stored on client machines. It is required when an administrator needs to reset a password in client-server mode and should be known only to administrators.

Step 4 — Backup configuration

Configure automatic backups (daily is recommended). This is especially important if you plan to run headless, as you won't have access to the backup dialog.

Step 5 — Archive location

Set the GoBD archive directory. This should be a path accessible to *this* computer.

4. Click **Finish** — the application restarts in Host mode.

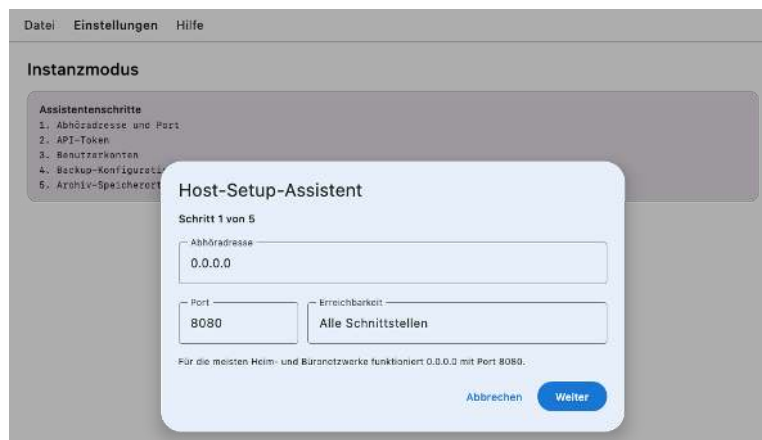


Figure XX: The Host setup wizard, Step 1

14.3.3 Verifying the Host is Running

After restarting in Host mode:

1. Open **Settings** → **Instance Mode** — the status should show **Host (running)**
2. From another computer on the network, try to reach the host's address and port (e.g., `http://192.168.1.100:8080/health`)
3. A 200 OK response confirms the host is accepting connections

14.3.4 Network and Firewall Notes

- The host opens a TCP port on your network. Make sure your operating system's firewall allows inbound connections on that port.
 - **Windows:** Windows Defender Firewall → Allow app through firewall
 - **macOS:** System Settings → Network → Firewall → Options
 - **Linux:** `ufw allow 8080/tcp` (or your distribution's equivalent)
- For internet access (connecting clients from outside your local network), configure port forwarding on your router or use a reverse proxy. This is an advanced topic outside the scope of this manual.

14.3.5 Recommendations for Always-On Operation

- **Do not put the host computer to sleep** — clients cannot connect when it is sleeping
 - **Use a UPS (uninterruptible power supply)** if power outages are possible
 - **Schedule automatic backups** to run during off-hours (configured in Settings → Backup)
-

14.4 Headless Mode (Running the Host Without a Screen)

When the host machine has no monitor — or you want the server to run silently in the background — AGYNAMIX Invoicer can be started in **headless mode**. No desktop window opens; only the host server runs.

14.4.1 Prerequisites — Configure Before Going Headless

The following settings **must all be fully configured through the regular application UI** before starting in headless mode. Once headless, you cannot access the settings screen:

1. [+] **Backup** — automatic backup must be configured (frequency and backup directory)
2. [+] **Archive** — the GoBD archive location must be set
3. [+] **User account** — at least one user with a password must exist
4. [+] **Listen URL and port** — the network address and port must be saved in Host mode settings
5. [+] **API token** — the authentication token that clients use must be generated and saved

Only once all five are confirmed should you start the application in headless mode.

14.4.2 Starting Headless — Command Examples

Open a terminal on the host machine and run the appropriate command for your operating system:

Linux (AppImage):

```
./agynamix-invoicer.AppImage --headless
```

Linux (installed via .deb or .rpm):

```
/opt/agynamix-invoicer/bin/AGYNAMIX\ Invoicer \  
--headless
```

macOS:

```
/Applications/AGYNAMIX\ Invoicer.app/Contents/MacOS/AGYNAMIX\ Invoicer \  
--headless
```

Windows (Command Prompt):

```
"%LOCALAPPDATA%\AGYNAMIX Invoicer\AGYNAMIX Invoicer.exe" ^  
--headless
```

Windows (PowerShell):

```
& "$env:LOCALAPPDATA\AGYNAMIX Invoicer\AGYNAMIX Invoicer.exe" `  
--headless
```

14.4.3 Behavior in Headless Mode

- The application **does not show a window**. It starts quietly and immediately begins accepting client connections.
- To stop the server: close the terminal window, or press **Ctrl+C** on Linux/macOS. On Windows, close the terminal window or use Task Manager.
- If any required prerequisite is not configured, the application logs an error and exits — it will not silently start a broken server.
- All scheduled operations (automatic backups, archive jobs) continue to run as normal.

14.4.4 Running at System Startup

AGYNAMIX Invoicer does not automatically register itself as a system service. To start it automatically when your computer boots:

- **Linux (systemd):** Create a `.service` unit file for `systemd`. Refer to the `systemd` documentation.
- **macOS (launchd):** Create a `.plist` file in `~/Library/LaunchAgents/`. Refer to the `launchd` documentation.
- **Windows (Task Scheduler):** Create a task in Task Scheduler that runs at logon or at system startup. Refer to Microsoft documentation.

[i] **Tip:** Headless mode is well-suited for running on a dedicated always-on computer, a NAS device with Java support, or a small home server (e.g., Raspberry Pi 5 with JDK 21+).

14.5 Connecting as Client (TASK-MAN-15)

This section is for team members who want to connect their installation to the central host.

14.5.1 What You Need Before Connecting

Your host administrator needs to provide you with:

- Host address: 192.168.1.100 OR `invoicer.mycompany.com`
- Port: 8080
- Username: `anna@mycompany.com`
- Password: set by administrator
- API token: generated by host during setup

14.5.2 Connecting to the Host

1. Open **Settings** → **Instance Mode**
2. Select **Client**
3. The Client Connection Wizard opens:

Step 1 — Enter host address and port

Type in the host address and port provided by your administrator.

Step 2 — Enter credentials

Enter your username and password.

Step 3 — Replica confirmation

[!] **Warning:** Switching to Client mode replaces your local database with a synchronized replica from the host. Any local data not yet backed up will be overwritten. Make a backup first if needed.

Click **Continue** to confirm and begin the initial synchronization.

4. The initial sync downloads the host's data. Depending on database size, this may take a moment.
5. The application restarts in Client mode.



Figure XX: The Client connection wizard — entering host address and credentials

14.5.3 Reconnecting When the Host Is Unavailable

If the host is temporarily offline (e.g., the server computer is being rebooted), you can continue working with your local replica. When the host becomes available again:

1. Open **Settings** → **Instance Mode**
2. Click **Reconnect** (or the application may reconnect automatically)
3. Changes made while offline are synchronized

[!] **Note:** Creating and publishing documents while offline may work locally, but synchronization happens only when the host is reachable. Consult your host administrator before making changes during extended outages.

14.5.4 Switching Back to Standalone

If you want to stop using Client mode and work locally again:

1. Open **Settings** → **Instance Mode**
2. Select **Standalone**
3. Your local replica becomes the standalone database

[!] **Note:** After switching back to standalone, changes made on the host by other clients are no longer synchronized to your machine.

14.6 Client Mode: What to Expect (TASK-MAN-16)

14.6.1 Data and Synchronization

- **The host is the source of truth.** Your local copy is a synchronized replica — everything ultimately lives on the host.
- **Synchronization is automatic.** When you are connected, your local replica stays up to date without manual intervention.
- **Offline capability.** You can view and work with local data when disconnected. Changes you make locally are synchronized when you reconnect.

- **No peer-to-peer sync.** Clients synchronize with the host only — not directly with each other.

14.6.2 Creating and Editing Documents

- **Drafts** are created locally and are visible only to you until published.
- **Publishing** sends the document to the host and makes it visible to all clients.
- **Editing published documents** (e.g., issuing a correction invoice) goes through the host.

14.6.3 What Synchronizes vs. What Stays Local

Synchronized from the host

- Documents (invoices, quotes, and similar records)
- Customers
- Products / articles
- Text snippets
- Tenants
- Payment profiles
- Audit log
- SMTP settings

Local only

- Theme / display preferences
- Local backup path

14.6.4 Connection Loss Mid-Session

If you lose your network connection while working:

1. A connection warning indicator appears in the toolbar
2. You can continue working with locally cached data
3. Write operations that require the host (e.g., publishing a document) will be queued or fail with a clear error message
4. When the connection is restored, synchronization resumes automatically

14.6.5 Host License Change

If the host's license tier drops below **Ultimate** while you are connected as a client:

- The host server shuts down automatically. On the host machine, the administrator sees a dialog explaining the change and is switched back to Standalone mode.
- As a client, you will see a **licensing-specific connection banner** (distinct from the normal "host offline" indicator) telling you that the host's license no longer supports server mode.
- You can continue working with your local replica data, but no new data will be synchronized until the host restores a valid Ultimate license and re-enables server mode.
- The event is recorded in the host's audit log for traceability.

14.6.6 Settings: Local vs. Host

- **Local settings** (theme, backup directory, display language) are stored on your computer and are not affected by the host configuration.
- **Business settings** (tax rules, number ranges, email configuration) are synchronized from the host.
- The host administrator can manage these settings centrally; individual clients cannot override them.

14.6.7 Sandbox / Demo Database in Client Mode

The sandbox (demo) database is available in Client mode as well. Context switching between production and sandbox works the same as in Standalone mode — via the toolbar selector.

14.6.8 Passwords and Recovery Keys

- **Each client machine has its own local recovery key.** This protects machine-local secrets on that device.
- **Password reset is different.** In Client mode, resetting a shared user password uses the recovery key from the **server instance**, not the local recovery key stored on the client machine.
- **This is a restricted administrator action.** Normal users should not know the server recovery key.
- **Administrators can change another user's password from any connected machine.** They do not need to sit at the host computer.
- **Completely clearing a password is supported only in Standalone mode.** It is not available in client-server mode.

14.6.9 Permissions

What each user can do depends on the **role and permissions** set by the host administrator in Settings → User Management (configured on the host). If you find you cannot perform an action, check with your administrator.

14.7 Terminal Server and Administrator Configuration

Administrators can redirect the application data directory and selected machine-level runtime files when the default per-user location is not suitable. This is mainly useful on Windows terminal servers where %LOCALAPPDATA% is cleared, user profiles are not persistent, or license and recovery-key state should be shared by multiple Windows users on the same terminal server.

The application still defaults to the normal desktop locations:

- Windows: %LOCALAPPDATA%\agynamix-invoicer
- macOS: ~/Library/Application Support/agynamix-invoicer
- Linux: \$XDG_DATA_HOME/agynamix-invoicer, typically ~/.local/share/agynamix-invoicer

14.7.1 What You Can Redirect

Application data directory

- Contains the active database and other local application data.
- Should be on stable local storage on the terminal server.
- Do not place the active SQLite database on an SMB/UNC share.

License metadata file

- Stores license metadata such as machine-related license state when licensePrefsFile is configured.
- Without this setting, the existing default storage behavior remains active.

Recovery-key file

- Stores the recovery key when recoveryKeyFile is configured.
- In this terminal-server setup, this file is intentionally a plaintext properties file. Protect it with NTFS, share, or other administrator ACLs.

The GoBD archive is separate from these files. It can point to an SMB share through **Settings → Archive → Network path** while the active database remains local.

14.7.2 Priority Order

For the application data directory, the first configured source wins:

1. Command-line argument: --app-data-dir=...
2. JVM system property: -DAPP_DATA_DIR=...
3. Environment variable: AGYNAMIX_INVOICER_DATA_DIR
4. Runtime properties file: invoicer-runtime.properties

5. Platform default

The license metadata file and recovery-key file use the same priority order:

Purpose	Command-line argument	JVM system property	Environment variable
License metadata	--license-prefs-file=...	-Dinvoicer.licensePrefs.file=...	AGYNAMIX_INVOICER_LICENSE_PREFS_FILE
Recovery key	--recovery-key-file=...	-Dinvoicer.recoveryKey.file=...	AGYNAMIX_INVOICER_RECOVERY_KEY_FILE

Path variables are expanded by the application for all administrator-supplied values. Supported forms include %APPDATA%, %LOCALAPPDATA%, %USERPROFILE%, \$HOME, \${HOME}, and leading ~. If a variable is unknown, startup fails with a clear error instead of silently creating a literal folder.

An explicitly configured value must not be empty or contain only whitespace. This also applies to APP_DATA_DIR as a JVM system property and AGYNAMIX_INVOICER_DATA_DIR as an environment variable. A blank value stops startup with a configuration error instead of falling through to a lower-priority source or the platform default.

The license metadata file, recovery-key file, and invoicer-runtime.properties must be three separate physical files. The application also rejects recognizable aliases of the same file, such as normalized relative paths or existing symbolic links. This validation runs before storage initialization and does not modify any of the affected files.

14.7.3 Windows Terminal Server Example

Recommended layout for stable terminal-server data:

```
D:\AGYNAMIX\InvoicerData
C:\ProgramData\AGYNAMIX Invoicer\license-prefs.properties
C:\ProgramData\AGYNAMIX Invoicer\recovery-key.properties
```

Add this argument to the Windows shortcut target:

```
--app-data-dir=D:\AGYNAMIX\InvoicerData
--license-prefs-file="C:\ProgramData\AGYNAMIX Invoicer\license-prefs.properties"
--recovery-key-file="C:\ProgramData\AGYNAMIX Invoicer\recovery-key.properties"
```

Alternatively, set machine-level environment variables:

```
AGYNAMIX_INVOICER_DATA_DIR=D:\AGYNAMIX\InvoicerData
AGYNAMIX_INVOICER_LICENSE_PREFS_FILE=C:\ProgramData\AGYNAMIX Invoicer\license-prefs.properties
AGYNAMIX_INVOICER_RECOVERY_KEY_FILE=C:\ProgramData\AGYNAMIX Invoicer\recovery-key.properties
```

Or create this machine-wide file:

```
C:\ProgramData\AGYNAMIX Invoicer\invoicer-runtime.properties
```

with:

```
appDataDir=D:\AGYNAMIX\InvoicerData
licensePrefsFile=C:\ProgramData\AGYNAMIX Invoicer\license-prefs.properties
recoveryKeyFile=C:\ProgramData\AGYNAMIX Invoicer\recovery-key.properties
```

[!] **Important:** A shared standalone SQLite database must only be opened by one user at a time. If several users need simultaneous access, use Host/Client mode instead.

14.7.4 Runtime Properties File Locations

Use these machine-wide locations:

- Windows: C:\ProgramData\AGYNAMIX Invoicer\invoicer-runtime.properties
- macOS: /Library/Application Support/AGYNAMIX Invoicer/invoicer-runtime.properties
- Linux: /etc/agnamix-invoicer/invoicer-runtime.properties

Supported keys are appDataDir, licensePrefsFile, and recoveryKeyFile. Unknown keys are ignored for forward compatibility.

14.7.5 SMB Archive on Terminal Servers

For terminal-server installations, the archive can point to an SMB share through **Settings → Archive → Network path**, for example:

```
\\server\share\agynamix-archive
```

The share does not need to be mapped to a drive letter. Enter domain/workgroup, username, and password when required, then run the connection test before saving. If no credentials are entered, the application may try guest or anonymous access; when credentials are entered, it does not silently fall back to guest access after a failed login.

SMB archive storage is an advanced archive storage feature and requires the matching license tier. Local WORM write protection is not available, or is only degraded, for SMB in this first implementation. Protect archived files through the permissions and retention rules of your file server.

14.7.6 Terminal Server Smoke Test

After setup, verify a terminal-server installation like this:

1. appDataDir, licensePrefsFile, and recoveryKeyFile point to stable machine-level locations.
2. The application starts without a new first-run setup.
3. License metadata survives app restart, logoff/logon, and terminal-server restart.
4. Recovery-key-protected settings remain readable after app restart, logoff/logon, and terminal-server restart.
5. The SMB archive is configured with a UNC path and no mapped drive.
6. The SMB connection test writes and reads successfully.
7. A test document can be archived, read back, and verified.
8. If multiple Windows users are expected to use the same terminal server, repeat the check with a second user.

14.7.7 Notes And Warnings

- -PappDataDir=... is a Gradle development option only. It does not configure the installed Windows application.
- Editing `invoicer-jvm-launcher.cfg` and adding `-DAPP_DATA_DIR=...` can work as a workaround, but installed app updates may overwrite that file.
- APP_DATA_DIR is supported only as a JVM system property, not as an environment variable. Use AGYNAMIX_INVOICER_DATA_DIR for the machine-level environment variable.
- Prefer local terminal-server disk for the live SQLite database. Network shares or UNC paths are riskier for the active database because SQLite relies on filesystem locking and low-latency I/O.
- File archives and backups may live on separate storage, but the live database should be on stable local storage whenever possible.
- Configured license and recovery-key files are intended for shared terminal-server use, but not for simultaneous writes from multiple active sessions.
- The recovery-key file grants administrative access to locally encrypted secrets. Treat it as a sensitive administrator secret.
- The launcher startup lock and the Java application runtime lock both honor `--app-data-dir=...`, `AGYNAMIX_INVOICER_DATA_DIR`, and `invoicer-runtime.properties`.

Continue with Chapter 13 (if applicable) or return to Chapter 13: Appendix